Reference Book
Not for Issue

esquire's
Book of Fishing

12319
LIBRARY

Esquire's

BOOK OF FISHING

edited by ROBERT SCHARFF

and the editors of ESQUIRE *magazine*

Harper & Row, Publishers NEW YORK, EVANSTON, AND LONDON

Cent.
639.2
S1F

639.2

ESQUIRE'S BOOK OF FISHING. *Copyright © 1933, 1934, 1935, 1936, 1937, 1938, 1939, 1940, 1942, 1943, 1945, 1946, 1949, 1950, 1952, 1953, 1954, 1955, 1956, 1957, 1958, 1959, 1960, 1961, 1962, 1963 by Esquire, Inc. Printed in the United States of America. All rights reserved. No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. For information address Harper & Row, Publishers, Incorporated, 49 East 33rd Street, New York 16, N.Y.*

FIRST EDITION

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOG CARD NUMBER: 62–17085

Contents

Introduction by Arnold Gingrich ix

1. Why go fishing? 1

Who Are Real Fishermen? . . . Why Does He Go Fishing? . . . Pleasures of Fishing . . . Etiquette for Fishermen

2. Tackle and the fisherman 12

Types of Fishing Tackle . . . Bait-Casting Tackle: Rods, Reels, Lines, and Leaders . . . Spinning Tackle: Reels, Rods, and Lines . . . Push-Button or Spin-Cast Tackle: Rods, Lines, and Reels . . . Fly-Fishing Tackle: Rods, Lines, Reels, and Leaders . . . The Hook

3. Lures for fish and fisherman 40

How Do I Select the Lures I Like? . . . How Do I Select the Lures Fish Like? . . . How Many Lures Do I Need? . . . The Family of Bait-Casting Lures: Surface Plugs, Subsurface Plugs, Underwater Plugs, Spinners and Spoons . . . Loony Lures . . . The Family of Spin-Fishing Lures . . . The Family of Flies: Dry Flies, Wet Flies, Nymphs, Streamers, Bucktails, and Other Fly Lures . . . Romance in a Fly Box

4. How the real fisherman catches his fish 68

Methods of Fishing . . . Bait-Casting Techniques: Overhead Cast, Side Cast, Backhand Cast, and Flip Cast . . . Spinning Techniques: Overhead Cast, Side Cast, Bow-and-Arrow Cast, and Lariat Cast . . . Casting Ultra-Light Lures . . . Push-Button or Spin-Cast Techniques . . . Fly-Casting Techniques: Overhead Cast, Side Cast, and Roll Cast . . . Casting with an Ultra-Light Fly Rod

5. Stream fishing is the greatest fun 93

Stream Fishing Strategy . . . Dry Fly vs. Wet Fly . . . Wet-Fly Techniques . . . Dry-Fly Techniques . . . Bait Fishing for Trout . . . Hooking, Playing, and Landing a Trout . . . Spinning for Trout . . . Big-River Fishing for Trout . . . Salmon on Flies

6. Lake fishing for everyone 133

Big Catches and the Weather . . . How to Find Fish . . . Still Fishing: Tackle and Techniques . . . Casting: Live Bait and Artificial Lures . . . Trolling: Tackle and Techniques . . . Playing and Landing Fish . . . The Fly Rod and Lake Fishing

7. Fishing the ocean's grab bag 171

Finding Salt-Water Fish . . . Salt-Water Still Fishing . . . Salt-Water Trolling . . . Drifting Techniques . . . Surf Fishing: Tackle and Techniques . . . Fresh-Water Tackle at Sea . . . Salt-Water Species for Fishermen

8. Deep-sea fishing for the big fellows 207

The IGFA Story . . . Big-Game Fishing . . . Swordfish Ahead! . . . Meet the Marlin Family . . . Sailfish Are Showmen . . . Tuna—Giants of the Sea . . . Charter Boats

9. 101 Favorite fishing spots on the North American continent 237

Location; Equipment; What to Wear; Where to Stay; For Wife Not Fishing; Travel Data; and Information Service . . . Fishing Guides

10. Favorite fishing spots in the rest of the world 294

Iceland . . . British Isles . . . France . . . Spain . . . Denmark . . . Norway . . . Hawaii . . . New Zealand . . . Mexico . . . Bermuda . . . Bahamas . . . Puerto Rico . . . South America

Index 333

Acknowledgment

In assembling and editing this book we had one over-all purpose in mind—to present a book that would be both interesting and factual. To do this, we read, pieced together, and revised the many fishing articles that have appeared in *Esquire* since its beginning in 1933. We did not include any personal accounts, but rather tried to give the kind of information that fills a creel or a stringer, or puts a trophy on the wall. In addition to the experts who are mentioned in the text itself, we used portions of pieces written by the following authors: Lew Oatman, K. N. A. Taylor, Gordon MacQuarrie, Walter McCallum, Lewis Ossi, Jack Denton Scott, E. C. Janes, Arthur H. Carhart, Alfred Von Kolnitz, Ben East, John S. Walsh, Harold Titus, Courtney Ryley Cooper, J. W. McDade, and Corey Ford. We would like to thank Henry Shakespeare of the Shakespeare Company for permission to reprint several portions of his excellent booklet *Secrets of Successful Fishing*. In addition, we also wish to thank James Heddon's Sons, Enterprise (Pfluger) Manufacturing Company, Horrocks-Ibbotson Company, and the Pennsylvania Fish Commission for illustrations and the latest tackle information.

ROBERT SCHARFF

Introduction

The phrase about there being no end to the making of books was, of course, coined long before the flood of angling literature was first let loose by the *Book of St. Albans* in the fifteenth century. But if the phrase hadn't already been used, it would have had to be, as the proliferation of books about every aspect of fishing has by our time reached tidal wave proportions. When there are so many books about fishing, and even books about books about fishing, anybody but a fisherman would look askance at the advent of another. But just as any dedicated angler always thinks that the next cast will do it, no matter what has happened after no matter how many he has made before, so will he go on hoping that the next book on fishing will surely reveal something that was missed in any that he has seen to date.

It was possible to count on, if not the fingers, then at least the fingers and toes, the fishing books that appeared between that first catalogue of flies by Dame Juliana Berners in the *Book of St. Albans* and *The Compleat Angler*, which, at least with its monumentally important second part, did not come along until almost two hundred years later. But after that still-verdant classic came the deluge, and fishing books in English alone now number well over five thousand.

The trouble with any and all of them, so far as the plain angler is concerned, lies in the proverbial plaint that those that are general leave him knowing less and less about more and more, as he earnestly pursues their preachments, while those that are specialized have the effect of leaving him knowing more and more about less and less.

Since most people who fish are forced by climate or by circumstances to spend more months in the year thinking about it than they can possibly hope to spend doing it, any book about fishing enjoys an enormous built-in advantage. For to the passionate fisherman the next best thing to doing it is to read about it. Like General Grant, who knew only two tunes—one was "Yankee Doodle" and the other one wasn't—the fisherman is prone to divide all literature into two categories, books that are about fishing and those that aren't. And by this rough-and-ready standard, any book that is becomes vastly preferable to any book that isn't.

I've seen die-hard dry-fly purists, who wouldn't be caught dead in the same county with anybody carrying a spinning rod, wade through volumes about ocean fishing, and commercial fishing at that—trawlers, netting, and things of that sort—just because they were "the only thing I could find about fishing" in the otherwise fairly well-stocked shelves of inns and lodges in trout and salmon country.

For the fisherman, any time and any money he spends in connection with his craze—for such milder words as hobby and sport afford insufficient coverage for what is at best an aberration and at worst a mania—seem to him to enjoy a sort of extraterritorial status, or diplomatic immunity, from being reckoned in the same terms as those he applies to time and money spent in ordinary pursuits.

He has read or heard that Allah doesn't deduct from man's allotted span the time spent fishing. And he assumes, on his own, that some other Providential Branch will apply the same indulgent accounting for the money.

He will scream to heaven's four corners if he misplaces a dollar bill or is short-changed a dime, but show him a new line or leader or reel, or any other gadget he hasn't got, and the last thing he'll think about is its price.

As it happens, this book is pretty good. It covers, and updates where needed, all the fishing articles that have appeared in *Esquire* in almost thirty years. And it's something of a bargain, too. It would cost you a lot more, even at back-issue magazine counters, to assemble all these many items that this book contains—even if you could find them all, which you couldn't, and even if none of them needed revision, which many of them did, to bring them in line with revolutionary changes in tackle over the past fifteen years.

But these considerations, as between fishermen, are extraneous to a degree approaching the ludicrous.

To a fisherman, all that matters is that it's all about fishing, and that there's nothing in it that isn't.

As between fishermen, then, it's a pleasure to so warrant this book.

ARNOLD GINGRICH
Publisher, *Esquire* Magazine

esquire's

Book of Fishing

1

Why go fishing?

Many years ago a man in the hardware business, becoming fed up with the way things were going, decided to chuck it all and go fishing. *Angling will prove to be so pleasant*, he thought, *that it will prove to be, like virtue, a reward to itself.*

Finding the peace he sought by the side of a stream, he remarked that "God never did make a more calm, quiet, innocent recreation." Like all fishermen, though, he soon began to settle down and concentrate on catching fish. "Angling," he wrote, "is an art worthy the knowledge and practice of a wise man." Still following the usual curve of fishing behavior, he quickly discovered that fishing somehow managed to release his mind for creative tasks, and he was so moved that only poetry could express his joy. He wrote:

> Of recreation there is none,
> So free as fishing is, alone;
> All other pastimes do not less
> Than mind and body, both possess:
> My hand alone my work can do;
> So I can fish and study too.

Whereupon he gave up the hardware business to become the world's first outdoor and fishing writer. His book, *The Compleat Angler, or the Contemplative Man's Recreation,* started out to be just a how-to-fish book, but its picture of the peace and simple virtue of going fishing was recognized as his protest against the chaos of his time. Three hundred years later it's still one of the most famous books in the English language. We could say that Izaak Walton was the first really true fisherman who put his thoughts down into words.

Who are real fishermen?

One question that is sure to come to your mind is, "Who are real fishermen?" To give you an answer, it is best to say that we are numerous and varied. We are short, tall, rich, poor, boys, men. You can find us in, on, around, nearby, close to, milling about, going to, coming from, or talking about lakes, rivers, streams, inlets, bayous, creeks, dams, basins, bays, headwaters, backwaters, or anything wherein a fish might swim.

A real fisherman is a fellow who will do without shoes to buy a new fly rod; he's a fellow who's not much for gardening, but will dig worms with his bare hands; he's a fellow who hasn't the patience to sit through a movie, but will sit fourteen hours in a boat; he is a husband who will take his wife fishing on Mother's Day; he's a nocturnal addict to fishing magazines; he's a normal husband gone crazy, or a bright son gone addled; he's the only man who can look at a low spot in his backyard after a heavy rain and think not of how to drain it off, but rather of how he can raise minnows there; he is the only boy friend who can sit with his girl on a porch swing on a balmy June night and wonder whether the bass will be taking minnows or plugs the next morning.

A real fisherman is a highly imaginative creature. He imagines that a few good stringers of fish will compensate the budget for the umpteen dollars spent on fishing gear. He imagines that the fish will bite better when the boat is not loaded with a wife and kids. He imagines that, if the fish don't rise to feed in the morning, it's only common sense that they just have to bite sometime before dark!

The fisherman lives in a world all his own. He dearly loves a fishing trip and anything associated with it. And preparation is half the game. It begins immediately after one of his buddies mentions something about the fish "really biting like mad" at a certain spot. So he checks the weather forecast and promptly ignores it because he's going anyway. Then he buys two or three real hot plugs, sure-killer flies, special new lines, and maybe some abracadabra oil which is guaranteed to attract fish. For the next few days

this enraptured creature will think of nothing but fishing. Even his nights are filled with dreams of smoother water, singing reels and lunker trout. Then, after an eternity of a day or two, he'll be off in a hail of equipment on this fishing trip to end all fishing trips! If he's a gentle, loving husband, he might even remember to pat his wife on the head before he leaves.

Perhaps it's the unaccountable elements that make a real fisherman. Perhap it's those intangibles of chance that offer relief from the conventional, the legitimate, the orthodox, the regimentation of what we choose to call modern civilization. Perhaps, acknowledging these things he tries vainly with all his senses to probe the mystery of the current in search of an answer which he knows, in his more pedantic moments, is impossible to find. Perhaps he is like the little child who tries to reach the end of the rainbow for that elusive pot of gold, but has infinite and unexplainable delight in so doing. As was already mentioned, we fishermen live in a world of our own—a *dream world*. Yes, there is something strange about this sirenlike allure, this bug which strikes at the most vital areas of a man's heart to hypnotize him into actions that passeth all understanding.

Why does he go fishing?

There must be something about fishing which makes us blow an annual total of about fifty million bucks for tackle, gear, and fees. To the question "Why do you go fishing?" there appear to be three standard rejoinders, all of them emphatic.

First: "None of your business." (This is probably true.)

Second: "To catch fish." (This is probably false.)

The third rejoinder, "For the fun of it," is everything and nothing. *Why* is it fun to go fishing? Here is how Edmund Ware explains it.

To explain the fun of baseball, bullfighting, or marbles is comparatively simple. These sports have not only an obvious purpose, but a literature which is honest. The purpose of sport fishing is obscure, and its literature is fundamentally untruthful. You don't have to search long in the pages of outdoor magazines or in *Rod & Gun* columns to find a 10-inch trout putting up "a terrific battle." Presumably, in subduing such a trout, the 200-pound angler takes unto himself a certain glory.

The practice known as "giving the fish a chance" is another accepted trite phrase. This, in the face of the fact that all the fisherman stands to lose is a fish, when there are more where this one came from; while all the fish stands to lose is a life, the only life available to him, barring his afterlife—a thing of which he is doubtless as uncertain as any human skeptic. The exception to the above birdie is the big-game fisherman. Big-game fish ac-

tually get better than an even break. The marlin or sailfish that comes alongside is frequently less dead than the athlete who has been working him on rod and reel for several hours.

The user of "light tackle," of leaders tapering to .005 of an inch, of tiny dry flies, has been accorded the ennobling term of "fine sportsman" because in using such refined gear he is said to be "giving the fish a chance." Actually, his motive is to prolong the fun of playing—or catching—the fish. The chance awarded the fish is incidental.

The fish, you see, has been written into the phony role of antagonist in fishing. He is not an antagonist at all. He is an adjunct. We have a strong tendency to take literally such phrases as "wary denizens" and "finny warriors" with which angling literature is peppered. But is there anything so very wary about the average trout or bass? And that word "warrior" always meant to me, and all the kids on our street, nothing less than a homicidal Apache on a pinto. No three-pound smallmouth is going to sneak into our tent at night and lift our scalps, and we know it. So does every other fisherman. It becomes pretty obvious, then, that standard angling literature seeks without knowing it to assist the angler in fooling himself about the true nature of his sport. There is, of course, far more glory in catching and subsequently devouring a "warrior" than a bass. It is the word "warrior" which upholsters the fisherman's illusion of conquest. Yet, by describing some of angling's accepted lies, we don't seem to be getting at the truth of why fishing is fun.

The first fish most of us caught was a bluegill. We also called them "kivvies" or "punkin seeds." Because this event most likely came at a young age, try very hard to remember accurately what your sensations were—and not what, as a sportsman or *Esquire* fisherman, they ought to have been. But you know that real and imagined memories are apt to be as snarled as an individual's own definitions of himself, and the self he would like to be thought of as!

Here's what we think you'll remember: (1) An unexpected and highly exciting tug. (Surprise.) (2) As you derricked the bluegill onto the bank, there was a pleasing but easily conquered resistance. (Achievement without personal risk.) (3) The thought: *This fish came up out of the water, but to look at the water you wouldn't know there was anything down there.* (Mystery and fascination of a sphere alien and unknown to yourself.) (4) The fish is fine to look at. Nice colors. He is alive. He is flopping. (Joy of bossing completely a life not your own, without getting socked for it.) (5) He might flop back into the water. But you want him up here on earth where you can touch him, and look at him. So now you'll kill him. (Possession.) (6) There! You have killed him! Once he flopped, but now he's dead and just quivering.

Alone, you have killed him. (Valor and fine feeling of savagery in killing.) (7) Is he good to eat? (Hunger.)

Right after number six, the kill, you're bound to feel, we believe, a waning of elation. That was a climax, and its moment must have been great stuff, for you wanted an immediate repetition—a second drink. You recaptured the sensation in some degree by exhibiting the bluegill to your father, and describing its catching. Thus bragging became an important element in the fun of the whole episode. We're inclined to believe the bragging should be

"Don't get so excited, dear—after all, it's just a fish."

done during the eating of the fish. The fried fish is there on your plate, evidence of the great truths you're telling, and by which your ego is prospering and your belly fattening.

In the catching of that bluegill are most—but not all—of the reasons why fishing is fun. The control beyond arm's reach of something alive and wild is fun. It gives you a sense of projecting your own power. This is very flattering, even when the object controlled is only a rubber ball on an elastic, or a 10-ounce trout on 30 feet of line. The fact that such a trout actually requires very little power to control adds nothing to the fun. Therefore, the fact is submerged. Any fact which adds nothing to the fun of fishing is similarly submerged. We're all for the process, too.

This far-reaching of power is fine stuff. It is why boys and their fathers throw stones. To connect with a stray cat from a distance of 20 yards is sheer perfection in delight. Think of the enormous lift the hunter gets when the mountain goat tumbles off the cliff 600 yards away a second after he squeezes the trigger! Just think of the astonishment of the goat. You caused

it, from a distance. You might think that the shelling of Paris at long range was the all-time high in this kind of fun. Actually, to the lads who unlimbered Big Bertha, it was second-rate. It is necessary to *see* the results in order to get fun out of them. The hunter *sees* his game fall. The fisherman not only sees his salmon leap clear of the water, but he *feels* him.

We are pretty sure that the greatest sports have in them an element of danger. This disturbed us for a while, because the greatest sport in the world is, of course, fishing—and we couldn't honestly see any danger in it. True, there's some danger in a rough stream or lake, or in wading certain savage rivers, but that is a pure background danger and you can walk out of it any time it ceases to be fun. There is some danger that you'll lose the fish, but it's insignificant. The real danger is that the fish will not lose you! You can call this the fish's danger if you want to, but that's quibbling. In fact, when you've got a good fish on, you can feel his danger so keenly in your wrist that for excitement purposes it becomes your own.

Pleasures of fishing

Bliss Perry, in his memorable essay entitled "Fishing with a Fly," made some serious and some smiling comment on the manual dexterity pleasure in fly fishing. In discussing the subject, he told us he didn't believe casting a fly required much dexterity, that angling literature seemed to have gone out of its way to make casting sound difficult. What the fisherman has, in casting, is a *sensation* of great skill. The gorgeous, moving curves of rod and line amaze him, and he feels himself a truly remarkable fellow for creating such beautiful motion with his wrist. As a matter of fact, if he coordinates averagely well, it should take him about twenty minutes to learn the dark mysteries of such creation. But the fun is there, and the soundlessness of the line unrolling on a long cast will fascinate the real fisherman forever—we hope. So will the elaborate, cunning, and sometimes meaningless designs of certain flies which resemble no insect known.

One of the greatest joys of fishing comes when you are actually examining a fish you have just caught. This special joy is difficult to explain. It is a kind of furtive triumph akin to successful and justified eavesdropping. By reason of your own luck and maneuvering, you are now looking closely at a live, wild thing which has been beautifully trained at keeping its distance in order to survive. You're the only human being ever to see these magnificent colors, this greatest of all streamlining, this now defenseless self. You are a kind of privileged miser. By reason of this close, possessive scrutiny, you feel curiously enriched, like a spy who has gleaned all manner of dirt. Hunting has this quality, too—except that the hunted, when you walk up to it after a good shot, lacks just one thing: life. When a thing lacks that, it has

lost something in fun value, even while it may have gained in trophy value, or fun after the fact.

In most sports, the element of competition is requisite. We are inclined to believe that competition is superfluous to fishing, if not actually injurious to its fun. We have experimented with all manner of competition during fishing, and it's no go. At the trout club we have tagged trout, and the fellow catching the fish with the lucky number got the pool. As an innocuous form of gambling, it was fair. As fishing, it was the bunk. The fellows who were serious fishermen forgot all about the pool and just fished, and were faintly chagrined to take trout with little brass paperclips on their tails. The fellows who were interested in gambling forgot all about their fishing, and you could tell by the way they unhooked nonpaying fish that they were fishing for a number, not for fun.

At least one trip a year has a fellow along who suggests "a fin for the biggest, a fin for the most." This way fish, fishermen, and fishing all suffer. You have no time to examine your trout, to speculate on what lies beneath the water, or to note with any special pleasure your sensations of laziness and warmth and escape. A big trout, or a lot of trout, should be caught for your sake, or their own sake, and not for the sake of collecting a couple of fins. We don't say that gambling isn't fun. It's a very stirring form of fun. But it is not fishing, any more than a slot machine is a fly rod. As for competition, how can there be any when there is no antagonist?

Donald Hough says the contest is carried on under rules to which the fish has not agreed. The fish has no way of knowing that he's even taking part in a contest. The fish doesn't know what the hell is going on around here. All the fish knows is that a mullet or an angleworm has bit him on the lip and is taking him home. If you will put yourself in the place of the fish, you will see that the contest, from the fish's point of view, is confusing. You can get a mild idea of this by pretending that you have bitten into a ham sandwich which suddenly starts pulling you around town. Where would your wits be?

Well, that's where a fish's wits are. Nothing like this ever has happened to him before. He has no precedents, no background, no experience to call upon, and he has no book learning to cover the subject. All he can do, even as all of us, is to wiggle as hard as he can and hope to high heaven that things will come out better than appears probable. The fish doesn't know that he has run afoul of a fishhook, as the angler persists in believing he does. He is not trying to unhook himself, he is not trying to do any of the very clever things the angler must give him credit for trying to do if the angler is to maintain his integrity as a contestant rather than a murderer. Any broad-minded person can discover these things for himself if he will close his eyes and think. The idea is to think as much like a fish as possible. (This is hard. If you succeed, please let us know.)

The official supposition is that the fish, like the fisherman, is going through a familiar routine. This seems to make it fair, especially when you consider that the only reason any man ever succeeds in catching a fish, even with all the thunder on his side, is that he has done it before, either in person or vicariously.

Let us suppose that you did not know there were such things as fish. Let us suppose that you drop a baited line into a body of water which, to the best of your knowledge, is entirely devoid of life. (If it seems silly to pretend that you don't know there are such things as fish, keep in mind that the fish, strange as it may seem, doesn't know there are such things as fishermen.) We don't know why you would drop this line into the water, but let's not split hairs, let's suppose you did. And now suppose that all of a sudden your line were to run away from you at high speed. What would you do?

We don't even have to tell you. You would let go of the pole. And now let us know if we were wrong about all this, and that the angler really has outwitted the fish. Is it any comfort to have outwitted a fish? Is it hard to do? It shouldn't be, but even if it is, all that you have done is to outwit a fish. A fish is a very low form of vertebrate life.

The more interested you become in fishing, the more interested you will become in its high escape quality. If you have nothing—no wife, work, or woes—from which to escape, you will begin inventing obstacles after you have fished a few seasons. The angling husband frequently hopes that, as he leaves the house with his hallowed equipment, his wife will say: "Silly!" He wants her to say this so that he can say: "Well, by God! It isn't!" and depart with the impressiveness of a launching coal barge—into a background on which he holds his own sacred patents, all masculine.

The fisherman at work feels not only at peace with his background, but glorified by it. He takes unto himself its apparent wildness, and gives to it the honor of his awareness. Here his savagery and his cruelty are fine attributes. They belong. At home, he might chastise his son for annoying the goldfish; but here he will partake ravenously of his son's triumph in catching trout. We are certain that those who have not felt this difference in background are those who condemn fishing and hunting because these sports are cruel and predatory. Of course they are! That's one of the exhilarating things about them! Yet sporting editors, in answering the spoilsports, seldom if ever admit it. Instead, they roll off phrases about "the heritage of our forefathers." Some even go so far as to call this heritage "noble." It seems to me that what we inherited from our forefathers is, first of all, life. Once in a while life may achieve nobility, but it practically always achieves cruelty. We aren't even sure that that is too bad. All we know is that it is true. We have never read any arguments which justified hunting

and fishing on humane grounds. Why should it be justified on those grounds? One of the reasons why fishing is fun is that its background justifies a fellow in a brief respite from being humane.

Fishing is fun because it lets you indulge most of your human qualities without getting hung for it. If you can also catch its grace and see its beauty, there's an extra dividend. Sometimes there is stealth. Always there's surprise and curiosity. Except to other fishermen, there is no kindness—even when you return a trout to the water unharmed. You return him because you've had enough, or because the law requires it, or because he is too small for bragging or eating purposes, or so you can hope to catch him next year when he's bigger. No, you can't be kind. You can be gentle in your methods, but the results are the same.

From all these ingredients, fishing derives its fun. When the sun is right; when the stream is good, and the wind small; when trout are coming well, fishing produces a kind of happiness which is sustained even during the moment you pause to examine it. The only other sport we know which has this quality is drinking. In both enterprises, an illusion is created, justified, and maintained over a period of time. While it lasts, you—if you're a true fisherman—are a human being—in fact, one of the best!

It is the purpose of this book to invite you to become a real fisherman and show you how you can reap its rich reward—to catch fish. While you now may think us, the fishermen, a bit wacky in the head, remember, whether it's called a hobby or a passion or a vocation or a sport, the pursuit of the finny denizens of the deep is of noble lineage. Indeed, the Keeper of the Pearly Gates was Himself a superb fisherman.

No matter what you think of a fisherman, he's a pretty happy soul. And it has been said that the Lord does not deduct from one's life span those hours spent in fishing. Maybe that's why there are so many fishermen. For old fishermen never die. They just cast away!

Etiquette for fishermen

The best gauge of one fisherman's consideration for another is the space he gives him. The unwritten law of lake and stream is: "Finders keepers." Whichever fisherman got there first has prior rights to all fish within reasonable casting distance.

This means not only that you must give him at least 75 feet clearance on all sides, but also that you must avoid disturbing the water in his area and, regardless of the peace and space you allow him, avoid picking off fish on their way to his chosen spot.

If you and the man who got there fustest are in some wilderness not yet discovered by the nation's other 21,419,978 licensed fishermen, follow the old

rule: one rod to a stream. But if you're fishing an area where you can't possibly put other fishermen out of sight, mind these don'ts, at least:

Don't cast across the water being fished by another angler.

Don't wade through a pool being fished by another. If you encounter another fisherman while you're stream fishing, detour around him.

Don't cast into the mouth of a small feeder stream on a lake if another man is already fishing the feeder.

Don't let your boat disturb the waters near another fisherman. Above all, don't run your outboard close astern to a trolling boat.

When you want to fish private waters, by all means get prior permission. Permission will seldom be refused—in fact, navigable streams and state-stocked ponds are not legally private, regardless of houses built on their shores, but the courtesy of your request will smooth the waters.

As a fisherman's guest, you supply nothing but your own equipment except by prior arrangement. Your host takes care of lunch and all expenses. (At a club, the expenses include pound or unit prices for every fish you take, so guard your greed—and realize that "your" fish belong to your host!) He won't, however, expect to supply you with fishing equipment, so get it straight at the outset what clothes and tackle you'll need. As one outdoor editor once put it: "There are three things—maybe four—that no man will lend to another: his dog, his fishing rod, his gun—and, possibly, his wife."

Practical considerations, not etiquette, govern the clothes you fish in. The fish can't see colors or hear rustles; fishermen can't object to the most battered talisman hat. Fishermen's wives and club officers may have their own objections to muddy boots and fishy jackets, however, so you will need a change of clothes whenever you expect to wind up at a table instead of at a camp site.

Your guide on a fishing trip is not a servant, to be bossed about, nor a country cousin, to be patronized. Treat him like a somewhat senior fishing companion—with respect. Call him "Mr." if he was introduced that way, until he decides to favor you with your first name. Better not drop names and fish stories in his direction; he'll be impressed only by performance. And when you tip him at trip's end (at the rate of $2–$5 a day), give him the money as his due, not as if you were bestowing a favor.

In the matter of conservation, official limits are unreliable guides to how many fish you may acceptably take home. The limits set by game laws or club rules are maximums, seldom approached by the conscientious sportsman. The purist often goes home empty-handed, as a matter of principle rather than luck. His sport has been to fish, not to dispense his catch to the neighbors. Without question, he puts back every fish he does not need. And in the rare fishing ground where by-laws prevent his returning a fish he has caught to the water (a few clubs operate on the theory that a hooked

fish is a hurt fish and should not be put back), he may cut short his day's sport rather than catch more fish than he has immediate, personal use for.

A bulging creel is suspect on another score. The avid angler, who can foresee the day when he won't know where his next fish is coming from, deplores the kind of tackle which makes it easy for the unskilled to haul in fish. Particularly if you are using unconventional or "foolproof" tackle, travel light on the way home.

And you might as well fish with trap and net as turn up with a spinner or a worm among dry-fly trout fishermen. A polite fisherman will take pains never to ridicule your tackle or your methods. He will pretend to believe that anything goes, and that the "right" way is any way that catches fish. He may even apologize for his own "eccentric" adherence to old-fashioned techniques. But it's all an act of good manners! So when you're new, when you're a guest, and when you care about the opinion of others, play it safe. Use the tackle and lures your host suggests. Inquire about club ground rules or customs, then fish up to them without comment. And whenever you're in doubt, do it "the hard way."

2

Tackle and the fisherman

To get the most out of fishing, one mustn't concentrate too intently on one's tackle and lures. It's entirely possible to become overserious, to get so wrapped up in casting technique and angling problems that much of what is properly associated with a day on the stream or lake passes by the gate unnoticed.

We pity the golfer who plays along serenely enough until the fateful day when he breaks eighty—and he thinks he has caught the trick. Then for just weeks he can't get below the nineties. He sweats and groans, adopts new stances and swings, works himself into a lather. Golf is now a business and the joy has departed from life. Pathetic, isn't it? Well, while we're at it let us shed a tear for the angler who ties himself up in a knot over the matter of tackle and casting technique. It is surprising how easily one can get that way. Fishing is naturally conducive to it.

To illustrate, William J. Schaldach presents the sad case of John Butterworth. Since his graduation from college in the early forties, Butterworth has spent the bulk of his time boning at business. Recreation has been infrequent and brief, consisting principally of halfhearted participation in

very mild sets of tennis, a little swimming, and an occasional sail on the sound in a friend's yacht. With his domestic affairs satisfactory enough and a substantial rating in the financial world, John found life very good. Storm clouds swept across his horizon, though, in a most unanticipated manner.

It started when he accepted an invitation to go trout fishing with a friend. Being city-bred and reared in an atmosphere of artificiality, Butterworth's outdoor experience had been largely gleaned from the sheltered surroundings of resorts. With him, nature was a standardized sort of thing that one took in doses every so often.

On this first trouting trip, then, Butterworth found himself confronted by something totally different than he had ever experienced before. His friend outfitted him with a good substantial fly rod and tackle, taught him the rudiments of casting and turned him loose on a well-stocked pool, one of the choicest on the club property. There was some clumsy splashing of the line at first and once or twice flies got caught in clothing, but John, though not enthusiastic, was willing. With him diligence and perseverance were life rules. The trout were tame and didn't mind too much. Presently, one seized the fly, to John's utter amazement, and went dashing downstream in a frenzied rush. The novice tried to remember the rules he had been taught: keep the rod tip up; don't let him get slack line; lead him away from the fast water. And considering his lack of experience he didn't do at all badly. Things happened fast; by a miracle the leader held and the trout, a good pounder, was finally subdued and dragged to the net. John felt strangely excited as he scooped up the struggling, many-hued quarry. By evening, an entirely new world had opened for him. Conversion was sudden and complete.

After that, fishing trips became a regular thing. Butterworth purchased a reasonably good rod and equipment, practiced until he became a tolerably good caster and went at it with enthusiasm. His catches were usually very fair and there was no doubt but that he was having a loop. If he had only let it go at that he would probably be a happy man today; but he made the mistake of joining a club.

Now joining an angling club is very much like reading a book. Some people can take it, others can't. Butterworth couldn't. He was much too serious. He soon made the discovery that he had been naïve in believing that his days on the stream had been successful ones, merely because he had taken a few trout on flies and had enjoyed a good time as a result. Conversations with ultra-scientific members showed where he was way off. That rod, for example; how had he ever managed to struggle along with it? And his flies! He had bought them in perfect innocence, taking the tackle clerk's word for it. It is true that they did take fish, but at the club everyone was discussing lateral hackling, single upright wings and bivisibles. The utmost

importance was placed on the proper taper of the leader, calibrated every six inches from loop to tippet. Once a member raised an eyebrow ever so slightly when John quite innocently asked what a reverse taper line meant.

You begin to see the point? Poor Butterworth, being a fundamentalist basically, took all this entirely too literally. He began to buy rods with the zeal of a collector, only to discard them one by one because they did not meet his fancied requirements. The search for perfection led him into the field of flies. There he floundered around amid theory until his tackle room resembled a milliner's shop; feathers, tinsel, thread, chenille, and mohair were scattered about in wild abandon. The final stage was the development of that faraway look in his eyes that his friends began to notice shortly after he had received a huge consignment of goods from a London tackle shop.

Lest the above seem too much like an exaggeration, we wish to state that the case of Butterworth is very similar to that of most of us who have fished to any great extent. But, having passed through that hectic state we feel it almost a duty to warn those who may now be treading the borderline. The possession of a few items of good tackle, such as a pair or so of rods of varying types, weight, and dimensions, lines to match, and a reasonable collection of lures, is to be desired. But once a man realizes that with such equipment he is ready for a day's sport under almost any circumstances he ought to let it go at that and be content.

Types of fishing tackle

Fishing today breaks down into four main types: bait casting, spinning, spin casting, and fly fishing. Each type has its frenzied followers, and all have merit. Many experienced anglers use all four. The beginner or the casual fisherman, however, would do well to take up one at a time. If you're in the latter category, ask yourself the following two questions before buying your tackle:

1. What am I going to fish for most often?
2. How much time will I spend fishing?

When you have answered them, you'll be able to decide what type of fishing is best for you, as well as to make an intelligent selection of the proper tackle.

One of the major difficulties beginners have starts before they wet their lines. That is, all too often a novice goes into a tackle store and pays the least he possibly can for his equipment. He feels that it would be foolish to spend a great deal of money on tackle since it's possible that he may not enjoy fishing. He is making a drastic mistake because cheap tackle will prevent him from finding the full enjoyment of the sport. It will never

cast properly and the odds are that it will break if he hooks a big one. On the other hand, it would be almost as foolish for the beginner to purchase the most expensive equipment in the store. He won't be able to use it to full advantage until he has become adept.

For this reason, we always recommend that the beginner fisherman purchase a moderately priced outfit. The difference between inexpensive tackle and medium-priced outfits is only a few dollars, but the difference in enjoyment and in ease of learning is great. When you have learned to fish and feel that you are ready to move up into the expert class, you can purchase expensive gear. For the average fisherman, however, a moderately priced outfit will give many years of service and pleasure.

When purchasing fishing equipment, be sure that you buy the products of a nationally known manufacturer. Your local tackle dealer carries them and will be glad to show them to you. This advice holds true for *all* fishing equipment.

Let's take a look now at the four types of fishing and tackle you'll need for each.

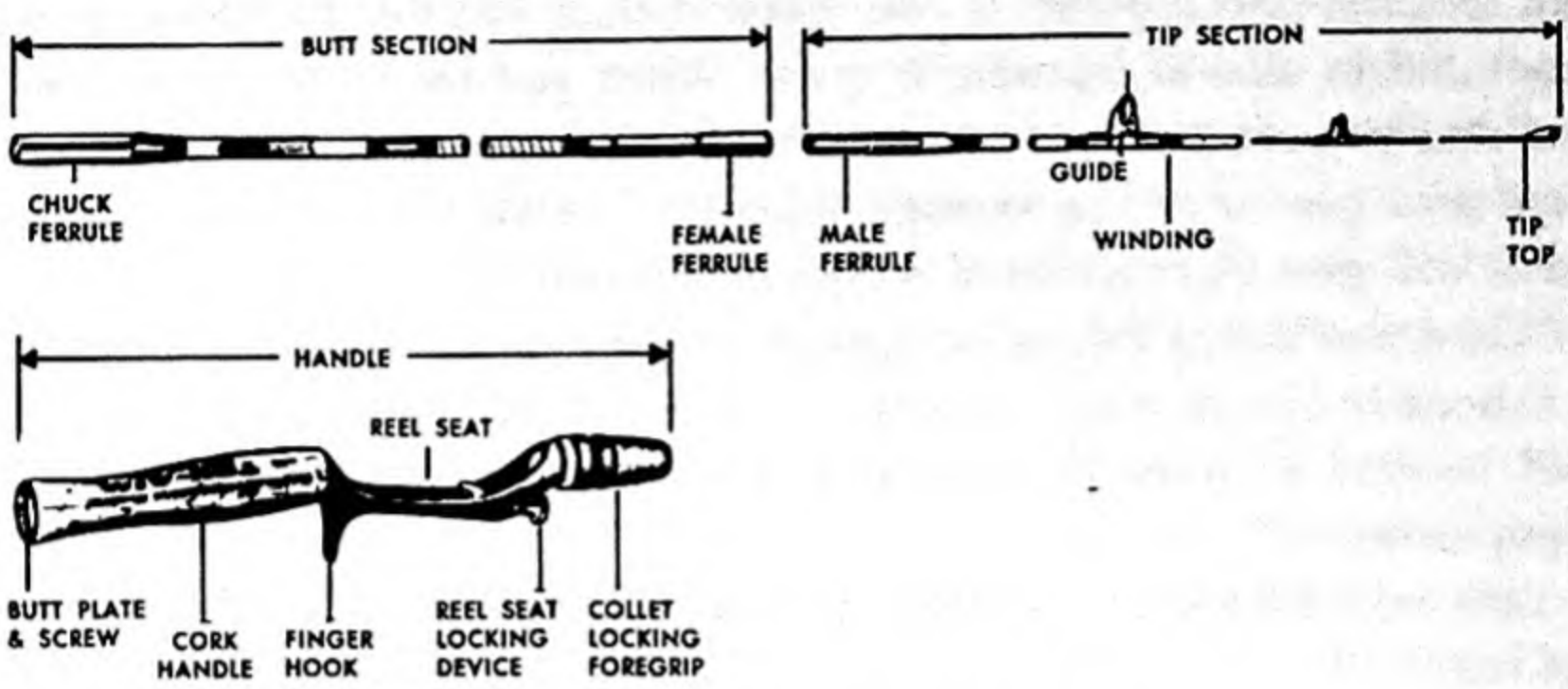
Bait-casting tackle

Bait casting is the most widely recognized method of taking game fish on artificial lures in the United States, although the spinning-gear user (including the push-button or spin-cast fisherman) is closing in on the plugger's —as bait-casters are called—long-time lead. All but a few die-hard spin fishermen, however, would argue that husky muskies, big bass, and giant northern pike are best fished for with bait-casting tackle.

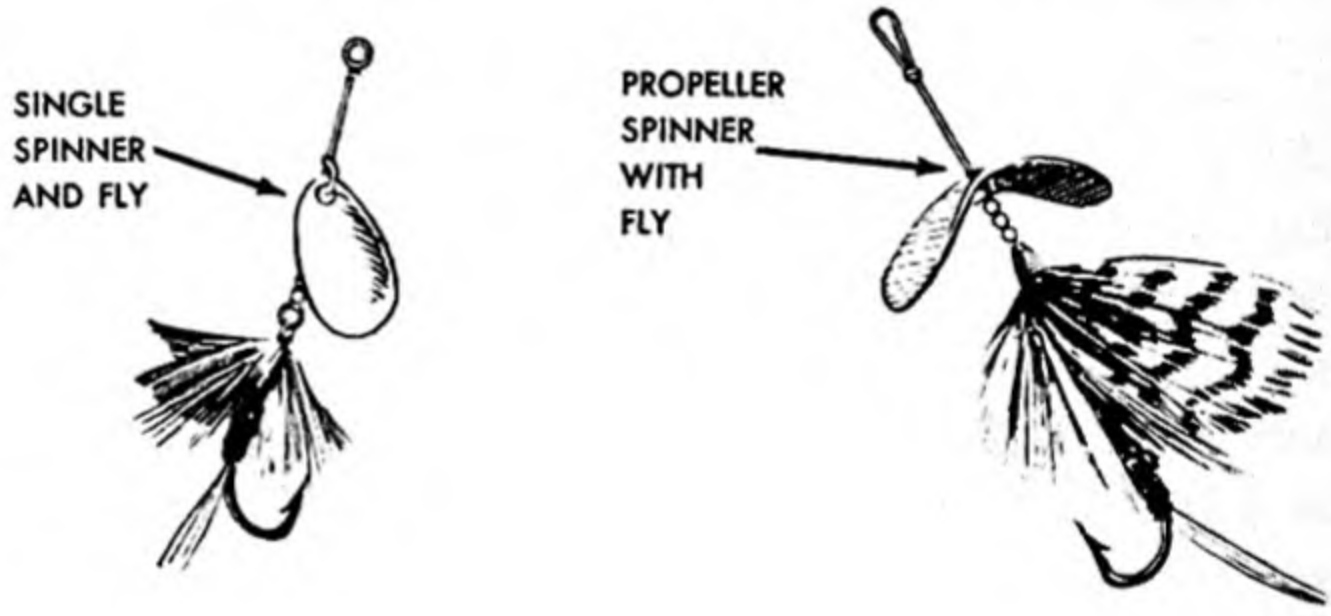
The basic functions of bait-casting tackle, as with any fishing gear, are to put a big meal before a big fish, to hook him solidly when he strikes, and then to control his frantic struggle to escape. The meal used in bait casting can be an artificial lure, or such natural bait as a minnow, a worm, or a grasshopper, weighted, if necessary, to carry it properly to the fish.

The aim in bait casting is to drop the bait exactly on target without undercasting, a miscalculation which will cause the line to continue rotating off the reel after the bait has dropped. This is the bugaboo of all casters; it inevitably means that the line will snarl on the reel or "backlash." At one time, the ability to drop the bait at just the right place took months to master. But with the tackle available today, it's possible for a beginner to master the fundamentals of bait casting in a few minutes. However, just as the proper tools are necessary in order to turn out good work in any skilled trade or profession, the proper casting outfit is necessary if you want to learn to cast well, and if you want to get the utmost enjoyment from the sport of fishing.

The success you have bait casting—and we mean the fish you catch—depends to a great extent on balanced tackle. (The term "balance," when applied to fishing tackle, means that the rod, reel, line, and lure are matched to each other for the best possible performance as a fishing unit.) The chart on page 20 illustrates the various balanced bait-casting outfits.



TYPE — FLY WITH SPINNER

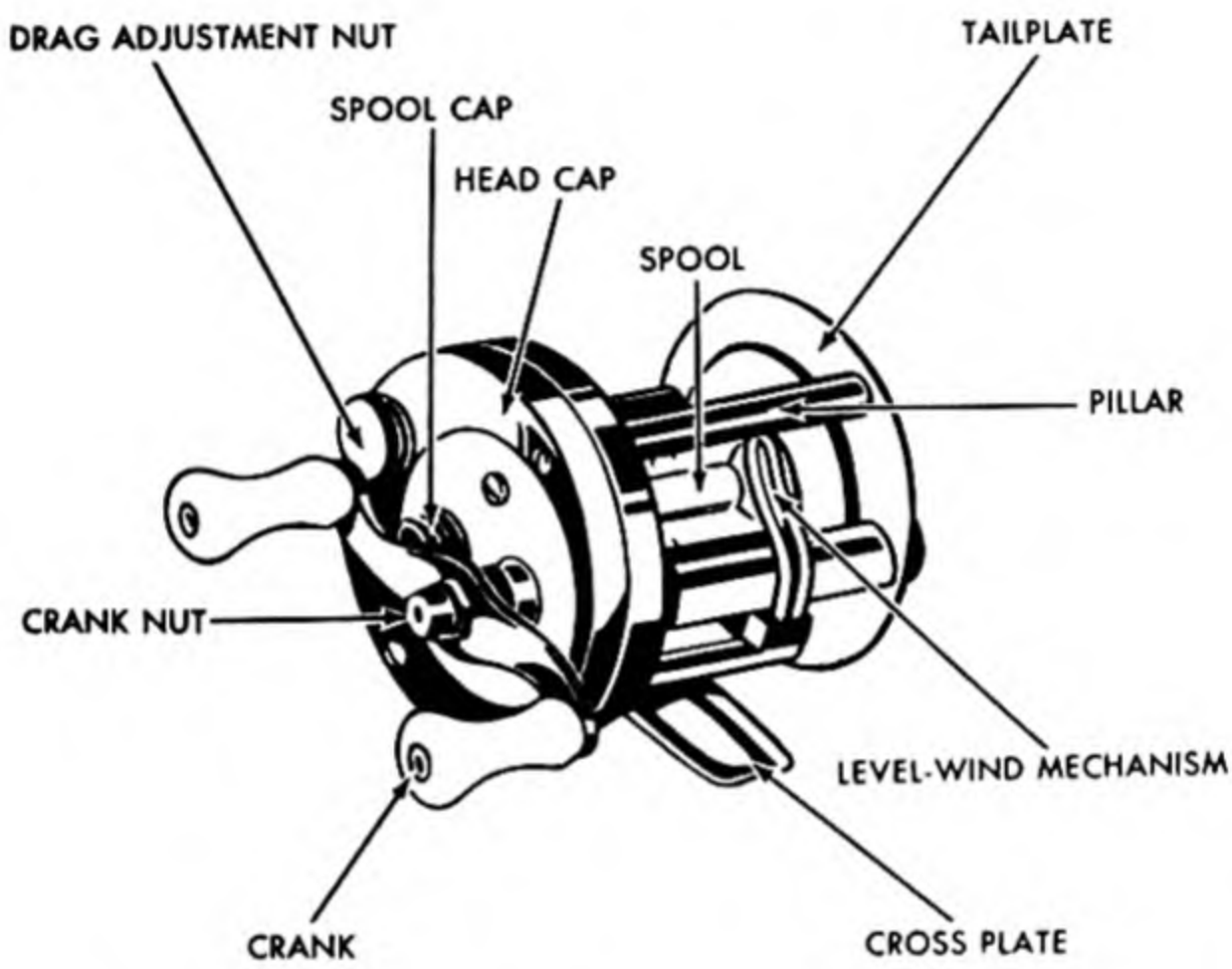


BAIT-CASTING ROD

The old-time plugging tackle was heavy and unresponsive. The rods were rigid and clublike, most of them only 4 to 5 feet long, with some as short as 3½ feet. The lures obtainable ran from ⅝ of an ounce on up. These heavy lures could be cast fairly well with the short, stiff rods and the heavy lines, but it took considerable skill to handle the outfit. Many sportsmen never quite mastered this old-fashioned tackle.

Today the average rods made for bait casting have a pleasant degree of lightness and flexibility. The vast majority are tubular glass fiber. The weight of the lure is one of the most important factors in choosing a bait-casting rod. In catalogues, rods are generally classified *extra-light* (XL), *light* (L), *medium* (M), or *heavy* (H) action. Unfortunately, this terminology

may prove confusing to the beginner. These four terms refer not to the type of action, but to the average weight of the lure that the rod will handle efficiently. ("Action" means the spring of the road, the whip that shoots the bait out over the water during the cast.) For this reason, the prospective purchaser of a rod is often faced with a dilemma when he attempts to choose the one action best suited to the type of lure he wishes to use. As a general rule, an extra-light rod is adapted to lures of ¼ ounce in weight or below; a light-action rod handles ⅜- to ½-ounce lures; a medium is best for ⅝-ounce lures; and a heavy, those above ¾ ounce.



The weight of the standard lures for various kinds of fish will be plainly marked on the lure itself or on the box that holds it. The beginner who doesn't know in advance what the routine lures weigh should browse through the ones displayed by his tackle dealer to decide what weights he'll use most. Most rod manufacturers today have adopted the use of the XL, L, M, and H marking we mentioned earlier.

Remember that the biggest fresh-water game fish that ever swam probably could be landed on an extra-light rod, but if you intend to cast ¾-ounce lures, you need a fairly stiff and powerful rod. On the other hand, it would be difficult to cast ¼-ounce lures successfully with such a rod; they call for one that is lighter and more flexible.

The lengths of modern glass-fiber bait-casting rods usually range from about 5 feet, 2 inches to 6 feet. Again, the kind of fishing and the weight of the lure will determine the length best suited to you. For casting lures weighing less than ½ ounce, an adequate rod should have light action, should measure approximately 5 feet, 8 inches to 6 feet long. For lures in the

½- to ¾-ounce class, a 5-foot, 8-inch rod with medium action should be about right. For lures ranging from ¾ ounce and up, a good bet is a heavy-action rod about 5 feet, 2 inches long. While some bait-casting rods are two-piece, the majority are one-piece with a detachable handle.

The suggestions we've made on the selection of a rod are necessarily general ones. If you're fortunate enough to have a store that has facilities for test casting, by all means use them. If you have a friend who's an experienced bait-caster, ask him to help you with your tackle shopping.

BAIT-CASTING REELS

Today's bait-casting reel is truly an American product. American ingenuity created it, and American production has made it available at popular prices.

The first reels similar to modern bait-casting devices were made shortly after 1800 by watchmakers in Kentucky's Bluegrass Region, even then a famous bass-fishing area. George Snyder, a watchmaker and silversmith who lived in Paris, Kentucky, probably constructed the first multiplying reel. The early bait-casting reels, designed to handle such baits as frogs and crayfish, had jeweled bearings of hard, brittle sapphire; hand-tooled spiral gears with a 4:1 ratio close to that of today's models; and metal spools. But they had no level-wind mechanism, no antibacklash features, no free-running spools. Modern bait-casting reels, however, leave little to be desired.

The weight of the lures you plan to cast is the determining factor in the type of reel you select, just as it is with the rod. If you plan to fish with lures weighing from ½ to ¾ ounce, ask your tackle dealer for a bait-casting reel equipped with level-wind, antibacklash control, all-purpose free-spooling, with a spool that starts moderately easily. If you plan to cast a lure from ¼ to ½ ounce in weight, ask for the above reel in the light or sporty type with an easy-starting spool. For lures of the ½-ounce class, the ultralight reel with a fast-starting spool is necessary. (Such a reel is not recommended for beginners.) For lures heavier than ¾ ounce, a heavy-duty reel is best.

Many reels have cork or plastic arbors which can be placed over the spool. They permit you to fill the spool without using excessive amounts of line. Without an arbor, for example, a reel may require 100 yards of line; with an arbor you may need only 50 yards to fill the spool to capacity. Since 50 yards of line will be sufficient in many types of fishing, an arbor saves you from spooling the extra line. Your reel should always be filled to capacity, with or without the help of an arbor, because the line starts away from the reel more quickly and makes fewer revolutions when filled. Casting is therefore easier on both the reel and the angler.

BAIT-CASTING LINES

Lines for bait casting may be either braided nylon or monofilament, but the latter should be used only on reels (called "mono-reels") designed especially for its use. The braided line consists of fine synthetic threads that are braided into a line. The monofilament is a single strand of synthetic material. In recent years the soft monofilament line has become popular for use on mono-reels in 12-pound test or less, while the nylon braided line is more popular for over 15-pound test. ("Pound test" is a term indicating the dead weight that a line or leader will support. This is a standard way of classifying fishing lines.) In the near future, the development of newer soft monofilament may make heavy lines easier to cast.

Most bait-casters use a pound test line that is heavier than necessary for their fishing. This cuts down on their sport and makes casting more difficult. The chart on page 20 indicates the weight of line you should use to match your rod and lure.

Black long reigned supreme as the preferred color for fishing lines, but today other colors are becoming popular—green, charcoal, tan, various shades of gray, and even blended colors. Although black looks invisible from above, it may not be so from the fish's point of view. We don't think it makes a great deal of difference which you choose.

BAIT-CASTING LEADERS

Leaders may serve either of two important functions. Some are relatively invisible and deceive the fish by making the lure or bait appear to be unattached to a line. Others constitute a cutproof and chafeproof link between the lure and the easily severed line. The two functions are quite different, and a leader which performs one of them usually will not perform the other.

When you are fishing with monofilament line, a separate leader between line and lure is usually unnecessary, because the entire line acts as a leader. The line may be tied directly to the lure. (A snap connector attached to the end of the line will come in handy for changing lures.) When using spinners or other lures that spin when being retrieved, a snap swivel—or a snap and a couple of swivels—may be necessary. Without swivels tied ahead of them, such lures will twist your line. This can cause considerable annoyance, besides rendering the spinner nearly useless as a fish attractor. Use the smallest snaps and swivels you can obtain for the size of the lure. The balance on some modern lures is so precise that using a heavy swivel and snap may ruin its action. When you are not using a monofilament line, a level nylon leader should generally be used. Full details on these leaders can be found on page 37.

When you are out for sharp-tooth fish, or are fishing in areas dotted with

rocks or sharp coral, a wire leader or trace is advisable, regardless of the type of line you are using. You may catch dozens of these fish without using a wire leader or trace, but sooner or later you're going to lose a good one. As a rule, however, a 4- to 6-inch leader with a snap and swivel will put an end to such calamities and will also prevent line twisting. You can now buy wire traces which are almost as invisible as monofilament. They are a stainless-steel wire covered with nylon. For most fresh-water fishing, the 15-pound test wire-and-nylon is about right.

BAIT-CASTING TACKLE ASSEMBLY GUIDE

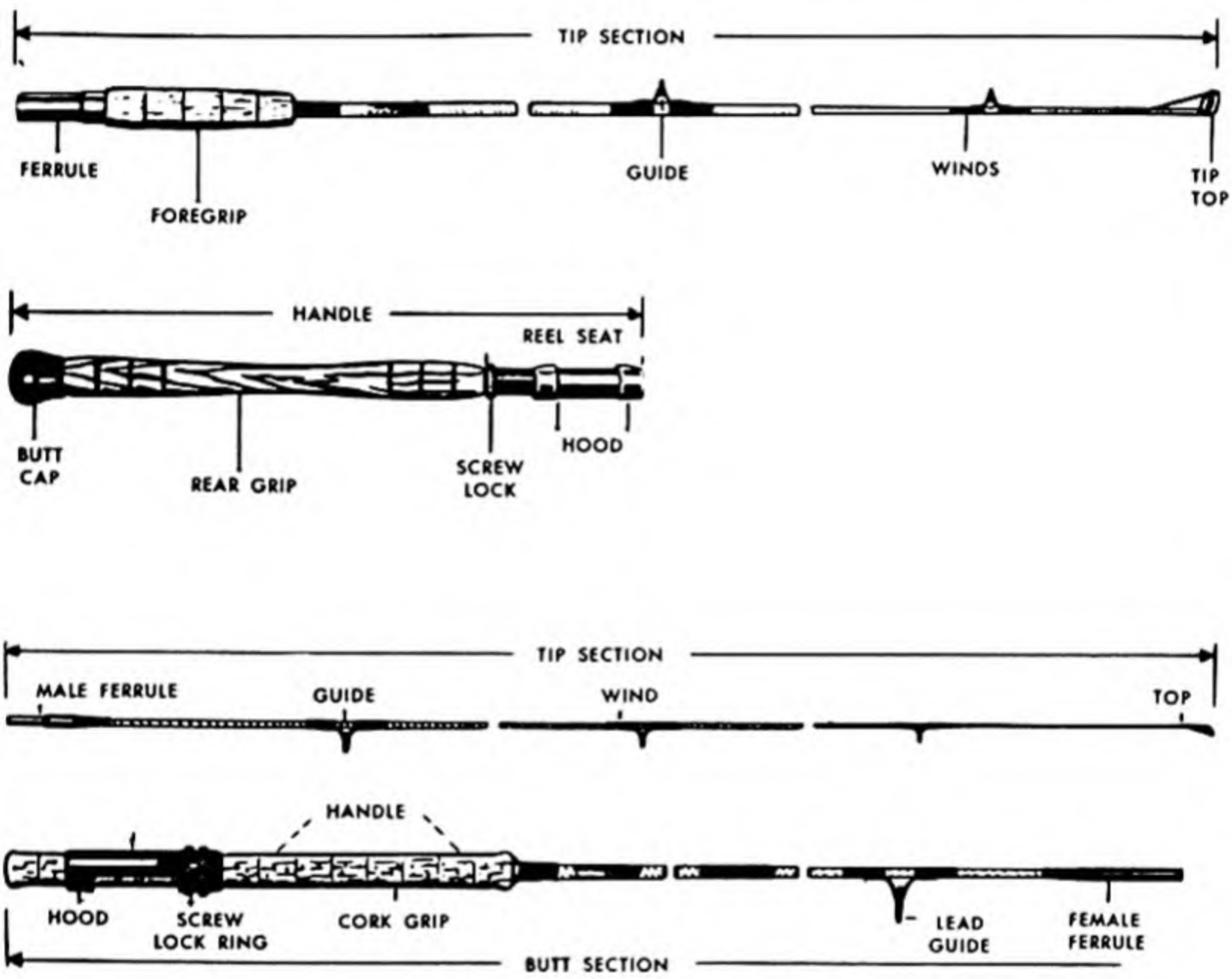
Type of Fishing	*Reel*	*Rod*	*Lines (Lb. Test)*	*Lures (Ounces)*
Small bass, panfish	Ultra-light	Extra-light 6′, 6′6″	6 to 10	¼—best; ⅛ & ⅜—good
Bass, pickerel, walleye, small northern pike	Sporty	Light 5′8″, 6′	10 to 12½	⅜—best; ¼ & ½—good
Big bass, walleye, northern pike; fresh-water trolling	Regular	Light 5′2″, 5′8″	15	½—best; ⅜ & ⅝—good
Walleye, northern pike, muskie, tarpon; fresh-water trolling, salt-water casting	All-purpose	Medium 5′2″, 5′8″	15 to 20	⅝—best; ⅜, ½, ¾—good
Lake trout, tarpon, salmon, striped bass; heavy-duty, fresh-water trolling, salt-water casting	Heavy duty	Heavy 4′6″, 5′2″	18 to 30	¾ and up

Spinning tackle

Spinning isn't, as it is often claimed, a new fishing method. The first fishermen who coiled fish line at their feet and flung the bait out into the water were spin fishermen. Hundreds of years ago, none other than Izaak Walton wrote about spinning for trout and salmon, but he was referring to baits and lures that spun as they were retrieved, regardless of the tackle used. Actually, in that sense the angler is spinning when using a lure that spins. But in the modern concept of the terms, it means angling with spinning tackle; a rod with its characteristic large line guides, that is neither a

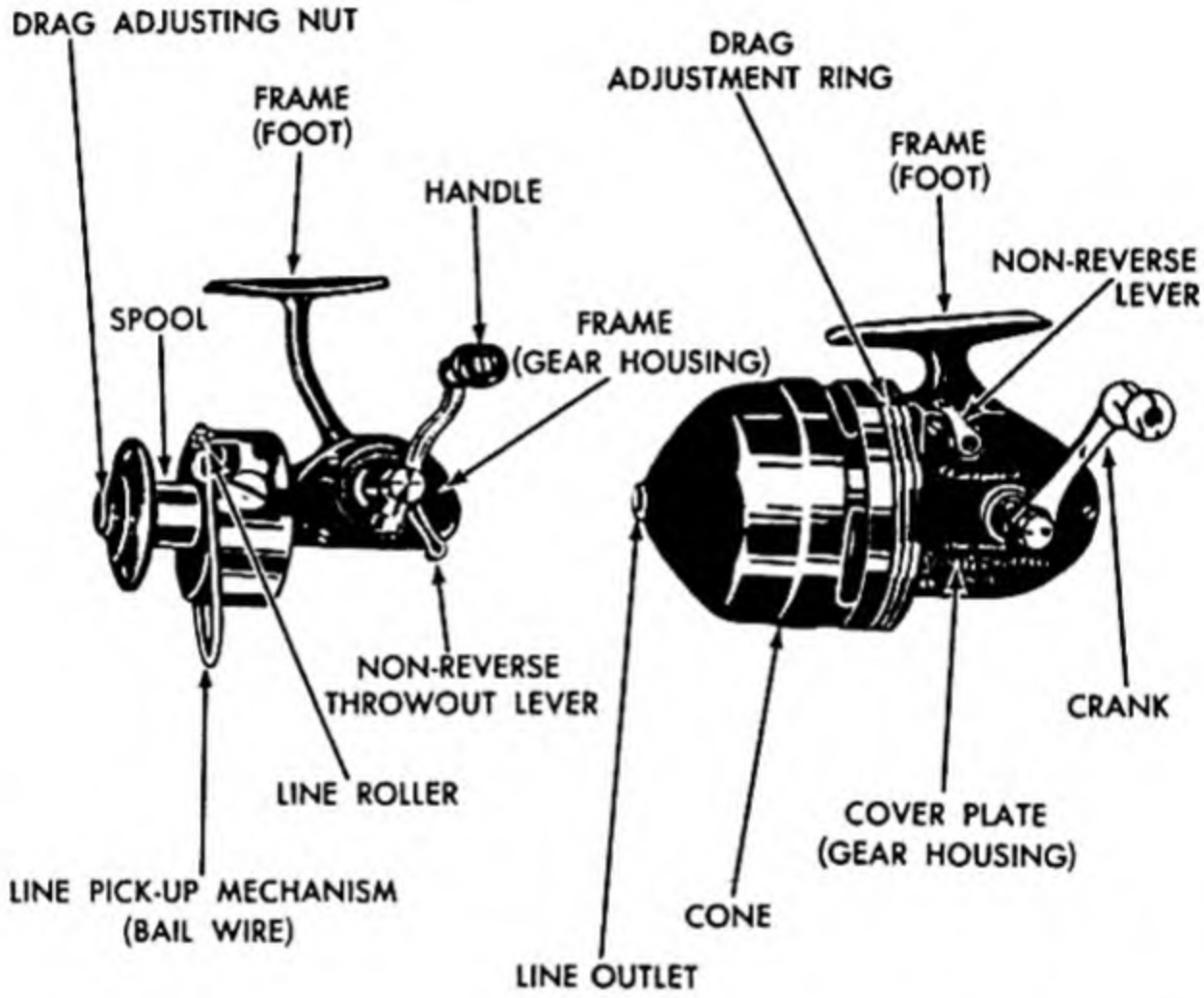
fly rod nor a bait rod, but a combination of both. The fixed spool reel hangs down beneath the long cork handle. So equipped, the angler is able now to cast lighter lures than those generally used with bait-casting tackle and heavier than those used with a fly rod. Bait, either the traditional worm, live bait, or cut bait, can be cast long distances.

The fixed spool reel, which is the basis of modern spinning tackle, originated among anglers of Southern Europe in the seventeenth century. In the early eighteenth century the Basques were using a unique mechanism that looked like a bird cage. Still later, Scotsmen wore trays on their chests



on which a great amount of line was coiled. The Swiss combined the two and designed the first belt reel. It had a spool that remained stationary throughout both the cast and the retrieve. Thirty years ago in England, a man named Holden Illingsworth introduced the first practical spinning reel. He is credited with the first roller or manual line pick-up which revolved around the reel spool, contrary to the conventional winch of the level-winding, revolving, bait-casting type reel. This contraption enabled even the novice to cast like an expert and soon all were catching bigger fish than they had ever dreamed possible. Reels of this type underwent constant improvement and spinning began to make its definite niche in American angling prior to World War II. Since then, of course, spinning has been literally taking the country by storm.

The most unorthodox part of the spinning equipment is the reel. It has no revolving spool, thus backlashes are automatically eliminated. Then, too, the line runs silently through the rod guides with no drag. It is possible to cast a quarter-ounce lure more than one hundred feet with very little effort. In retrieving line the reel handle is cranked in the usual way, a wire finger picking up the line and winding it smoothly and easily in neat coils on the stationary reel drum. It is equipped with a slipping clutch that will allow a fish to take out line even while the angler is reeling in. This clutch, or drag, may be adjusted without tools to correspond with the weight of the line used.



The slipping clutch permits the use of a line much lighter than the bait rods will handle without breaking as there is never any dead pull against it. These lines range from 3- to 5-pound test and are constructed of braided nylon or synthetic gut. It is possible to take fish weighing more than the breaking test of the line. The smaller line also permits more capacity for the reel, which is a very important item considering the fact that casts of one hundred feet or more are common.

Many people attribute the popularity of spinning to its ease of casting, a marked advantage for beginners. However, spinning is more than a lazy man's answer to the casting problem. While it is true that the fundamentals of spinning are easily learned, the fine points of using spinning tackle will be mastered only with practice.

Spinning has opened many new avenues of fun for the angler. Truly amazing records are being established by spin men these days. For those who seek trophy fish in the light-tackle division, the field is wide-open. A

150-pound marlin has been fought to a belly-up finish in running seas with an 8-pound test monofilament line. One angler, after a two-hour fight, landed a 261-pound mako shark on spinning gear with 12-pound test monofilament line. Giant muskies, pike, salmon, lake trout, tarpon, and many other tackle-busters have been licked to a standstill. With spinning tackle, whether you have hooked a big fish or a small one, every ounce of the fish's strength must be exhausted before he can be brought in for the net or gaff.

Spinning wasn't designed to replace bait casting. To the contrary, spinning, as we know it, is simply a method of casting, not fishing. Although it is just another means of accomplishing the same thing as the bait-casting outfits, there is sufficient difference in the operation and action of the two to give them individual merit.

As in the selection of any tackle, a balanced outfit is important in spinning. Therefore, let's take a look at the points you should consider when selecting spinning tackle.

SPINNING REELS

There are two major types of spinning reels available at your local tackle dealer. They are the opened-face spool and the closed-face spool. In casting, the line spirals off the end of the stationary spool. In retrieving, the line is wound back onto the opened-face spool by a full bail, a revolving finger, or a manual roller. The line pick-up with a closed-face spinning reel is accomplished by a pin or lug which engages the line inside the housing. When a fish pulls out the line, the spool revolves under a braking power, or drag. Ordinarily, you will retrieve the line with your less skilled hand—a right-hander cranks with his left hand and a left-hander cranks with his right. At first, this system seems awkward, but it has the great advantage of allowing you to cast your lures and play your fish with the rod in your skilled hand. There is no shifting of the rod from hand to hand, as in bait casting.

Opened-face reels, as we have said, have three types of line pick-up: full bail, finger pick-up—both of which are automatic—and roller or manual pick-up. The full-bail mechanism is characterized by a crescent of metal, wirelike in appearance. This half-circle of wire passes over the entire spool and is fastened on both sides of the cup or rotating head. In casting, the bail is pushed out of the way by passing it over the end of the spool. At the end of the cast, when the lure hits the water, or while it is still in the air, a turn of the handle flips the bail over the spool into the retrieving position.

The finger pick-up reel features an appendage similiar in appearance to the human index finger. This piece of sharp, stiff metal wire is attached to one side of the rotating head and is fastened in place by a hingelike fixture.

Because it is easy to injure a finger on the sharp metal appendage, we don't recommend this type of spinning reel pick-up for beginners.

The last method of line pick-up, the roller, is manual. It consists of a hook or roller permanently attached to the side of the revolving cup. When casting, you lift the line from the pick-up hook with your finger and make your cast. At the end of the cast, or, to be more exact, while the line is still going out and the lure has almost hit the water, you extend the index finger of your casting hand and interrupt the flow of the line. As the line strikes your finger, you catch it. By drawing it away from the spool toward the rod handle, you place it in position to be picked up by the hook. Then you turn the reel handle, and the pick-up hook comes around and catches the line. It requires some practice to achieve the proper finger technique, but many expert anglers like the manual method because line is more easily controlled by it.

As the name implies, the closed-face spinning reels have completely enclosed spools. The line, instead of running from the reel in large spirals, is conducted through a hole in the face of the cone. This hole reduces the spiraling of the line and makes it possible to use the closed-face reel on a fly rod.

One of the major advantages of the closed-face spinning reel is its operational ease for beginners. Because the outer cone prevents large billowing spirals of line (characteristic of opened-face reels), this type of reel is more adaptable to night fishing and windy conditions. Contrary to the opinion of many experts, carefully conducted tests on the water proved that the outer cone increases the distance and efficiency of the cast rather than restricting the line flow. The closed-face reel has a pick-up that is more positive under all conditions than the opened-face reel, and accidental spilling of the line into uncontrolled loose spirals is impossible. In our own opinion, for most fresh-water spinning, the closed-face reel will give the ultimate in performance for the average angler.

A fish is played with the pick-up mechanism closed and the line engaged over the roller. In the best makes of spinning reels, the spool will rotate in reverse under tension and give out line. There is an adjustable brake which governs the amount of this tension; and it can be set very easily while you are fighting a fish from zero—no drag—to a completely locked position, which prevents the spool from turning entirely. Since spinning is a method of employing light lines, a slip-clutch drag is considered best because, when the line is being pulled beyond its limits, it will allow the spool to slip. It should have a working action that is smooth and consistent, one that will not freeze during the sustained run of a large fish.

On popular closed-face reels, the slip-clutch drag takes the form of a micrometer-type arrangement in which the outer cone is adjustable. The

micrometer ring is tightened for more drag; loosened for less. Opened-face reels are generally equipped with a slip-clutch friction disc drag which is incorporated in the spool nut. By turning the nut clockwise, you increase the braking action by tightening. Turning the nut counterclockwise will decrease the drag. The drag should be set slightly under the line-breaking strength for most situations.

SPINNING RODS

The modern spinning rod is almost always made of tubular glass fiber. Like bait-casting rods, the spinning varieties can be roughly divided into light-, medium-, and heavy-action classes. These classes are based on the weight of the lures they cast best. For example, light-action rods will cast lures from ⅛ to ⅜ ounce; medium-action rods perform best when casting lures from ¼ to ⅝ ounce; and heavy-action rods are used with lures from ½ to 1 ounce. Some heavy-duty, salt-water rods cast lures up to 4 ounces, while with extra-light or ultra-light spin rods you can cast a lure weighing less than 1/16 ounce.

For the spin fisherman who wishes to cast lures from ⅛ to ⅝ ounce as well as live bait, omni-action rods are ideal. These rods feature a design known as progressive taper. This means that the butt portion is swelled to give the rod body. From the butt the section tapers to a flexible tip that permits the use of a wide range of lures from light to heavy. This sensitive tip also gives lifelike lure action—instantly relaying every movement the fish makes—while the powerful swelled butt allows for better hook-setting and fish-getting power. Because of the popularity of omni-action in spinning rods, it is now available on bait-casting rods as well. Omni-action rods will handle lures from ⅛ to 1 ounce as well as live bait.

Universal-action is similar to omni-action, but this spinning-rod design is usually capable of handling live bait and lures in the ¼-to-⅝-ounce range only. Neither omni- nor universal-action types were designed to replace the single-action rod for the angler who wishes to specialize in one range of lures. For example, the ultra-light-action rod is still best for the fisherman who wishes to use lures in the ¼-ounce class and smaller.

The length of the rod in fresh-water spinning is not an important consideration since the majority of spin-rod manufacturers are turning them out only in the 6-, 6½-, and 7-foot lengths for all three action classes as well as the omni-action type. Shorter or longer lengths are rarely required. (Some ultra-light models, however, are available in lengths as short as 5 feet.)

If you fish areas where very long casts are needed, a longer rod may prove more satisfactory. It is also best for keeping your line high off the water when using surface lures among weeds and obstructions or if you plan to use your spin rod for fly fishing with a bubble (see page 124). When

it comes to casting, very light lures and live bait are handled better on the longer lengths.

But if your lures vary from light to heavy, a 6½-foot rod will serve best. While most fresh-water rods are for one-handed casting, the salt-water spinning rod is usually designed for two-handed casting and ranges in length from 7 to 10½ feet over-all.

The line guides on spinning rods are unlike those found on conventional rods. Spinning guides are extra large. When you sight through a set of guides on a rod, the line-up should resemble an elongated cone. It will be seen from this that the various guides making up a set bear a definite relationship to each other as far as size and offset from the rod are concerned. The first guide has a large ring and should be set well off the rod; each succeeding one is smaller, set closer to the rod. The purpose of the large guides is to gather in the loops of the line that come off the reel during the cast, gradually reducing them in size. To prevent the line from striking the rod, the guides are elevated slightly off the rod.

Spinning rods have three different types of reel seats. The simplest consists of two sliding metal rings or winch bands which are forced over the foot of the reel. This system is easy to use, comfortable and light. The second is the fixed reel seat—a locking system, which is built into the rod grip so that it cannot be moved from place to place. This type assures wobbleproof reel attachment. The third type is the sliding-locking reel seat, which permits you to move the reel up or down on the rod handle in balance with the weight of the lure.

SPINNING LINES

Of the two types of spinning line—monofilament and braided synthetic fibers—monofilament is generally more popular. According to Henry Shakespeare, the size of the line you purchase will depend on several factors: the weight of the lures you'll cast; the weight and stiffness of the rod; the type of fishing; and the nature of your catch.

Let's take these one by one and see how they affect the choice of the line strength. If you're using light lures running from 1/16 to ¼ ounce, for example, you can use lines testing only 2 to 4 pounds. For average-weight spin lures running from ¼ to ½ ounce, you can use a 4- or 6-pound test. If you plan to use heavier lures, say ½ to 1 ounce, you'll find a 10- or 12-pound more practical. For lures a bit heavier, a 15-pound test is best. For the beginner, however, we would recommend nothing lighter than 6-pound test even with light lures. Once you have become familiar with handling fish, you can go on to the lighter lines.

The rod action also governs the size of the line used. A long, limber rod will take up the shock of casting and playing a fish much better than a short, stiff rod. They will take light lines well. In open waters where a fish is allowed to run freely, you can land big fish on light lines. But in snag-infested waters, a heavier line will be required.

The size and species of the fish which you are after also govern the choice of line. If the bass in a lake or the trout in a stream are fairly small, a 4-pound test line is ample. If the fish are larger, a 6-pound test is more suitable, while for bigger fish—tarpon, Atlantic salmon, muskies, lake trout, northern pike—10- to 15-pound test lines are to be preferred.

SPINNING TACKLE ASSEMBLY GUIDE

Type of Fishing	*Reel*	*Rod*	*Lines (Lb. Test)*	*Lures (Ounces)*
Crappie, brook trout, bass, sunfish, perch, bluegill	Light	Extra-light Light 6′6″ or 7′	2, 4, 6	⅛ to ⅜
Spotted, white, small-mouth, large-mouth bass; brown, rainbow trout, grayling	Medium-light	Light 6′6″ or 7′	4, 6, 8	¼ to ½
Large bass, snook, steel-head, walleye, cutthroat	Medium	Medium 6′6″ or 7′	6, 8, 10	⅜ to ¾
Tarpon, muskie, north-ern pike, lake trout, Atlantic salmon, bonefish	Medium-heavy	Salt-water class 7′ to 8′6″	10, 12, 15	½ to 1
Salt-water surf and boat	Heavy	Salt-water class 9′ to 10′6″	12, 15, 20	1 to 4

Spin-cast or push-button tackle

Push-button spinning or spin casting, which combines the major advantages of both bait casting and conventional spinning, is the newest method of presenting your lure to the fish. Spin-cast or push-button reels are a variation on the conventional closed-face spinning reel, retaining the fixed-spool principle of spinning for effortless, backlash-free casting. The

push-button does the work of the bail in the standard opened-face spinning reels. These reels also have a smooth drag which permits use of light line even on heavy fish. The reel is placed on top of the rod in a regular bait-casting reel position which permits more accuracy than the conventional spinning rig.

In recent years, push-button tackle has become the favorite of fishermen in average fresh-water angling for fish under 3 pounds. By this we don't mean to imply that the tackle can't be used to take bigger fish. Some of the newer reels are capable of handling lines of 15-pound test and up, and the outfits are being used for bigger game fish. But the popularity of this gear can be traced directly to the average fresh-water angler who goes after bass and panfish.

Almost anyone can learn to use push-button tackle efficiently in a few minutes. Of all the methods of casting, it is the easiest to learn, and you can employ almost all the popular lures up to ⅝ ounce in weight, as well as live bait. In other words, push-buttons are the ticket to a great deal of trouble-free fishing for both novice and expert.

When the push-button or spin-cast reel made its appearance on the market, the rods and lines employed were those designed specifically for either conventional spinning or bait casting. While this tackle was relatively satisfactory, it was not the final answer. Today, thanks to the research of tackle manufacturers, push-button tackle has been developed that is properly, accurately balanced.

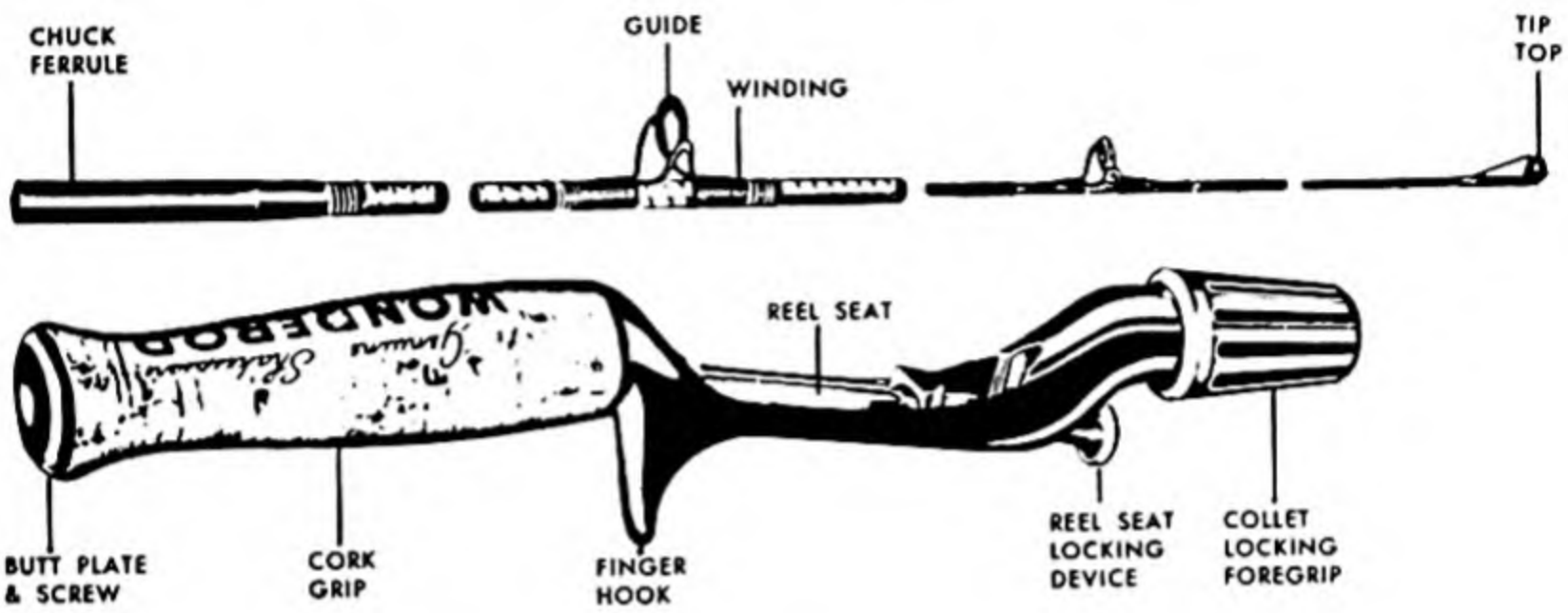
PUSH-BUTTON OR SPIN-CAST RODS

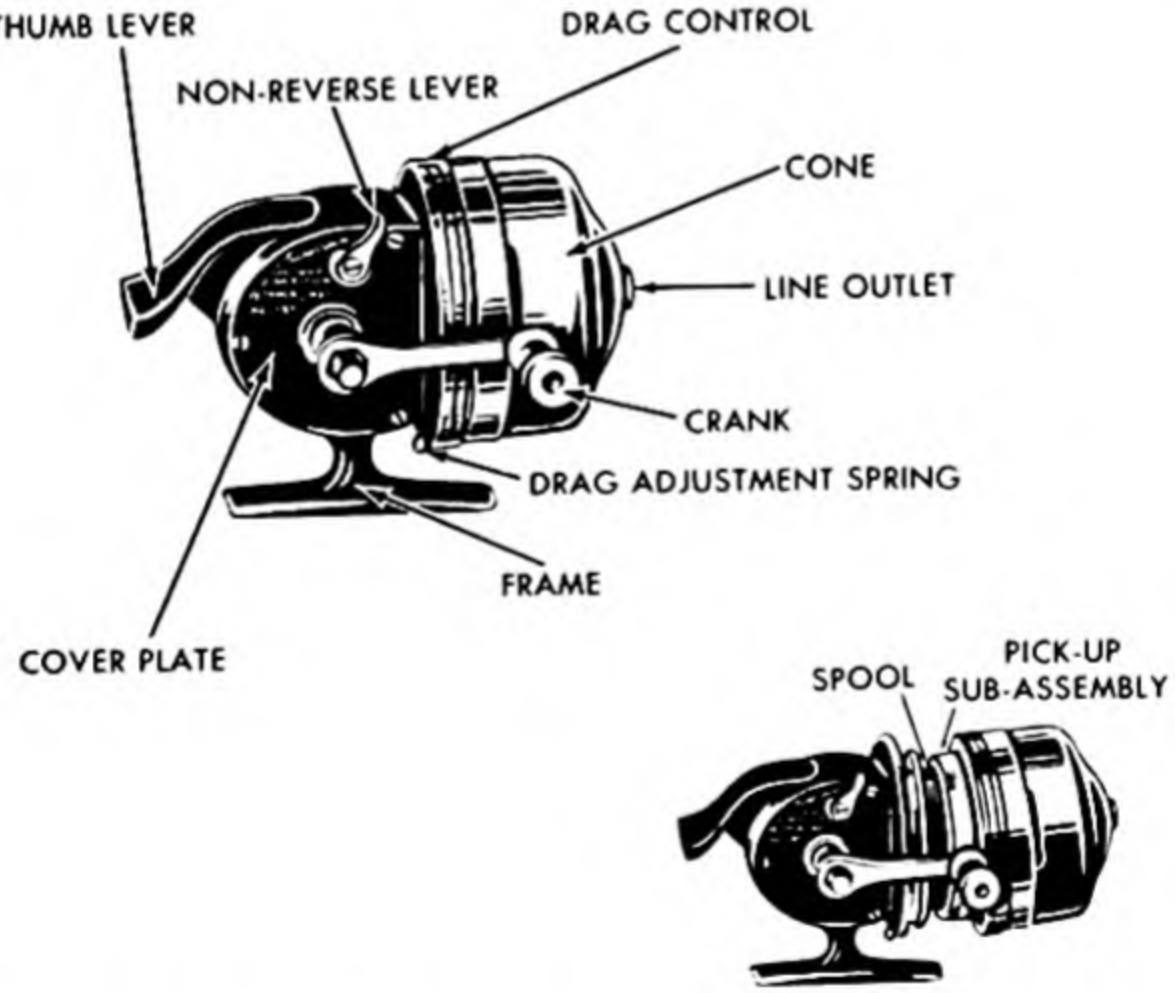
When you first look at a push-button or spin-cast rod, it looks the same as those used in bait casting. The reel is placed in the same type of reel seat and in the same position as that of a bait-casting reel. (The fact is that push-button reels will fit regular bait-casting rods as well as push-button rods.) But if you examine a push-button rod—one designed especially for perfect balance with the new reels—you'll notice several important differences.

The push-button or spin-cast rods are generally longer (6, 6½, or 7 feet) than the bait-casting rods. As was stated earlier in this book, you'll usually find that unless a rod is specifically designed for heavier action, the longer the rod, the lighter the action it will have. Thus, with most push-button rods you cast a lighter lure—or live bait—better than you can with a shorter rod. Also, the action and the fast, responsive tips of these rods wear down the fish, minimizing the direct line-breaking pull. Guides are generally of the larger spin variety. Longer rods are two-piece, ferrule-jointed for easy carrying and storage. Aside from these differences, push-button and bait-casting rods are the same.

PUSH-BUTTON OR SPIN-CAST LINES

The lines almost exclusively used in push-button casting are monofilament of the type used for conventional spinning. While braided nylon lines have been used with these reels, better casts are usually obtained with monofilament. The weight of the lure determines the pound test of the line employed. A light lure requires a light line for proper casting. Follow the recommendations in the chart which appears on page 30.





It should be kept in mind that even though a heavy lure will cast much better on a light line, the breaking strength of the line should be suited to the size of the fish you are after.

PUSH-BUTTON OR SPIN-CAST REELS

As was stated earlier, push-button or spin-cast reels are equipped with the best features of both the conventional spinning and the bait-casting

types. They have the additional advantage of the accuracy, and the feel, of bait-casting reels. The caster uses the push-button device on the reel to free the line for making the cast, then employs the thumb button to stop the line from coming out of the reel. Most reels are equipped with nonreversible controls for trolling or for fighting a fish. Because of its position, the push-button reel helps to balance the rod in much the same manner as does the bait-casting reel.

PUSH-BUTTON OR SPIN-CAST TACKLE ASSEMBLY GUIDE

Type of Fishing	*Reel*	*Rod*	*Line (Lb. Test)*	*Lures (Ounces)*
Crappie, perch, bluegill, sunfish, trout, bass; sporty casting	Light	Extra-light 6′, 6′6″, 7′	4, 6	¼—best; ⅛ to ½—good
Big bass, pickerel, walleye, northern pike, muskies; fresh-water trolling	Medium	Light 6′, 6′6″, 7′	8 to 12	⅜—best; ¼ to ⅝—good
Snook, bonefish, Atlantic salmon, walleye, northern pike, muskie; fresh-water trolling, salt-water casting	Medium-heavy	Medium 6′ or 6′6″	12, 15, 20	⅝—best; ⅜ to 1—good

Fly-fishing tackle

In the world of angling, skillful fishing with the artificial fly is the criterion by which the angler's highest talents are judged. This adroit, often delicate method of presenting a lure to a fish has, through the years, become almost as much of a game in itself as actually bringing the fish to net. And fishermen agree that taking fish, whatever the species, on the fly offers the greatest challenge and satisfaction.

There seems to be some confusion as to exactly what is meant by fly fishing. Originally it was used only for trout and salmon, but fishermen have found that it is one of the most sporting ways to take *any* fish that will strike an artificial lure—bass, crappie, bluegills, shad, and such salt-water species as tarpon and bonefish. The bait or "fly" used is a lightweight insect or an

artificial lure; it may be a "dry fly" or a "popping bug" which float on the surface, or a "wet fly" which floats just under the surface.

Fly casting, which could appropriately be called "line casting," utilizes the weight of the line rather than the weight of the lure to achieve distance. Because of this fact, it's very important that the fly line is of sufficient weight to match the action and strength built into the rod. As nearly as we can determine, poor tackle performance is chiefly responsible for the beginner's belief that fly casting is too difficult to learn.

The rod and line are the vital items in fly fishing. Purchase the best you can afford, even if it means you must settle for a low-priced reel. The fly reel is, in effect, a storage place for the line which is stripped from it prior to casting. All the established manufacturers make good fly lines, but the various lines have different dimensions and weights. You must have a line that fits your rod and the type of fishing conditions you will encounter.

FLY RODS

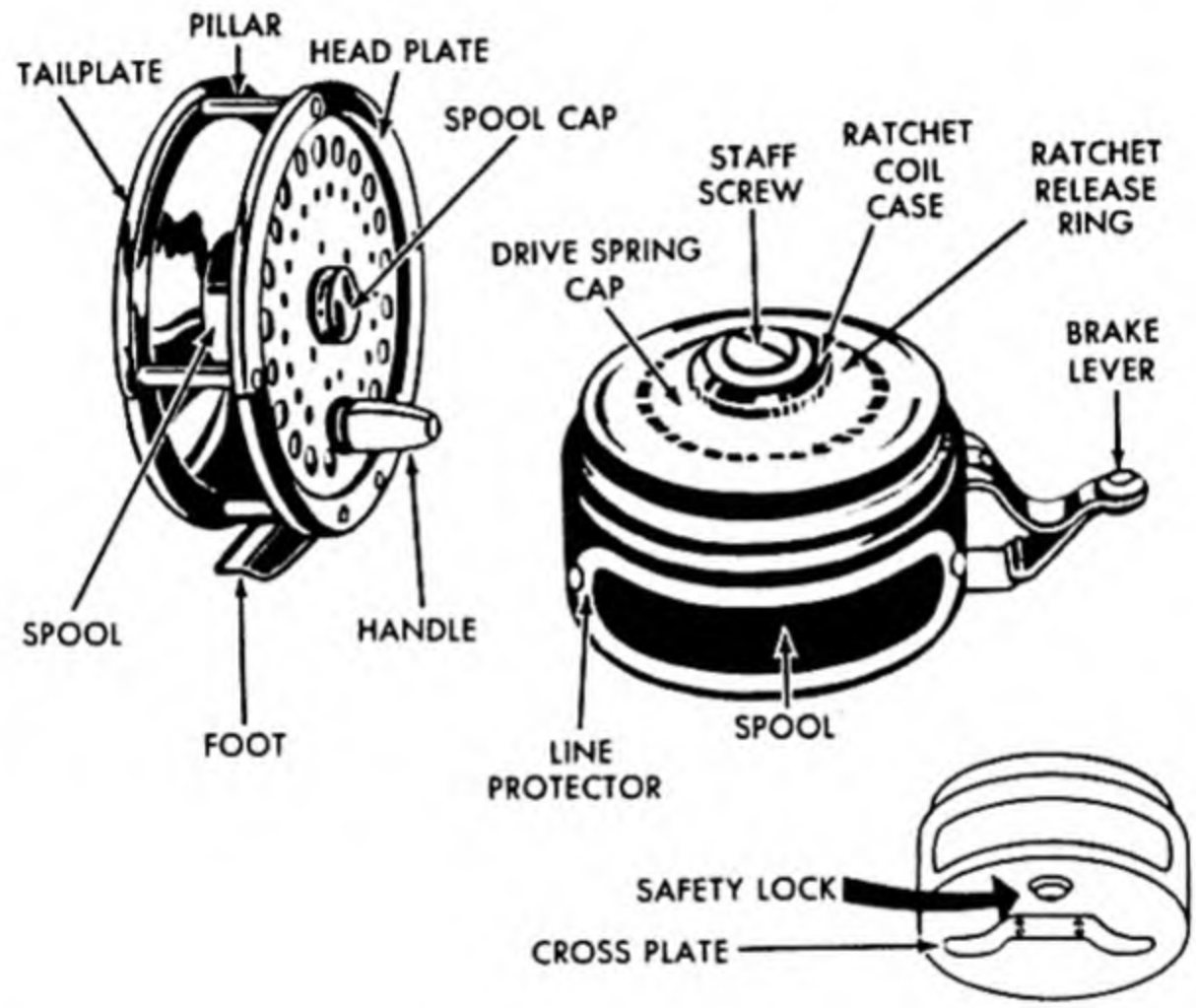
In the years before World War II, fly rods were usually made of split bamboo. There were a few hollow-metal fly rods around, it is true, and some of them had fairly decent action despite their weight, but most fishermen considered them far from satisfactory. In recent years, however, the development of the processed glass-fiber rods has been a boon to fly fishermen. These modern hollow-glass rods are light in weight and have all the desirable qualities of good split bamboo rods without their shortcomings—the great care required to protect the rods' finish and to prevent permanent sets or bends, the high cost of good bamboo. Fiberglas rods, on the other hand, require little care and their relatively moderate cost puts them within the reach of the budget-conscious angler.

The rod is, in the strictest sense, a lever used to impart momentum to the line. The weight of the line, when it is cast, bends the rod and thus utilizes its flexibility. The rod has a reel seat below the hand grasp so that the line may be stripped from the reel by the free hand. Fly rods are usually 7¾ to 9 feet in length but are available in both shorter and longer lengths for special purposes. They are usually composed of two or three sections and have a series of snake guides, starting with a ring guide 18 inches or so above the hand grasp, and ending with the ring at the tip of the rod. These guides permit a free passage of the line along its entire length. In weight, fly rods are anywhere from 3 to 6 ounces. (With most good rods, the weight includes guides, ferrules, reel seat, and tip.)

In addition to rod weight and length, you should consider the rod's casting action. Until a few years ago, most fly rods were classified as having wet-fly action, dry-fly action, bass-steelhead action, or salmon action. Wet-

fly—or, as they are often called, "trout"—rods generally have a soft, limber, whippy action, correct for lifting a wet fly from the water. They're very sporty for trout, panfish, and other small game fish taken with wet flies; they have a more gradual taper than rods built for dry-fly and bass-steelhead action.

Dry-fly rods have a moderately stiff, fast action centered near the tip. In other words, they have a comparatively stiff butt and middle joint, with a light-action tip. Such rods, as the name implies, are designed to handle dry flies and small lures for trout, panfish, etc. The bass-steelhead rods have very stiff action, and a sharper taper from butt to tip for use with heavier



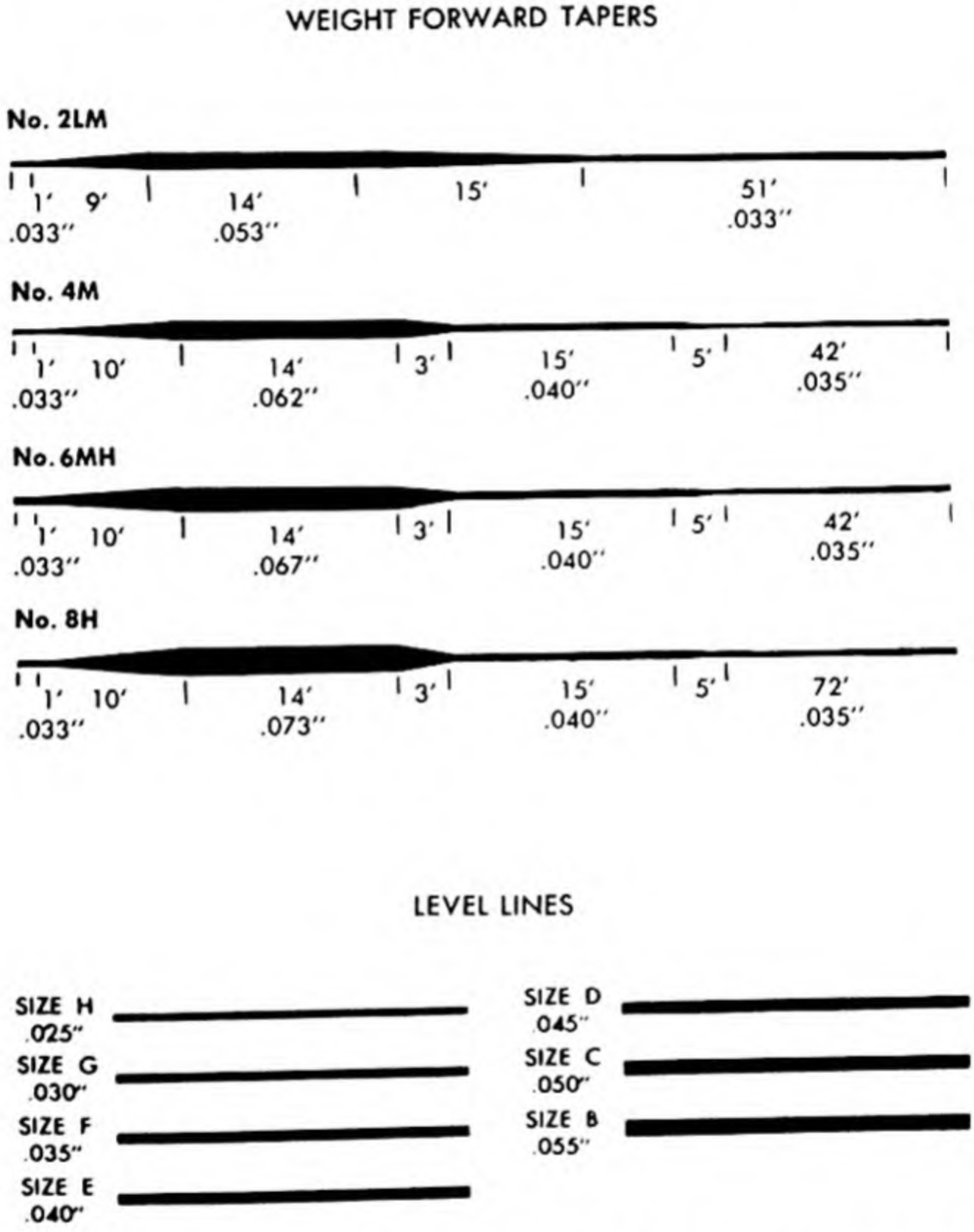
lines (for longer casts) and with all types of bass bugs, fly lures, spinners, bucktails, streamers, and bait. This type is excellent for bass, big brown and rainbow (steelhead) trout, and other larger game fish, including salt-water species. The salmon action rod is the heaviest and stiffest of all fly rods because of the size of the lures used and the size of the fish the rod must handle.

For all-round use with bait, small lures, dry and wet flies, and for the beginner, there is a new classification—all-purpose or medium-action. It lies somewhere between the stiff dry-fly rod and the soft wet-fly stick.

The new omni action or progressive taper design is preferred by many fly fishermen—both beginners and experts—because it makes possible a good all-round fly rod that can do some of the specialized work almost as well as the individual action ones just described. As with the omni-action spinning rods discussed on page 25, these fly rods can cast a wide range of fly lures

—wet and dry flies, streamers, and small bass bugs. If you plan to do specialized fly fishing, of course, the specialized rod action would be your best bet.

The 8½-footer is best for most beginners. For the angler who is going to spend all his fly-fishing time on big waters, a 9-foot rod weighing about 6 ounces might prove most serviceable. Big rivers are usually the haunts of large trout or salmon, and such fishing calls for maximum distance. A rea-



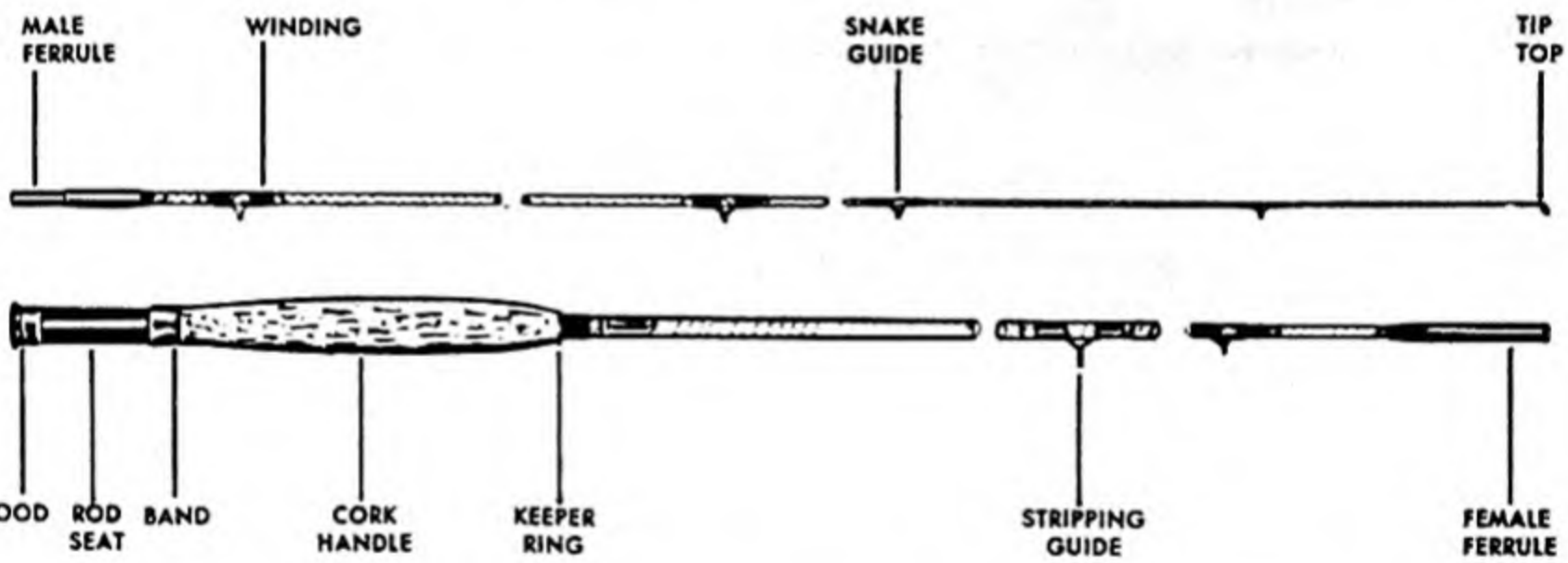
sonably fast 9-foot rod, matched with a suitable line, is capable of casting from 50 to 80 feet, with a minimum of false casting. Such a rod will pick up 35 or 40 feet of line, and you can feed another 10 feet out in a few false casts, then shoot 25 or 30 feet in the forward cast. If you were casting on a stream where 25 or 30 feet was the routine distance, and where a cast of 50 feet was the maximum, there would be little point in using a 9-foot, 6-ounce rod, but in places where casts range from 40 feet up, this rod length would be the most suitable.

Many beginners believe that the longer their fly is cast, the more likely is a catch. There is little truth to this unless you are working unusually clear waters where the fish may be skittish. It is obvious that the more line you have out, the more difficult it is to set the hook when a fish strikes. There is the matter of a time lapse between the strike and the upward hook-setting lift on the rod. Many times a fish will mouth a lure and instantly reject it —often so rapidly that even a short pause between the strike and the angler's reaction is sufficient to cause a missed fish.

FLY-CASTING LINES

When you are fly casting, the most useful tool is your fly line. With a variety of lines in different designs and weights, you can meet every possible fly-fishing need, even though you may own and use only one fly rod.

Fly lines are either floating or sinking lines. The sinking style takes wet flies, nymphs, or bait down beneath the water. A floating line, as the name implies, stays on the top of the water and keeps a dry fly riding high for



natural drift over fish with a minimum line drag. During recent years, manufacturers have made great strides in producing dry-fly lines with "floatability" built into them. At one time the angler found it necessary to dress the line frequently to keep it floating properly. With the new, high-quality floating lines, very little attention is required to keep the line in top condition. These new floating lines should *never* be dressed; it will damage the line surface.

There are three basic types of fly lines: the level line, the double-taper line, and the weight-forward or "torpedo-head" line. All have a definite purpose. For example, a level line, which has the same diameter throughout its length, is useful for live-bait fishing and for casting some of the heavier fly-rod lures such as spinners, bugs, and poppers. The double-taper has the thickest section in the middle and tapers toward both ends. The thick section supplies the weight needed for casting; the thinner portion, the delicacy of presentation. Such lines are ideal for fly fishing where short casts will be

used. The weight-forward has its weight concentrated in its forward taper at the lure end. This type of line casts best because, once the heavy part is out of the rod guides, it pulls out the light running line much as a plug pulls out a bait-casting line.

The reasons for a taper on any fly line are, first, to straighten better on the cast and, second, to drop the fly on the water more gently. The splash of a heavy level line hitting the water near the fly may scare a fish. But the beginner can usually do as well with a level line as with a tapered one, and level lines cost about one-third as much. For this reason, we generally recommend that the beginner start with a level line unless he has sufficient casting skill to use the advantages of a tapered line. Level lines usually come in 25-yard lengths, while tapers are available in lengths of 30 and 40 yards.

At one time, most fly lines were made of silk. These lines demanded a great deal of attention, including a thorough drying after each day's fishing and careful greasing before they were again usable. Today, most fly lines are made of synthetic fibers, which do not require drying and dressing.

When you are buying a fly line, strength is not a matter of consideration. In fact, most experienced fly fishermen have no idea what their lines test. It is sufficient to know that the line is stronger than the leader. Instead of strength, the unit of measure for the fly line is its diameter, which is related to weight. Some manufacturers are designating their lines in equivalents of diameter, even though they would not measure to the sizes indicated if put into a micrometer gauge. The designation concerns the line's weight, judged in relation to standard line of that size. The scale of measurements is as follows:

FAMILIAR FLY-LINE SIZE CHART

In. Dia.	.020	.025	.030	.035	.040	.045	.050	.055	.060	.065	.070	.075
Standard	I	H	G	F	E	D	C	B	A	2A	3A	4A

In learning the meaning of line sizes, the thing to remember is that a size C line measures .050. Compute sizes smaller or larger than C by subtracting or adding .005.

The above line designations (letters denoting thousandths of an inch in diameter size) are based on silk. With synthetic fiber fly lines, many manufacturers are beginning to use the new American Fishing Tackle Manufacturers Association (A.F.T.M.A.) standards based on the weight (in grains) of the first 30 feet of the line, exclusive of taper tip. The scale of measurements is as follows:

A.F.T.M.A. Fly-Line Standard

Wt. Grains*	60	80	100	120	140	160	185	210	240	280	330	380
No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12

* Plus or minus .10.

A.F.T.M.A. Conversion (Floating and Sinking Lines)

Old Standard	*A.F.T.M.A.*	*Old Standard*	*A.F.T.M.A.*
F	L3F	HDH	DT7S
E	L5F	HCH	DT7F
E	L6S	HCH	DT8S
D	L7F	GBG	DT9F
D	L8S	2LM, GBF	WF6F
C	L8F	4M, GAF	WF8F
C	L9S	4M	WF9S
B	L10F	6MH, G2AF	WF9F
HEH	DT4F	6MH	WF10S
HEH	DT5S	8H, G4AF	WF10F
HDH	DT6F	8H	WF11S

Key: F—floating. L—level. WF—weight-forward. S—sinking. DT—double-taper.

FLY-CASTING REELS

From the statement we made earlier you may have the impression that a fly reel is a matter of small importance and that one will do as well as another. Although the fly reel is not used in casting the fly, and the criteria for judging it are different from those used for other types of reels, it is often much more than a line-holder.

Fly reels fall into two main classes—single-action and automatic. The single-action is operated by hand; one revolution of the handle rotates the reel spool once. It is not a multiplier as are the bait-casting reel and the spinning reel. This type of reel is narrow but of rather large diameter; its design affords ample line capacity, yet retrieves line quickly.

Here's how an automatic fly reel operates: As you strip line off from the reel to make a cast, a powerful spring is wound. To retrieve your line, you simply depress the lever with your little finger and the spring operates the spool to take up the line. There is usually a friction clutch which prevents too much spring tension yet permits line stripping from the reel with ease, even when the spring is fully wound. To strip line from many reels, it isn't necessary to press the operating lever. Others don't have "free-stripping," and the release lever must be pressed to permit the stripping of additional line when the spring has been fully wound. Should you need more spring tension at any time, all that has to be done is to wind

the spring by turning the head cap. To release all the spring tension at the end of a day's fishing—this should always be done to relieve the spring—turn the knurled release ring partially. An automatic reel literally gives you a "third hand" when you will need one the most—as you're landing a fish or taking in line to shorten your cast.

For ordinary fishing—that is, for any fish that doesn't make long, powerful runs—the automatic fly reel is best for both beginners and experts alike. This means that for panfishing, bass fishing, and ordinary stream and lake fishing for trout, the automatic fills the bill most satisfactorily. But when it comes to angling for big rainbows, salmon, bonefish, and similar fast and powerful quarry, the single-action is more often used.

The reason for this is that small fish may be played by stripping in line, using the hand alone, but the bigger game fish are usually played directly from the reel. A black bass—even a big one—rarely takes off more than 30 or 40 feet of line, and this amount can usually be comfortably managed by hand stripping. The mind boggles, however, at the prospect of hand-retrieving over a hundred yards of fly line and backing that a speeding bonefish can pull off a reel. You might be able to retrieve it all right, but the confusion that would ensue if the fish made a new run would be truly epical.

FLY-FISHING LEADERS

The purpose of a leader in fly fishing is to reduce the visible connections between fly and line. Obviously, the trout—a fish credited with keen eyesight—is going to be suspicious of his dinner if something is leading it around by the nose. While no leader can be completely invisible to the fish, it is far less conspicuous than the end of the fly line. Being somewhat translucent, the leader absorbs and reflects the color of its background, whether you are casting under dark trees or in open sunlit water.

Today, nylon is probably more preferred than gut leaders, in either tapered or level styles. The use of nylon eliminates the necessity of soaking the leader before tying knots and has led to the development of no-knot tapers.

The 7½-, 9-, and 12-foot gut or nylon leaders, are standard. For bass, panfishing, and wet-fly work, a 7½-foot leader is usually adequate. For dry-fly work, a 9-foot leader is most generally preferred. For any sort of fishing, however, as much additional length as you can handle will probably contribute to success, and in many cases will be essential.

Usually, the tapered leaders are best for accurate, easy casting. The leader's diameter, or the tippet diameter, should be as light as possible relative to the lure being cast and the fish being angled for. If you're casting a cork popper for bass, you must have a thicker leader than you would use for a No. 14 dry fly. In fact, the bass-bug leader won't go through the eye

NYLON LEADER CONVERSION TABLE

LEVEL			TAPERED			
Size	*Diameter*	*Min. Test*	*Size*	*Diameter*	*Butt Diameter*	*Tippet Test*
6X	.0047	1.8 lb.	6X	.005	.0169	1.9 lb.
5X	.0059	2.9 lb.	5X	.006	.0169	2.9 lb.
4X	.0071	3.8 lb.	4X	.007	.0185	3.8 lb.
3X	.0083	5.0 lb.	3X	.008	.0185	4.9 lb.
2X	.0094	5.8 lb.	2X	.009	.0224	5.7 lb.
1X	.0102	7.0 lb.	1X	.010	.0224	7.0 lb.
0X	.0110	8.5 lb.	0X	.011	.0224	8.5 lb.
8/5	.0126	10.0 lb.	8/5	.013	.0287	11.0 lb.
7/5	.0138	11.8 lb.	6/5	.015	.0287	14.0 lb.
6/5	.0150	14.3 lb.				
4/5	.0169	17.0 lb.				
2/5	.0185	19.8 lb.				

of the No. 14 fly. For heavy lures, a relatively heavy leader is necessary to toss the lure out ahead of the line; but with the dry fly, a fine leader is necessary for delicate presentation and floating qualities. A heavy leader, even if you could attach it to the fly, would kill the fly's lifelike qualities. So keep your leader diameter as light as conditions warrant.

FLY-FISHING TACKLE ASSEMBLY GUIDE

Type of Fishing	*Reel*	*Rod*	*Leader*	*Level*	*Fly Line*	
					Double Taper	*Weight Forward*
Bluegills, sunfish, crappie, perch, rock bass, brook trout	Automatic	7′ to 8′, (3 to 4 oz.)	2Y	D	HDH	4M
Spotted, white, smallmouth, largemouth bass; brown, rainbow trout; grayling	Automatic	7′9″ to 8′6″, (3½ to 4½ oz.)	0X	C	HCH	6MH
Large bass; snook; steelhead, cutthroat trout, walleye	Automatic or single-action	8′6″ to 9′	8/5	C	HCH	6MH or 8H
Atlantic salmon, bonefish, tarpon	Single-action	9′	4/5	B	GBG	8H

The hook

The most important part of any fishing tackle is naturally its business end —the hook. They are generally available either in bulk or already mounted or attached to artificial flies, spoons, plugs, bugs, or other lures. When buying either lure or hooks separately, always get the very best; they'll cost but a few cents more than poor ones which may straighten or break while you are bringing in a fish. Your sporting goods dealer will be glad to recommend the proper size for the type of fishing you will be doing. Many manufacturers provide charts with their hooks. Remember that the eye of a hook is never included in measurements. A "3X short" is a hook with a shank three sizes shorter than standard; a "2X stout" is made from wire generally used for a hook two sizes larger; a "1X fine" means that the wire is that commonly used for a hook one size smaller, and so on.

In fishing for panfish, the most common sizes employed are 6 and 8. Very often you can be far more successful in taking panfish on smaller hooks, so it's advisable to have some in sizes 10, 12, and even 14. It's a good idea to carry a few of these in both regular and long lengths up to "6X long." In fishing for bass, walleye, and pike, the most commonly used hooks are 4 to 1/0. For muskies and lake trout, a few consider it necessary to use hooks larger than 1/0 to 2/0. For trout, sizes from 10 to 18 are generally employed. When you're fishing waters in which a large percentage of the fish taken are undersized, use a barbless hook. It makes fishing more sporting and saves a lot of fish for the future.

3

Lures for fish and fisherman

The number of artificial lures that will take fish is truly amazing. Tackle stores are filled to the doors with artificials almost all of which will catch fish at some time or other. But who wants a lure that will catch fish only part of the time? What real anglers want is something sure-fire that will deliver the goods every time it is put into the water—and they spend their lives hunting this wonder. They will, however, never find it—for two good reasons. The first is that fish are rather temperamental and sometimes apparently can't be lured by anything at all. The second is that most fish move around in the water, both from area to area and up and down, and thus one lure can't reach them in all the places that they may be. Cal Johnson offers these suggestions.

How do I select the lures I like?

Millions of people take up fishing every year, and for them the selection of a useful kit of lures—one that will catch fish at least a fair part of the time—is a matter of some difficulty. Everyone they ask for advice is quite

willing to give it, but everyone tells them a different story, and so the result is generally utter confusion. We've listened to many North Woods guides who recommended a certain lure as the *only* one which the fish would take. "Ye might as well dump that stuff in the lake—it's no good," they would say. "Now us fellers have been catchin' plenty of bass on the Snicker, but nothing doing on those funny-lookin' wobblers ye got there in yer tackle kit. You can buy one o' these lures at the resort."

Sure—it's excellent sales talk for the local resort owner and no doubt sells many of the recommended lures, but tell me if you can why the fellow who refused to purchase a "Snicker" went forth with his own array of baits and caught the limit. There may be times when certain species of game fish are feeding on minnows entirely, hence take a lure resembling the real thing more readily, but on an average any angler who understands something of piscatorial life and has had a reasonable amount of fishing experience can go out and catch his share of fish. When the fish are in a biting mood they will strike a clothespin or a corncob pipe, providing the lure is kept moving. Shape and color may have great importance when the bait reposes in the showcase of the sports store, but—glory be!—when it is attached to the leader and cast into the waters, it is just another bait to the fish. *But* should a good catch be made on the new lure, then it automatically becomes *the* lure of the day and is honored and praised around the campfire that night. However, what happens the following day may find the lure nestled among the "has-beens" and another new creation basking in the limelight.

It is far less difficult to recommend a new rod or reel than to recommend a sure-fire lure that will bring home the bacon. The easiest way to lose your reputation as an angler is to recommend a certain bait to an inexperienced fisherman. If he accidentally manages to make a good catch, then all is well—but, unfortunately, such is not usually the case and the guide or local fish market must furnish the fish and the fellow who recommended the bait gets a grand panning. We know, for it has been our unfortunate duty to be called upon to recommend fishing lures for many years. No man can hope to land on the correct side. If he bats 50–50, he's a wizard.

Still, we have discovered that the true fisherman is a man of reason, a fellow who appreciates nature as well as angling. Those who have discovered the real joys of fishing through the medium of rod and reel know that the fish themselves are only a part of the actual fishing trip—the excuse for going, as it were. What man, may we ask, can overlook the aroma of boiling coffee over the campfire, the atmosphere of the great outdoors, the sparkle of a limpid lake, the song of birds, the sight of wildlife, the companionship of a North Woods guide—and, if you permit, the click of poker chips, the tinkle of glasses and the pop of a cork? Yea bo! That's what really matters.

How do I select the lures fish like?

If you're given to the habit of wondering about things, you may have speculated at times on how a pink elephant would look to a fish. This has been a subject of concern among several of us fishermen and we have delved into the matter quite deeply. As a result, we have come up with a mouthful of more or less disturbing conclusions.

In the first place, the elephant wouldn't look pink to the fish. He would probably have a fringe of different colors, ranging from violet to vermilion.

In the second place, the fish might see only half of him, or two of him, depending on the condition of the water.

And in the third place, the part the fish did see, whether it was one elephant, one-half elephant, or two elephants, would probably appear upside down and wouldn't look like an elephant at all, but possibly like a cross between a wild boar and a condor.

In view of this somewhat alarming condition, then what do you expect of a fish when you throw a gaudily colored artificial lure at him? How can you tell what he's going to do when you have no idea whether the plug looks green, blue, or red to him, nor whether he thinks it's a bird or a rat or a carp? In fact, you can't tell what he will do. And therein, to us, lies much of the charm of using these spectacular baits which are the staff of life of the man who takes to water for game.

Looking over the back files of *Esquire* we found that Hart Stilwell wrote a number of manufacturers which have turned out these lures down through the years, and asked them what colors and shapes and wiggles do fish like best? And here are some of the answers he received.

James Heddon's Sons Company, the firm that turned out the first artificial plug and gave it the name of that town that nobody can pronounce—Dowagiac—holds as follows:

"We really believe action has a great deal to do, if not more to do, than color, and there are times when a fast moving bait will get attention when a slow one will not, and vice versa. It is our opinion that a fish strikes a lure for one of four reasons: (1) hunger; (2) curiosity; (3) reflexive urge; or (4) anger." (All seemed to agree on these four points of why a fish goes after a lure.) Then they go right on and throw a real curve ball by saying, "It has been our personal experience that two fishermen of equal ability may use the same type of lure and one of them get strike after strike on a lure of a certain color, while a different color in the same bait used by the other fisherman will catch nothing." So we're pretty much where we started, in spite of Heddon Company's honest attempt to clear up the puzzle.

Now we move on to the Creek Chub Bait Company. That company says, "We at Creek Chub have found that as a rule the more natural colors on

"I used a fifty-pound nylon line, a stainless-steel spinner and a three-strand pearl necklace."

the under-water baits produce the best results. In other words, the whites and reds are not so effective as the scale finishes which simulate closely the natural food fish. . . . It is our opinion that both action and color have a good deal to do with the success of a bait." They say, contrary to what you might think, that dark-colored baits are best for muddy waters, overcast skies, and night fishing; and lighter colors better for clear water and bright skies.

Let us now hear from Pfleuger, another old name in the fishing tackle game. This company says first that colors seem to be a sectional matter—whether it's the fish that feel that way about them, or the fishermen they don't make clear. They then add, "As a matter of fact any definite opinion on this question (importance of color as against wiggle) would be debatable." (Yes, we know it would. We've heard it debated for a quarter-century.) They end with a tribute to snappy action.

The South Bend people have about the same opinion as the Heddon Company. "We find the action of the lure plays an important part in enticing the fish to strike the lure, which, no doubt, explains the reason so many various fish lures are included in our catalog." Then they continue: "Of course color has a slight bearing on the fish hitting the lure, if their natural food is that color. As an example, if frogs are the natural food for a fish . . ." You get the idea.

Now the Shakespeare Company adds, "We believe that both the action of a bait in the water as well as the pattern of a bait are important. Of the two, we are inclined to the opinion that a bait's water action is more important than the color, but to have an effective bait it must have the right action as well as the right color." Then Shakespeare Company turns to the subject of color and comes out with an opinion just opposite to the Creek Chub views. "Our theory is that a white body bait with a red head or other light colored patterns are most effective on dark days, at night, and in muddy water. On the other hand a black or dark pattern will attract the fish on bright days and in clear water."

There you have it. No wonder the boys at the forks of the creek can't agree on the things, when the men who make them don't agree.

We finally wrote to the United States Bureau of Fisheries, to see if they could help us with our troubles. They had some answers, all right. Their theories are based largely on experiments with mud minnows and sticklebacks. If you don't know what a stickleback is, don't write to us for we don't know either. But here are some of the salient conclusions of the Bureau of Fisheries:

> Fish see much as we do—but their field of vision is larger [aha, that's why those rascally bass always see you first]. Owing to the diffuse and weak light of

their world, and to the position of their eyes, objects appear in less relief to them than to us. Objects in still water are seen by most fishes not only directly, but also upside down, mirrored in the lower face of the water's surface. Objects in air and above the water about the shore of a pond are also visible to them. But these objects are seen in unnatural position, distorted and fringed with color and their higher parts only are visible. [Now you begin to see what a world a fish lives in.] Like a short sighted person, the fish sees near objects distinctly, distant objects less clearly. Only by a muscular effort does he see distant objects clearly, insofar as they are visible through the opalescent water [when you're fishing he won't even make the effort to see your bait].

Fishes distinguish colors, but whether they see as many colors as we do is not known. Nor can we say that the colors appear to them in the same way that they do to us. And so the faith of the fisherman in his gaudy lures is justified. His belief that fish may learn to avoid them or to keep out of his nets appears to be founded in fact.

These words are by Miss Gertrude Marean White. She arrives at the conclusion that patterns don't make much difference in the search by these fish for food; that it's "the perception of color and movement" that are most important.

To add to the confusion, there is a general belief that fish are color-blind, notwithstanding the colored flies and lures fishermen use to catch them! While fishermen do not have the equipment, time, and curiosity to go into experiments covering this field, much scientific work has been done by men with both the equipment and the urge to find out the facts.

Preston J. Jennings says that vision depends upon two things: light and the apparatus for the reception of light, the eye. Light, as we understand it, is a form of energy liberated by chemical reactions taking place in the planet we call the sun. This energy reaches the eye, which contains within the screen or retina a substance which reacts to or is bleached by light. This substance is called rhodopsin or, more commonly, visual purple, and it has the peculiar capacity to recover immediately after bleaching, perhaps within a small fraction of a second. This reaction to light is then transmitted by the optic nerve to the brain centers which control voluntary action.

A comparative analysis of rhodopsin from both the human eye and the eyes of a variety of fresh-water fish, including members of the salmonoid group, has been reported by Dr. A. C. Krause in *The Biochemistry of the Eye.* In the case of the fish the eye is more sensitive to the long wave or red end of the spectrum, while the human eye is more sensitive to the short wave or blue end.

The finding agrees with another experiment, this one conducted by Frank A. Brown, Jr. of the State of Illinois Natural History Survey, in which he trained a number of bass to respond to various colors by a process of reward or punishment. He sums up his findings: "My own results indicate that the

vision of light-adapted bass would more closely resemble that of a human being with perfectly normal color vision, looking through a pair of yellowish glasses." This second experiment only serves to confirm the findings of Dr. Krause, the biochemist, that fish can distinguish colors and are especially sensitive to the red end of the spectrum. It is entirely possible that the surface-feeding fish sees and is familiar with more color than the average human being for the reason that all light striking the surface of the water at an angle is split in such a way that the individual rays which produce the reactions of color are seen separately; in other words, they are not parallel to each other, but fan out at varying angles to produce bands of colored light, such as those in a rainbow in the sky.

This process, which is called refraction, at first glance may seem mysterious. It is, however, mechanically quite simple. Light or energy from the sun travels through the intervening space or vacuum at a terrific rate of speed; water acts as a brake, slowing down this rate of speed. Mechanically, light acts as though each ray or wave advanced with a flat face at right angles to its direction, so that if the ray struck the surface of water vertically, the entire face of the ray would be retarded equally. Conversely, if the light struck at an angle, only one side would be retarded while the other side would still be moving through air that offered little appreciable resistance. Hence, light entering water from a vertical position remains daylight, or white light, as the individual rays are still parallel, while light striking at any other angle (the various rays with their individual faces) would diverge at varying angles under water.

It is this divergence of the individual rays making up white light, or daylight, which results in our seeing the various colors that collectively form the solar spectrum.

A practical illustration of this action may be made with an ordinary table fork. The fork's tines are parallel. Insert the fork vertically into a roast of meat and all of the tines will penetrate, but try impaling the same roast with the fork held at an angle and you will find that only a few tines will enter and, unless you are careful, you will end up with a few badly bent ones.

Another point worth considering is that not all the light striking the surface of water penetrates it; some of it is caromed or reflected off the surface. Vertical light has about 95 percent penetration. Light from the lowest angle of about 3 degrees has only 5 percent penetration. This means that the light reaching the eye of the fish looking out of water is of varying intensity, depending upon its angle. As the fish has no mechanical means of adjusting its eye, such as an eyelid or contractible opening of the iris, it

seems to make great use of this natural condition by looking in the direction where the volume of light is most comfortable for its vision. It is also interesting to note that, in the case of the fish, *each eye operates independently of the other.* The optic nerves which connect the retina with the brain cross each other on their course to the side of the brain opposite the individual eye; but, unlike the human optic nerves, which are interwoven or fused, these remain free of each other. This independence allows one eye to be blinded by too much light while the other eye enjoys good vision in a lesser light. Incidentally, the eye of the fish is in some ways similar to the eye of the owl, which is adapted for vision in very weak light.

Most objects which we call colored contain substances known as pigments. These have the property of reflecting light on a selective basis, in that they reflect only part of the spectrum and absorb or convert the remainder into a longer wave length, or heat. This means that the volume or intensity of reflected light is lower than the full or direct light from the sky. Therefore, it seems logical to assume that during the daylight hours a surface-feeding fish uses the low-angle *reflected* light from the object, and during the late afternoon or evening hours it reverses the direction of vision toward the low-angle *direct* light from the sky. During the night it would in all probability look up vertically and thereby utilize the maximum amount of light available at that time. This, however, would be white light, since it strikes the surface vertically and the individual rays remain parallel. Under this latter condition a black artificial fly, seen as a silhouette, would be the most visible and is, perhaps, the reason why black flies are so successful in places where night fishing is practiced, as in New Zealand.

To muddy the situation a little more, recent ichthyological data have revealed that fishes, especially the game species, are well equipped by nature to hear even very minute sounds. They hear in two ways: (1) through an "inner ear" composed of hollow bones which act as echo chambers to pick up and amplify extraneous sounds; and (2) through a highly complex system of nerve filaments, along the lateral line on either side. Under a powerful microscope, tiny holes are seen to make up the lateral markings on the sides. Inside each of these holes are thousands of tiny, microscopic neuromasts, or nerve endings, which pick up sound vibrations and transmit them to the fish's brain. So sensitive are these radarlike devices that even the soft turbulence of a minnow's fins is picked up by a feeding fish, after dark when vision cannot be depended on.

So, acting upon these facts, several leading manufacturers have recently introduced a whole new concept of lure design—sonic lures that are designed to give off sharp vibrations to attract fishes at greater distances. Thus,

in theory, the sonic-type lures will be invaluable under adverse conditions such as muddy or turbid waters. By the same token, big fish can be taken after dark with one of these sound-producing devices. Fish don't need to see it to hit it; they strike at the source of the sound. Or at least that's what it says in the tackle catalogues.

So to confuse you a little more—or less—let's set down the following three general conclusions on the properties of an artificial lure that cause it to catch fish. You may agree or disagree—that is your prerogative.

First, under ordinary circumstances fish will strike a bait because of its motion, rather than its color. Hence if the bait has the proper size and shape, and you can put the right motion on it, you might reasonably expect to fool a fish.

Second, under many sets of *special* circumstances—for instance, crystal-clear, calm water, or extremely muddy water, or bright sunshine—fish will strike a certain color combination when they will have nothing to do with other color patterns even in the same lure.

Third, when fishing at night or under adverse water conditions, it may be wise to keep the fish's hearing in mind and employ one of the sonic-type lures, or poppers and plunkers.

How many lures do I need?

The answer can be simply stated that fishermen are a whole lot like golfers in certain respects. The latter usually boast an array of clubs that could outfit a small golf school, and so it is with the fisherman. He totes along enough baits to catch a million fish, but confines his angling activities to two or three favored lures and permits dust to gather on the others. We have yet to meet a fishing enthusiast who does not love to dabble in the midst of a pile of different baits and things. He takes just as much pride in displaying his complete outfit to his friends during the closed season as he does in bringing in his limit of game fish when the boards are down. That, of course, is only human.

So, for this reason, our advice to you (and we say this knowing full well it will win us a warm spot in the hearts of the people who make and sell lures) is to buy all the different colored baits and all the goofy patterns and shapes you can afford to finance. There's a certain amount of solid satisfaction in owning one of those gaudy and saucy and miraculous creations. Furthermore, you don't want to be stuck out on the water without a little purple whiz-bang, do you? Especially out there with some other fisherman catching game right and left with a purple-colored lure, and you with nothing in your tackle box but blue and green and lavender and black and white and yellow and mauve—but no purple!

The family of bait-casting lures

Although there are literally thousands of different artificial bait-casting lures in use, all of them may be listed in a relatively few categories: plugs, jigs, spinners, spoons, and unorthodox (loony) lures. There are hundreds, however, that are a combination of two or more of these.

PLUGS

First in popularity among bait-casters is the plug. Originally the term "plug," it might be added, accurately described these lures, but today many very unpluglike shapes fall into this category. While there are still many wooden models on the market, plastic plugs are replacing them in popularity. They are more durable and have permanent colors. They vary in size from about 2 to 8 inches in length and from ¼ to 2 ounces in weight.

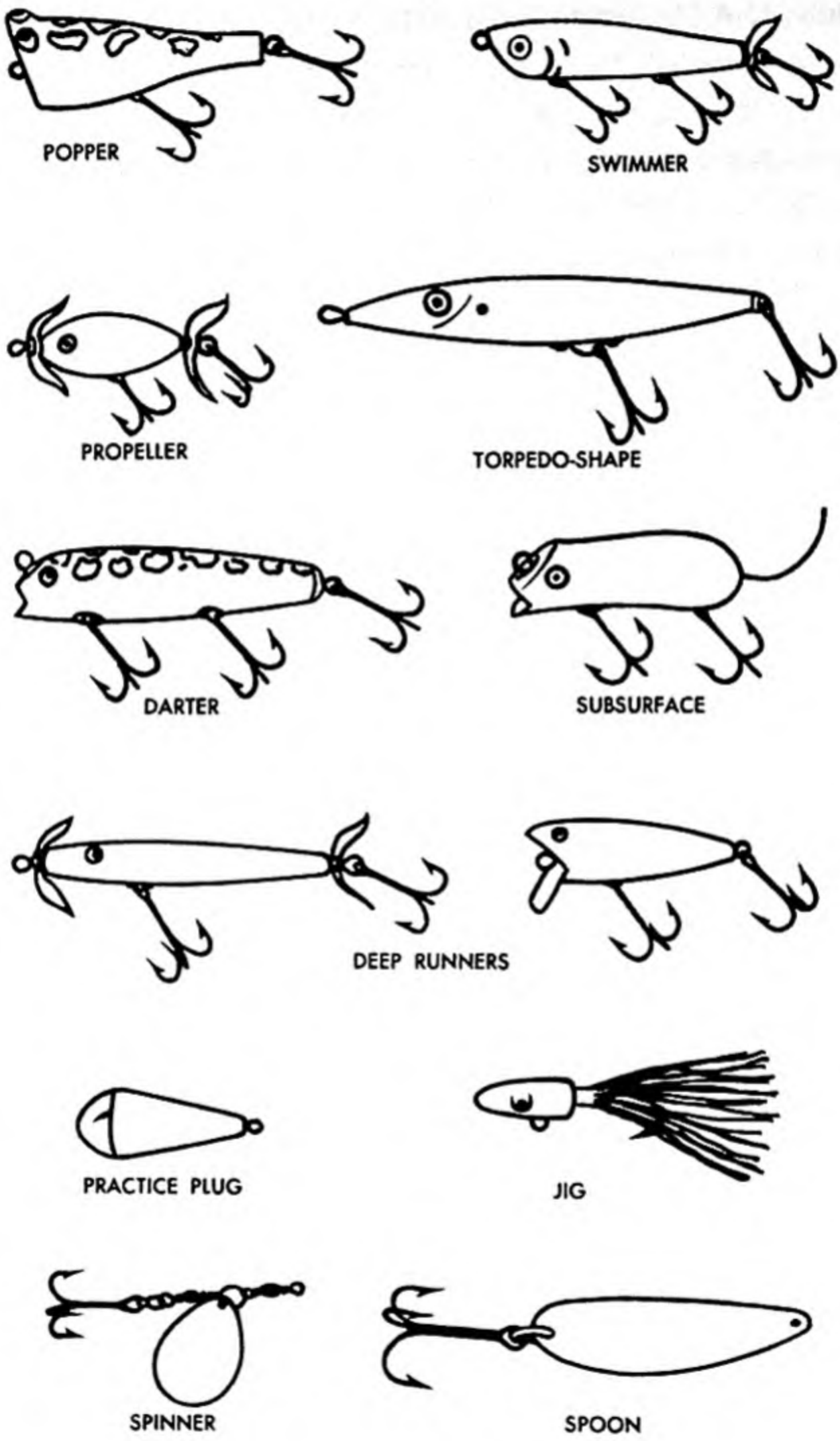
Basically, there are just three kinds of bait-casting plugs, each one designed for a specific feeding area: surface, subsurface, and near the bottom. Since, moreover, these lures differ only in size, shape and weight, they can be discussed jointly as imitations of the fish's favorite food.

Surface Plugs. To us, surface lures are the most favorable for producing fishing thrills. When a bait is discovered skimming over the surface of the waters by a muskie, black bass, or pickerel, the fish immediately darts for it, grasping the plug with an upward leap that churns the waters into a seething mass of commotion. Black bass, particularly, will leap high, wide and handsome when they strike a surface lure. The mighty lunge will also do a dance on his caudal fin and shake his head like a bull terrier when he discovers that he has clamped his jaws over something phony, rather than a morsel good to eat.

Surface lures can be used for bass, muskies, pickerel, and northern pike throughout the year. Largemouth black bass, pickerel, and muskies are shallow-water fish and are found accessible in the weeds and rushes, or over the sand and rock bars, during early spring, midsummer, and autumn. However, when the same species are feeding deep in the rushes and weed beds, it is necessary to use a lure of the weedless type. Metal baits are very popular for such type fishing on account of the ease with which they can be reeled through tough weeds and lily stems.

While there are many surface-type plugs on the market, they usually have one common characteristic; that is, as you reel them in they create a definite disturbance in the water. To accomplish this, there are three general types of surface disturbers. The first kind has fins sticking out at the sides, the second has one or two propeller blades, and the third has a head that is either hollowed out or has a V cut into it. The first two kinds create a bubbling or splashing as they move through the water; the third kind, when

it is jerked, gives forth a popping or chugging noise, with accompanying bubbles. The three types come in a wide variety of colors and color combinations, but color is really not very important in this type of lure, as the only part that a fish sees is the belly, and this is generally white, cream, or



some other very pale color, although for night fishing all-black lures are well thought of.

The trick in using surface lures is to make them act like crippled or sluggish fish—or like a terrified minnow trying to escape the jaws of a pursuer. For example, poppers throw a big spray of water when they are jerked.

Game fish in the vicinity are attracted by the splash and, feeling that they must catch the bait before its pursuer, strike at the plug. For best results with a popper, use the "jerk-turn" technique; that is, jerk, stop, then skip the plug. Retrieve at a fairly rapid rate.

As a rule top-water lures should be given an action to match their design. For instance, lures resembling frogs work best when moved with froglike jerks. A minnowlike plug, on the other hand, is most deadly when given an up-and-down motion to simulate crippled action. It should be reeled in slowly, or at a moderate speed, so that it creates a wake behind it. The torpedo-shaped plug, a very deadly lure in Southern waters, is worked fast with long jerks or sweeps of the rod tip to make it skip along the surface. When you are after bass, it is sometimes best to let the plug remain perfectly still after the cast, then twitch it a few feet, keeping your line taut. This permits you to sink the hook instantly when it is struck, and reduces the number of fish lost. Keeping the rod tip low will also help you to hook your strikes.

Subsurface Plugs. Subsurface plugs usually wobble and slash or dive when in motion, float when not retrieved. They fit well into many situations. Swimming only a foot or so under water, they can be used over weeds that come near the surface—one of the favorite sites of bass and northern pike—and are highly effective in pockets of lily-pad fields and along the shoreline in the evening when game fish are chasing minnows in shallow water. When you see a swirl marking the charge of a bass or pike into a school of minnows, cast your plug a little beyond the place, retrieve it slowly, and the chances are excellent that your quarry will leave the small fish to attack the lure.

Shallow-running lures have to be fished in accordance with their built-in characteristics; that is, some you reel fast and some you reel slowly, some you reel steadily and some you work with your rod tip. Each one has its distinctive action, and usually it is at its best when you bring out this action. You can frequently, by change of retrieving speed, make one lure act like another, but an odd thing about this is that a lure, when moving uncharacteristically, is rarely effective, although the bait it is imitating may be a good fish-getter in its own right.

These shallow runners are useful principally when fish are near the surface or in shallow water. When the fish are lying at depths of from 4 to 6 feet, the middle-depth runners are the best lures to use. These are floating plugs with metal lips or mouthpieces that cause them to swim several feet under water on the retrieve. The middle-depth divers are well adapted to weed beds lying not more than 6 feet under the water and around abrupt drop-offs. They fill the gap between the shallow runners and the real deep runners or sinking lures.

12319

Perhaps color is more important in shallow and middle-depth runners than in a surface lure, but as there are so many effective colors available it's difficult to make a choice. However, in both these subsurface lures, it's the action that is more important than color. Since both are floaters, the shallow and middle-depth runners can be fished as surface lures, being allowed to rest on the water for brief periods and then submerged by retrieving. This is often a very killing method.

Underwater Plugs. For the bottom portion of water, you'll need a real deep diver or runner. The plugs of this class may or may not float when at rest. Some float and dive to varying depths on the retrieve. (The depth at which these plugs travel can be varied by bending the metal lip down to cause it to ride nearer the surface; up, to make it dive.) Others sink, then dive deeper, or travel on the same level when reeled in or trolled. They usually have metal lips or heads cut at an angle which causes them to dive and gives them action, usually a dart or a side-to-side wiggle. Some underwater plugs have pointed heads, others blunt ones; both varieties have little built-in action. These must be worked with the rod tip to make them lifelike.

Deep runners are particularly good in midseason during the heat of the day when the fish desert the shallows and take to the depths. They are also useful at the beginning and the end of the season. Underwater plugs, as a rule, are a lot harder to fish than those for the upper portion of water, as the characteristic that makes them head downward also makes them strain against the line and hence the angler's wrist. To fish with them for long periods of time is real work. For this reason fishermen often neglect them in favor of shallow runners or surface lures, even though the fish may be deep in the water and never even see the lures that the fisherman is hopefully offering. You can get in some good casting practice by using shallow runners all the time, but if you want to catch deep-lying fish you have to use deep-running lures, even though they do tire your wrist. Deep runners are excellent for fishing up the sides of underwater ridges, as you can keep them digging in from the bottom of the ridge to the top.

When using underwater plugs be certain that there is a feeling of motion traveling up the line; this will indicate that the plug is working properly. Vary the speed of the retrieve to maintain this live action. Although most underwater plugs have a built-in wriggle, it is advisable to jerk them at intervals, to stop or slow down, then speed up to create an erratic action. Remember that it's not uncommon for a fish to trail a moving plug and strike when it stops. As a general rule, calm, clear water calls for somewhat faster reeling than rough or dirty water, if you want strikes. Daytime fishing generally calls for a faster retrieve than nighttime fishing. Color is relatively unimportant, although the dark browns and black are frequently

good. And just to show that there is little logic in fishing, so are pearl finish and white.

While not a plug, the *jig*—for years used exclusively in salt water—has now successfully invaded fresh-water fishing. Originally it consisted of a head with a trailing tuft of feathers. Today, hair and crimped nylon are popular for use as skirts and are available in a considerable range of colors. Since jigs have little or no action of their own, they depend completely upon a "zigging" action of the rod tip. In other words, you allow the jig to sink and then skip it slowly over the bottom.

SPINNERS AND SPOONS

Spinners and spoons are numbered with the oldest and most attractive lures for game fish ever invented. They were known in various forms to the pioneer Indian and woodsman, who first discovered that it was possible to attach a hook and line to a clamshell or bowl of a tablespoon and catch game fish. The present-day fish is just as gullible to strike a flashing, glistening spoon or spinner lure as were the game fish of early days. Perhaps that's why the manufacturer of fishing tackle devotes so much time to the creation of new spoons, spinners, and wobblers, for he is aware that such types of lures usually prove successful. If you can't find natural bait, a spinner or a spoon of the right size and shape will often serve as a good substitute. In fact, they will often do a better job of catching fish than natural bait. Besides being good fish-takers in their own right, spinners and spoons sometimes make natural bait more attractive. A spinner in front of a minnow or a worm will occasionally incite a fish to strike when natural bait alone will not.

Spinners come in a wide variety of shapes, sizes, and colors, but basically they are metal blades that whirl in the water. Spinners are often combined with other lures. One which has been developed recently is made to be used with a jig when casting or trolling. This spinner is equipped with an added attractor, such as plastic hair or feathers. Spinners are especially versatile in that they can be fished at practically any level of the water but the absolute surface. They are particularly effective during spring and early summer, and because they are relatively inexpensive you can afford to have an assortment of the better-known ones.

Their one disadvantage is that many of them—and some of the best, too—are line-twisters. You can get some with built-in keels, but not all of them have these; or you can use a keel on the line ahead of them. This arrangement is inconvenient for casting, and it may be that the keel to some extent reduces the effectiveness of the spinner. Many hardened bait-casters just grit their teeth and sacrifice a line because the spinners get them so many fish.

The spoon is a metal blade. It comes in a variety of shapes and sizes that wriggle through the water. They may be decorated with a variety of attractors—streamers, bucktails, or strips of shredded plastic—and are often painted in a variety of colors. To make a spoon really deadly, add a piece of pork rind (available at your tackle shop), insert a hook in the rind, and connect it to the spoon with a length of monofilament line. The speed of retrieve varies the action of the spoon. In general, a slow retrieve is better than a fast one, and it is a good idea to let the spoon flutter back to the bottom occasionally.

Loony lures

Today, the angler, if he wishes, can obtain the weirdest collection of artificial "fish-getters" yet known to man. If you visit your local tackle shop, you'll find lures that will startle your intended prey by swimming by themselves; that light up electrically while underwater; that even make plaintive noises intended to attract members of the finny tribe. At least one of the gadgets comes equipped with pill-like tablets, which, when inserted inside its body, cause it to give off champagne-like bubbles. Still another enterprising manufacturer has produced a fish decoy which employs hooks that are fastened to a *genuine rabbit's foot*. Since the prime function of an artificial bait supposedly is to simulate in appearance and action some small object upon which the fish to be deceived might ordinarily feed, justification for the bunny's shank poses a disturbing question, indeed, since it actually takes fish!

One of the most interesting of the unusual lures currently available involves a *real minnow* that has been sealed in tough, pliable plastic by the manufacturer, who claims that this odorless, lifelike bait can be used over and over. Another unusual artificial bait, a *slow-turning spoon*, is used for trolling and is designed to simulate a wounded fish. By throwing off a stream of "blood" and fish oil scent from an impregnated red dye cartridge, it supposedly excites the gastric juices of the watching big ones.

For those who prefer to use a bobber and doze in the shade between strikes, there is a float available which emits an arousing whistle whenever a fish grabs the bait!

The family of spin-fishing lures

One of the joys of spinning is that almost any live bait or artificial lure can be used, including those designed for still fishing, trolling, bait casting, and fly casting. In other words, you can use the plugs, spinners, and spoons just described for bait casting, in addition to the flies detailed later in this chapter. Besides these artificial lures, there are small plugs—both of the

surface and underwater varieties—spinners, and spoons that are designed for spinning. These lures have the same action as their big brothers.

When casting artificials, a swivel should be used to avoid line-twist. Use a keel swivel—1/16 to 1/4 ounce—specially made for spinning. When casting dry flies, and some artificials, use a small plastic bubble (weighted with water or mineral oil) on the end of the spinning line for extra buoyancy and distance. See Chapter 4 for further details on the use of plastic bubbles.

While push-button or spin-cast rods will cast lures up to 1 ounce, they will operate most efficiently with ones weighing from 1/8 to 5/8 ounce. They will cast any of the bait-casting or spinning lures.

The family of flies

To the casual eye, flies are pretty little concoctions of feathers, wool, tinsel, and steel. But to the true angler they represent infinitely more. Each pattern—and their number is legion—brings to his mind vivid recollections of carefree days astream. Any classification of the thousands of fly patterns within the main types of fly ties, however, would take the courage and tenacity of a bulldog and even then would probably be left unfinished in some padded cell. For the purpose of our book, we use the advice of Preston J. Jennings which follows and will discuss only the basic types of flies available—especially since preference of patterns varies so greatly among localities and individual fly fishermen.

The entire fly family can be divided into two broad classifications: those fished *on* the surface and those fished *beneath* the surface of the water. In the first group are dry flies of many types, while the second category includes wet flies, streamers, bucktails, and nymphs.

Except for the streamers and bucktails, flies are generally made to imitate real insects, such as May fly, caddis fly, stone fly, true fly, and alder fly. Since fly fishing depends so much on the life cycle of these insects, let's take a look at the May fly. There are about twenty-five slightly varying species under the generic name of *Isonychia*. The word means "two pads of equal size," which the nymph has on four of its six feet.

May flies are aquatic insects, spending the greater part of their life span in the water in the form of a nymph, where their chief purpose seems to be to serve as food for fish. In the winged stage they are of particular interest to the fly fisher as they are generally in evidence during the daylight hours, while other types of aquatics seem to prefer the night hours.

They begin life as an egg, which, having been deposited on the surface of the water by the mature winged fly, sinks to the bottom where it ultimately hatches into a tiny creature called a nymph. As soon as this nymph begins to feed, it develops a hard shuck or shell, which is cast off at succes-

sive intervals as growth increases. As maturity nears, wings develop within the nymphal case, eggs develop in the females, and sperm in the males and, finally, when everything has become ready, the nymph rises to the surface or crawls up on the lee side of a partially submerged stone, splits open the case and emerges as a winged fly. Such emergence is called a "hatch." In this stage the fly is known as a subimago or in the fisherman's language, because of its dull appearance, a "dun." It then flies upward to the woods, where for the next twenty-four or more hours it shelters on the undersides of foliage. During this period it sheds a complete skin or membrane, emerging with glassy, crystal-clear wings and a more generally brilliant body. In this final stage of life it is called an imago and, due to the rapidity of the wings when in flight, by fishermen a "spinner." The return to the stream is referred to as a "brush hatch."

Why has the May fly been equipped with a skin which it can shuck off? The answer lies in the balance which nature maintains. The voracious trout has little equipment for controlling the volume of light entering its eyes. It has no eyelids, and the iris, or pupil, has little or no power of contraction; hence during the daylight hours its range of comfortable vision is *away from* the source of light and it sees the subimago, or dull-colored dun of the May fly, by light which is reflected from it, so that when viewed against a background of foliage the fly is relatively inconspicuous. When daylight fades, the trout has to shift the direction of its range of vision to the source of light, which is the sky, and transparent objects such as the imago or spinner of the May fly, seen as a silhouette, are not so readily visible. This balance is of course delicate, for if the flies were completely invisible, the fish would starve; on the other hand, if the flies were readily visible, they would all be eaten in a short period of time.

The distribution of various members of the Isonychia group is very wide, ranging from North Carolina into Canada, through Michigan, Arizona and presumably Colorado, through California and Oregon and perhaps farther north. Here in the East emergence begins about the middle of May, reaching its peak about June 15, with occasional flies emerging throughout the summer and sometimes as late as October. On the West Coast they appear to be abundant during October. They are large flies with a wingspread of approximately one inch or slightly more.

The nymph is free-swimming and, incidentally, is the only one of this type found in our trout streams. It ranges about the gravel of the stream bed, sometimes poised or anchored on the tips of four legs, its two front legs being equipped with bristlelike filaments which are so arranged that they form a kind of dip net. This net is used by the nymph to collect food as it sweeps by in the current. Since it is constantly exposed to enemies, its only means of escape is speed, and it has plenty of that. As its time of maturity

and emergence as a winged fly arrives, the nymph generally swims toward the shallower portions of the stream, which are near the bank. Here it climbs up on the downstream side of a partially submerged stone, splits its nymphal shuck and flies away. During this journey the nymph is exposed in open water and is highly vulnerable. An artificial nymph, following the course of the natural one, should be cast toward the middle of the stream and, as it begins to drift with the current, retrieved slowly by gradually weaving in the line with the fingers of the left hand. This is very important for, if the artificial nymph is allowed to drift free in the current, the fish will pass it by as an empty shuck rather than a living, swimming nymph.

DRY FLIES

About sixty years ago, George La Branche tossed a "poor mussed-up Queen-of-the-Water"—an English fly—onto the Junction Pool—the meeting of the waters of the Willowemoc and the Mongaup—and caught his first rainbow trout. It is probably safe to say that upon that evening American dry-fly fishing was born. (Dry flies were first introduced in England in about 1830, but were never employed in America before Mr. La Branche's experiment.) With infinite patience and care, he nursed the infant sport through its faltering early years, and in 1914 presented it, strong and lusty and full of growth, to the angling world.

The angling world accepted it, slowly at first, but with gathering enthusiasm. For twenty years and more, the art of fishing for trout with the dry fly on American fast-water streams has grown, added refinements, built up a literature, seduced the imagination, and killed thousands of trout in a most satisfactory manner. Many trout fishermen—see the great debate on page 105—consider that the effective use of the dry fly is the highest manifestation of the art of angling.

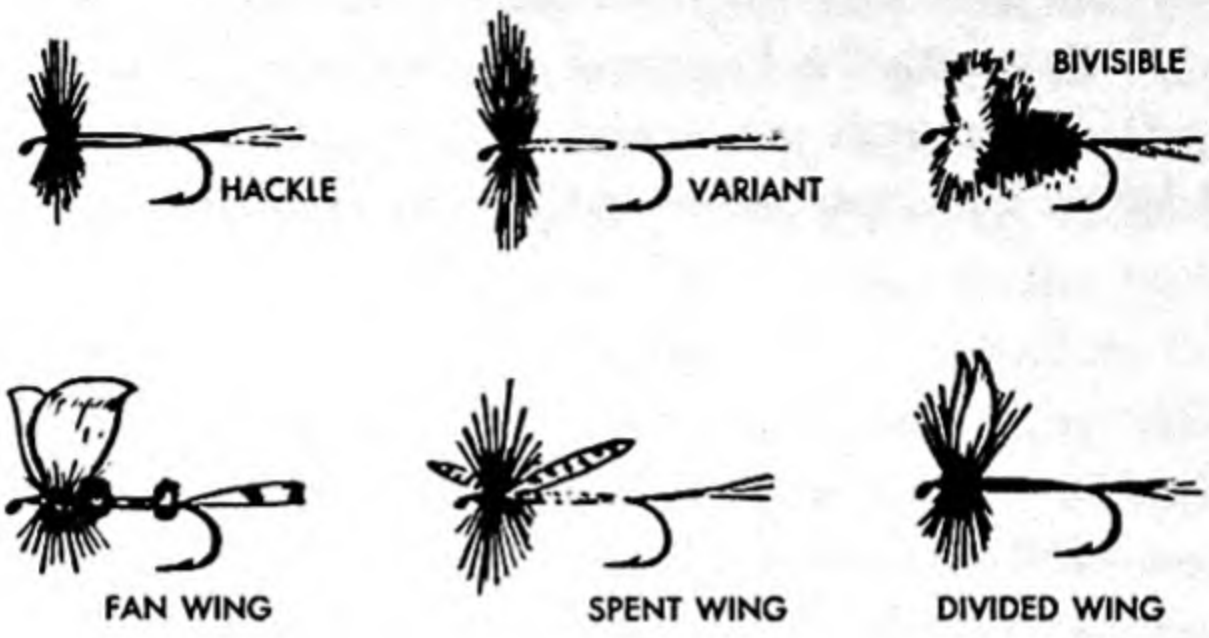
Although trout find nearly all of their food beneath the surface, there are times when they feed exclusively on floating insects. These are the days when the dry-fly fisherman catches ten trout for every one taken by anglers using other methods. To help a dry fly float, it's usually treated with a fly oil obtainable at most tackle shops.

There are many different kinds of dry flies, though all of them were designed to imitate natural insects—or, at least, to be taken by the trout or other fish for insects floating on the water. It is apparent, after studying the illustration in this chapter, that the major difference among most types of dry flies lies in the wings. Many experts, in recent years, have come to suspect that the wing pattern on any floating fly is of minor importance because the trout sees the fly silhouetted against the sky. We question whether they can see any kind except spent wings. Some, like the fan-wings, serve

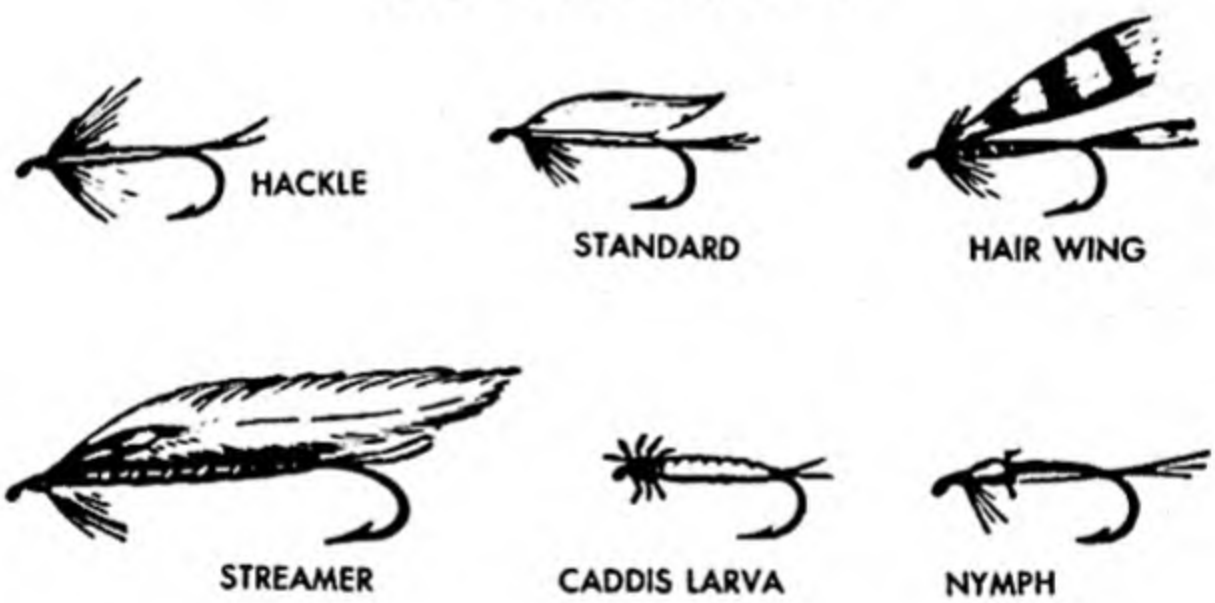
the purpose of being highly visible to the fisherman, but not to the fish. Let's take a look at some of the different types.

The English-style *divided-wing* dry fly was the type Mr. La Branche used when he introduced the sport to this country and it still is used throughout

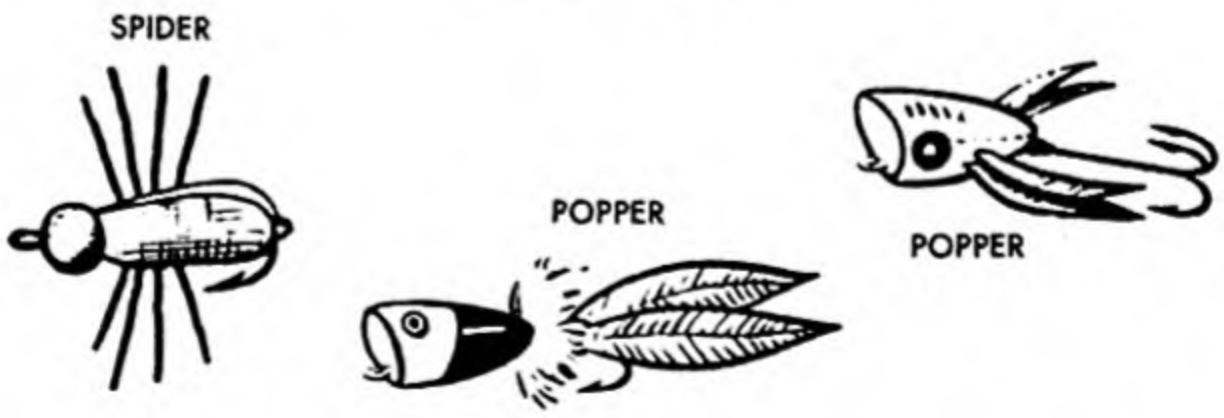
TYPE – BASIC DRY FLIES



TYPE – BASIC WET FLIES



TYPE – BUGS



the United States and Canada. It was developed by anglers who believed in exact imitation of the natural insect on which the trout might be feeding at any particular time. Those flies have two erect wings, separated in a narrow V and tied approximately at right angles to the shank of the hook. They, as well as all other dry flies, should have a hook of light wire, a stiff tail, and

stiff, glossy hackles. (Stiff hackles imitate an insect's legs and cause the dry fly to float high on the water.) Remember that on a level surface a good dry fly will be supported by the hackles and tail, and the hook won't touch. But good ones are expensive, and the angler who fishes with them and doesn't tie his own should pay enough to get the best. Those that float half-submerged don't catch as many fish as the ones that float high, and a sunken dry fly does *not* take the place of a wet fly. Virtually all our American dry flies originated from the divided-wing style.

Fan-wing dry flies, which were originated in this country, are comparatively new. In this type, the curve of the wing feathers flares outward from the fly body and is larger and more rounded than the wing feathers of the divided-wing type. Fan-wings often won't last for more than one or two trout, but they are very effective at times.

Spent-wing dry flies were a natural development, tied to represent the spent May flies which drop to the water with their wings extended after they have laid their eggs. Since the type lies almost flat on the water, the wings are generally longer and narrower than most winged flies. Hackle tips are used exclusively for spent-wing fly wings and many anglers prefer them for all dry flies over the quill wings used on English patterns. Another American development in wings is the use of speckled feathers from the breast of teal, mallards, and other ducks, with the fibers more or less bunched.

Variant dry flies are tied in the same manner as conventional divided-wing flies, except that the hackles are greatly oversize, giving the fly the appearance of a tiny hook, body, and wings completely surrounded by hackle. The usual variant would have about a No. 16 hook, body and wings with a No. 10 hackle. They float very well and are generally good fish-catchers.

In addition to the wing type of dry flies, there are several styles of wingless ones, including the standard hackle patterns, the bivisibles, spiders, and parachute flies. Over the years the standard *hackle* flies have been very good fish-catchers and popular with dry-fly fishermen. They may be tied in all colors and either palmer-tied (hackles wound the full length of the hook shank) without a body or with any kind of body desired. Hackle flies float well—the first essential of a dry fly—and there never is any problem in cocking the wings.

Bivisible flies were developed in an effort to make hackle flies easier to see, the "bi" meaning just what it says—visible to both the angler and the fish. In tying a bivisible, one or two turns of white hackle are wound on after the other color is tied in; the effect of this little speck of white is a fly much easier to see on the water and equally effective. Most bivisibles are palmer-tied, but they don't have to be.

The *spiders* are somewhat similar to variants but have no wings and their hackles may be a bit longer. Small, light hooks, without a body, are used with greatly oversize hackles. A No. 16 spider may have a hackle spread of an inch or more. Spiders float like corks and they frequently will interest trout which won't rise to any other fly.

The *parachute* flies, a type introduced just after World War II, have their hackles wound horizontally above the hook. These flies light gently, hence the name, and float rather well, but the hackles lie flat on the water instead of on end like an insect's legs. To the present time, neither the fish nor anglers have accepted this type of dry fly too well.

It's almost impossible to name a dozen or so dry-fly patterns that would be best everywhere, under all conditions. For this reason, whether you're a novice or an expert, you always should try to learn what are the best patterns of dry flies for the water you're to fish; and the logical source of this information is a local fisherman or guide who knows what he is doing. But when you do, make sure that you talk to a dry-fly fisherman, and not some bank runner who may be the local idiot and incapable of distinguishing between a dry fly and a dry martini.

WET FLIES AND NYMPHS

As stated earlier, a wet fly is one which is fished beneath the surface of the water. The original concept of a wet fly was that it was designed to resemble a drowned surface fly. Today, the theory behind wet flies is that they represent a pupa, an adult insect submerged to deposit eggs and other small marine life such as the caddis. Wet flies were used for many years in America before anyone fished dry and still are effective for all kinds of trout at virtually all seasons of the year.

Like dry flies, there are hundreds of patterns of the wet type. There are, however, three basic styles: winged flies, hackles, and nymphs. All should be tied on rather heavy hooks and should sink readily.

The *winged* type of fly is divided into two basic designs, single wing and divided wings. The English-style wet flies, in use there for hundreds of years, and the predominant favorites in the Eastern United States, have a single, flat wing curved back low over the body, thin bodies in most patterns, and extremely sparse hackles. In the West a different type of winged wet fly is used considerably. It has divided wings which slope back over the body, and a slightly heavier hackle than the typical English fly.

Nymphs are an American improvement over the English wet fly. They are wingless and very sparsely dressed with hackles, if any. Nymphs more closely imitate such insects as May flies and stone flies, which spend by far the greater part of their lives under water and, consequently, form the bulk of a trout's diet. Being exact imitations, they are flat in shape, have legs of

hackle or hair on the sides and are darker on the back than underneath. Nymphs are most effective when fish are feeding just off the bottom to below the surface when the water first starts to warm in the early part of the season.

The *hackles* are a nymph form with more hackle tied around the head and somewhat more heavily wound bodies. Being wingless, they have good all-seasonal appeal and can be used at any time. Close relatives of the hackles are the *hair* flies, which use hair instead of feathers, and the *palmer*-type hackle flies, in which hackle feathers are wound the full length of the body to represent a fuzzy caterpillar. Actually, the latter is often called a "palmer worm."

STREAMERS AND BUCKTAILS

Once upon a time, about sixty years ago, there was a sorely vexed fly fisherman. An old favorite, a custom-tied offering he'd been using long and hard, began to come apart. He cussed his tier good and proper and switched flies.

No fish.

More switching followed.

Still no fish.

In desperation the distraught angler turned back to his first love, mangy and beat-up though it was. As the fly's hackle feathers continued to unravel and trail behind the hook, lo! a strange and wonderful thing happened. With a vengeance terrible to behold trout exploded all around the streaming feathers; they fought for the thing and one after another hooked themselves until the now overjoyed fisherman had had enough.

Why, he asked himself, had trout gone berserk over this messy mass of dangling feathers that looked nothing at all like a May fly? There was only one food form that the thing could have represented—something always in the water even when flies weren't—a small fish. And this, thought that observant angler of yesteryear, was what those streaming feathers looked like as they quivered and shimmered against the current. So five hundred years after Dame Julia Berners fished her first crude May fly imitations wet, and almost a half-century after Marryat floated his more refined artificials dry, a new dimension was added to fly-rod angling. The streamer was born.

J. Edson Leonard's fine book, *Flies*, tells this tale of its birth. And while there are others, this one seems plausible enough. Yet contemporary brothers of the angle often wonder why it took their fraternal forebears so long to get around to imitating minnows. After all, game fish have always been known as the cannibals that they are—not to mention the fact that fish fry afford a consistently available menu for the larger denizens of all water, at

any hour of the day, during most seasons of the year. To understand the story behind this long-delayed breakthrough is to appreciate the deadly potential of America's major contribution to trout-fishing lore—to know when and where streamers are at their best, and why. S. R. Slaymaker explains this as follows.

Izaak Walton himself thought of the artificial fly as a thoroughly utilitarian instrument. It was not an object of art; it was meant to catch fish. To him the trout fly represented no standard by which fly-whipping addicts might draw invidious comparisons with their bait-slinging brethren. He only tied imitations because it was too hard to impale naturals on a hook. Worms, grubs, and grasshoppers were easier to handle, so there was no need to imitate them. The same went for minnows, although Izaak did recognize the need for an artificial when real ones were hard to find. So he came up with an imitation made from green silk. It was to be fished "in a swift stream." While Walton himself fished some fast-falling streams, his successors' activities largely centered on the chalk rivers of southern England. In those clear, sleepily flowing waters, the silk concoction couldn't have looked very minnowlike. Thus in the delightful angling literature of that lovely pastoral locale, the little green minnow was never heard from again. So destiny had it that a workable minnow imitation would have to be the product of other waters. But the land of fly fishing's birth was yet to contribute greatly to the latter-day evolution of streamers.

The principal difference between streamers and bucktails lies only in that the *streamer* wet flies are made of feathers, and *bucktails* of hair. In striving to arrive at the most effective imitations of real minnow and fry life, the streamer-bucktail fisherman is afforded as fascinating a field of research as that of the fly-fisher entomologist. All around his sloshing waders, in the watery world of nymphs and duns, there are live minnows and fish fry as well. For meeting the challenge offered by bigger trout, the latter are fitter subjects to match: large fish have a definite dietary need for the real mouthful that small fish provide. Through such study of minnow life, Mr. John Wise, Sr., has had developed what he calls "streamerettes."

It's been a long-accepted fact that in high, roily water big streamers are effective because trout can easily see them. Yet Mr. Wise found that the vast majority of minnows in a given stream are smaller than those represented by average-size streamers, say, those tied on No. 6, No. 8, and No. 10 size hooks. In high water these tiny fish are not readily visible to trout. In low water they are. So Mr. Wise developed small bucktails for low-water fishing. Tied on size 8, No. 1 shanks, streamerettes are killers in shallows where larger-size streamers often frighten and thus put down trout.

As a direct descendant of the wet fly then, the streamer and bucktail has evolved in America on a parallel course: as an attractor, as a deceiver, and

as both. It's made to order for fast-flowing, free-stone water, so common to trout rivers of the Western Hemisphere. As an all-weather lure for low water and high it meets the need of that vast majority of us who can't always manage to be on the stream at exactly "the right time." And if possessed of that one overriding skill for successful streamer or bucktail fishing —the ability to read water—the average fly-rod handler is afforded opportunities to rival the most dedicated of dry-fly purists when it comes to finesse astream.

So why do fly fishermen often deprecate the streamer or bucktail? Some say that underwater presentation robs them of the thrilling beauty of on-the-surface takes. But then trout do feed under water about 75 percent of the time. Dry-fly action is the exception, nymph and wet-fly fishing the rule, during the majority of the days out of every season's fishing. This means underwater striking. And nymphs and wet flies rarely evoke the vicious strikes that streamers obtain. Nor will a trout strike again and again at a fly, as he often will at a streamer. A fly is not a mouthful; it doesn't stir up the trout's killer instincts. In some respects the streamer or bucktail may be the lure of the future.

Entire species of May flies are often wiped out by the careless use of insecticides during forest-spraying operations. Should this continue, there may be fewer hatches to match. But while hatches do last, increased fly-fishing pressure reduces the numbers of easy-to-catch, free-rising fish. The mortality rate of underwater cruiser cannibals, though, remains unaltered. The great Charlie Fox, who invariably trots out a streamer in an attempt to get into a big one during and after a storm, says that more streamer fishing for cannibals is one way to preserve free-rising strains in our streams. Maybe America's first contribution to this most glorious of pastimes is too new. Perhaps the warp and woof of time must mesh together still more threads of streamer theory and practice into a larger fabric of tradition, as has been the case over these many years with the wet fly and the dry. Then the streamer or bucktail will have a *raison d'être* transcending that of the present, as the always available fly fisher's crutch—the nearest thing to a sure cure for hatchless days.

OTHER FLY-FISHING LURES

There are a few other lures in the fly-fishing category that must be mentioned. Most important are the bass bugs. These bugs, which can be used for pickerel, pike, other panfish, and tarpon, too, float because of their light body while a dry fly is floated by its hackles, and they are usually designed to imitate the big moths or millers that these fish like. However, so-called bass bugs are also made in many designs to imitate natural food

—minnows, mice, dobson flies, dragonflies, and the like. Poppers are also surface lures, and because of their hollowed-out heads, produce a popping noise when retrieved in jerks. They are very effective for game fish when you are night angling.

Combination Spinner and Fly. The fly and spinner combination used with a fly rod is one of the most effective means of taking panfish, bass, and large trout. The flies and spinners can be purchased in combination or separately. Separately, the spinners can be used with any fly in your tackle box. When employed with split shot, they can be used to lure trout and other game fish in deep pools or fast water. Spinners are generally retrieved with a start-and-stop motion.

For full information on the use of flies and other fly-casting lures and how to catch fish with them, see Chapter 5.

The tackle assembly chart on page 38 is as close a guide as it is possible for us to give you. Estimating fly-fishing tackle is a difficult—almost impossible—task because of variations in rods and line weights. This line-to-rod chart is only an approximation of matched fly-casting tackle. Rod action and actual line weight will cause some variation. Fast rods (stiffer tips) might take one line size heavier; light-action rods (more flexible ones), one size lighter. As a rule, any rod will take several line sizes.

Romance in a fly box

There's a lot of human interest in a fly box: romance, tradition and history. So says John Alden Knight, and he tells this story to prove it. All too few of us ever trouble ourselves about the origin and development of our favorite fly patterns. Prior to 1890 or thereabouts, fly fishing in America was done with one style of fly only—the dressing that is known now as the wet fly. Theodore Gordon, recently returned from England where he had done some fishing with Halford, the inventor of the floating or dry fly, concluded that this same technique could be applied to American waters. To be sure, conditions in our tumbling Catskill streams differ vastly from those of the placid chalk streams of southern England. But Gordon was a good fly tier and he set to work on the perfection of some satisfactory American patterns. To get hackles of suitable shade and quality, he had to raise his own chickens, crossbreeding for color until he had what he sought. The result, after many years of experimentation, is dry-fly fishing as we have it in America today, plus the Quill Gordon fly. We have much for which to thank Theodore Gordon.

Another valuable addition to the fly boxes of this country is the Hendrickson. This fly was first tied by Roy Steenrod, then of Livingston Manor, New York, and was named by him in honor of A. E. Hendrickson of Scars-

dale, New York, a noted Catskill angler. Steenrod and Hendrickson were fishing Beaverkill one day, back in 1915, when a heavy hatch of flies came on the water. While the tiny insects resembled Quill Gordons somewhat, they had a nonsegmented body of lighter coloration than that of the Quill Gordon. The trout fed on this hatch and paid little or no attention to the artificial Quill Gordons which the two anglers offered them. Steenrod, an excellent fly tier, put one of the little insects in his fly box and that evening he copied it. With this new fly he and Hendrickson did great execution. Thus was another pattern born. The current dressing of the Hendrickson does not use yellow pheasant crest for the tail stylets; otherwise the pattern today is the same as the original.

Few fly boxes are without bivisibles. This creation, which looks more like a bottle washer than a stream insect, was first tied by Edward Ringwood Hewitt around 1925 or 1926. For fishing the rough, fast riffles of the Neversink River where he had his camp, Hewitt wanted a fly that would float under any and all circumstances. Experimentally, he tied the first bivisible and, to his surprise, it caught fish. The first ones were of solid brown, difficult to see, so Hewitt added a white hackle to the front of the fly to step up visibility. His son, Ashley, hit upon the name. "The fish can see it and so can I," said his father, so Ashley christened it the bivisible. From the original brown and white pattern have come the innumerable color combinations we find in the tackle shops today.

Another trail blazer is Joe Messinger's Irresistible. For many years, Joe Messinger, in his shop in Morgantown, West Virginia, has been producing bass lures—hair frogs and bugs, tied from deer hair—that have been and still are in a class by themselves. Messinger has found out more about handling bucktail and deer hair than any man living. Knowing the appeal that clipped deer hair has for game fish, he put together this fly as an experiment. The results have been astonishing. Our prediction is that quite a few more patterns with clipped deer-hair bodies will be in fly boxes of the country before many years.

Two of our dry-fly patterns gaining in popularity are the Gray Wulff and the White Wulff. These were first put together by Lee Wulff, nationally known angler and lecturer, about 1935 or 1936. Wulff ties his own flies without benefit of vise. He just holds the hook in his fingers and ties his fly. He has had a decided leaning toward heavily dressed flies: bivisibles, palmers, and such, with lots of hackle and tail support. This business is contrary to all precepts that have been laid down by the earlier proponents of dry-fly fishing. But Lee's flies cast nicely, float indefinitely, and catch fish.

One of the more radical innovations in fresh-water angling was the development of the artificial nymph for use in American waters. This lure, or series of lures, had been popular in Great Britain for many years. Not until

1933, however, was it generally used in this country. The reason is this: nymphs that live in the weed beds of England's chalk streams are, for the most part, round in shape. In our fast-running streams, the nymphs live under the rocks and, consequently, most of them are flat-bodied, dark on top with light undersides. Today it is uncommon to find a fly box without a few flat-bodied nymphs.

While the Coachman is an English pattern, its American offspring, the Royal Coachman, has so far eclipsed its parent that the Coachman series —Coachman, Lead Wing Coachman, Royal Coachman and Fan Wing Royal Coachman—are really as much American as they are English. Tom Bosworth, coachman to George IV, William IV and Queen Victoria, is credited with the origination of the Coachman. The fly, in reality, is merely a Brown Hackle to which has been added a white wing. The Lead Wing Coachman has been attributed to Henry R. Francis, a noted British angler of the last century.

To John Haily, proprietor in the 1870's of a tackle shop at 320 Henry Street, New York City, goes the credit for the Royal Coachman—the addition of the red silk band in the center of the body of the fly. Just where the Fan Wing Royal Coachman came from, who was responsible for the first tying, probably never will be decided. There are several claimants of that honor. Our choice is Theodore Gordon, who tied Fan Wing Royals as early as 1907. One, tied in that year, is on exhibition in the Gordon collection at the Anglers Club of New York. In a nationwide poll, this fly won the popular vote by a two-to-one margin over its closest competitor. But consider its growing pains. First the Brown Hackle, which, we suppose, goes back to Dame Juliana Berners of fifteenth-century fame. Then Tom Bosworth added white wings and found that the addition improved the taking qualities of the fly. Haily gave it the red band, and, we think, Gordon changed the wings to fan wings. Thus, over a period of nearly five hundred years, was a pattern brought into being that now takes first place with the dry-fly fishermen.

The bucktails and streamer flies, as previously stated, aren't strictly artificial flies, but artificial minnows. In shape and action in the water these types suggest minnows rather than insects. So far as we know, the bucktail was first tied by William Scripture, Jr., of Rome, New York, about 1907 or 1908. Working independently, much along the same lines, was Emerson Hough of Chicago, who introduced his bucktail about 1910. The havoc these patterns wrought among the large trout in our streams is known from coast to coast. Today, bucktail patterns are so varied that to list them would be an impossibility. But they all stem from these two original patterns.

The streamer fly, without question, is another angling innovation that can

be attributed to Edward R. Hewitt, perhaps as resourceful an angler as ever lived. Hewitt tied these flies originally with a small No. 12 hook and a long, wiggly wing, three or four times the length of the hook itself. Reasoning that a trout usually strikes a minnow at the head, Hewitt used the short hook, and the number of fish he caught with these early patterns seemed to uphold his conclusions. Streamer flies, as we have them today, with long-shanked hooks and rather stiff wings, bear little relation to Hewitt's early patterns. But the records that such flies as the Dark and Light Edson and the Mickey Finn have hung up are impressive. They spread across the country like wildfire. Bill Edson's memorable trip throughout New England and Canada, during which he caught every variety of fresh-water game fish, is a story in itself, well worth repeating did space permit. The debut of the Mickey Finn, launched through the medium of an article in one of the outdoor magazines and the New York Sportsmen's Show in 1938, is indeed an astonishing saga. The demand for this fly was so great that by actual count 200,000 of them were sold during the first three days of the show. Two fly-tying companies, on the verge of bankruptcy, were able to take a new lease on life, filling orders for Mickey Finns, and the nation's largest fly manufacturing company, devoting its entire facilities to the production of Mickey Finns, was from three to six weeks behind in its orders for three or four months, just with that fly alone. Who can say that a fly box doesn't hold its share of romance?

Today, the angler who doesn't tie his own flies is the exception rather than the rule. (Fly-tying credit courses are given in several colleges and universities. Instructions are also given in many adult night study programs.) Thus it's not surprising that new and different patterns are being turned out annually by the thousands. Some of these new ones are killers; most of them are not. And through this welter of design and color combination, the old reliable standard patterns manage to hold their own and continue to deliver the goods. There is a reason for this. The tried and true patterns weren't developed hastily; almost all of them are the outcome of a great deal of care, study, and experimentation on the part of experienced anglers. Even today, with thousands upon thousands of patterns, there are only a few *good* flies.

4

How the real fisherman catches his fish

Imagine yourself in this situation. It's dawn of a chilly morning and you're paddling quietly along the outer edge of a weed bed in your favorite lake. In front of you on the seat of your scow lies a 9-foot fly rod equipped with nylon line, a 6-pound test leader and a white popping bug with feather streamers. The lake is flat and still in the early morning calm, tinted yellow and orange beneath the dawn clouds and bordered by the deep blue-green reflection of a mountainous skyline. The only sound is the plaintive lowing of a cow somewhere in the distance. A kingfisher skims along the edge of the water, looking for his breakfast, and a giant white heron, who has been watching you from the little island up ahead, unfolds his wings and lumbers away in heavy, slow-motion flight.

Suddenly a fish rises at the point of the weed bed, leaving a swollen, eddied place on the smooth surface of the water. Quietly you lay your paddle across the gunwales, pick up your fly rod and strip some line from the reel. You flick the line back and forth in a couple of false casts, and then drop the feathered lure in the center of the swirl. For a moment, nothing happens. But you leave it there, watching it rock delicately on the

syrup-smooth water. Then you gather up the slack in your left hand and give the lure a little tug.

Wham! The big fish smashes into the lure, coming half out of the water with a vicious lunge. In that instant his mouth looks as big as a milk pail. Instinctively you set the hook and the battle is on. He's a strong fish, even bigger than you thought; the impact of his first surge snatches the line out of your left hand and the reel lets out a warning shriek. Groping for the line, you trigger the reel and that slows him a little, but he's still demanding line, going deep and steady toward the middle of the lake. Now you have the line in your hand again and you begin to apply the pressure to turn him. Keep that rod tip up. This is a real fish you're connected to, friend. Down there below somewhere the leader is taut as a banjo string and you can feel that tension in both hands and all the way up through the wrist and lower part of your right arm. Another pound of pressure and you'll be forced to yield to him again or he'll snap the rod tip.

But no, you've turned him. You've checked his first run and that's always his hardest, but you've got an awful lot of nylon out there in the water. Now comes the real test. He lunges upward like a runaway torpedo and shatters the surface in an explosive leap—white belly flashing, gills flared—lashing his big head back and forth in angry defiance. Watch it now: he's going to rush you. If he gets slack, he'll jump again and shake the lure out of his mouth. You've got to be quick.

The rod tip goes up, higher and higher, and you're working hard now to keep the line tight on him with your left hand while the right hand triggers the reel to retrieve the dangerous slack that's piling up around your feet in the bottom of the boat.

Out he comes again—this is a good fish—but he is making his bid too soon. The rod tip nods and you see the lure still planted firmly in the corner of his mouth. Looks like you've got him, but don't be too sure, because this game is far from over. This old boy still has plenty of fight and several more good tricks to try on you.

Now he's making a run for the weed bed. He knows that if he can get back in there he can snarl the leader and break it. Better turn him again, and do it quick, because he hasn't far to go and he's determined. But he's not quite so strong now—that first run cost him something—and you are able to turn him the second time without much risk to your tackle. He comes back reluctantly, contesting every inch of it, and begins to swim laterally to the boat. You get a good look at him then, as he wallows heavily, dark green and silver green, just under the surface. You swear by all that's holy he'll go to 6 pounds.

Slowly, carefully, you work him in toward the boat, drawing the line through the guides with your left hand and letting the reel have the gain

as it comes in. He surfaces twice, slicing the water with his dorsal fin, and pulls away a few feet each time, but he lacks the strength to jump again. Now he's near the boat. You reach down for the net, and bingo, this canny old gentleman plays his trump card: he gives a mighty surge that stabs the rod tip down into the water and drives directly under the boat. He's headed for the propeller shaft of the outboard motor, which you forgot to lift out before you struck him. If he gets the line around that shaft, he'll have something solid to pull against and it's good-bye Mister Bass.

Frantically you drop the net and lean out over the side of the boat, fighting to lead him back into open water. He's a strong fish, and a game one, but the rod has him just about licked. There is a spine-tingling moment when the leader goes like wire under the stress—something has to give—then with a sigh of relief you see him rise, like a long shadow, beside the stern.

He's yours. Take the net and dip him up. Did you say 6 pounds? Well, 4, at least. He's a great fish—the noblest that swims—and you're a real fisherman—the best that is.

But, to put yourself in the above word picture, there is a great deal involved. For instance, you must know how to handle your tackle, present the bait or lure to the fish, set the hook, play the fish, and finally how to land him. There are many ways in which to achieve the desired results—to catch a fish. We know how we can best catch fish, but, if that were to be the best way for you to do it, you'd have to be our identical twin—with the same attitudes, the same reflexes, the same physical characteristics, and the same thoughts about fish and fishing. Since this isn't the case, the very best we can do is to try to tell you in general how fish should be caught, based on the experience, through the years, of the many "expert" anglers, the methods and tricks that have worked so well for them—and for us, too.

If you're a beginning angler, the information in this and the next three chapters will aid you in developing a style which will give the desired results. By taking this "dope," experimenting with the various techniques involved, observing the conditions that affect the fish and fishing success, and melting them all into your own individual fishing style, you will become an accomplished fisherman. If you're already an angler, this information will help to increase your knowledge of fishing. Remember that you can never learn everything about this wonderful sport, since your quarry seems to come up with new tricks every day. Izaak Walton expressed it better as follows:

"For Angling may be said to be so like Mathematics, that it can never be fully learned, at least not so fully, but that there will still be more experiments left for the trial of other men that succeed us."

Methods of fishing

There are three basic methods of fishing:

1. Still fishing. This is the simplest, often the starting point of one's interest in the sport. The equipment required is elementary: a rod—this can range from expensive fishing tackle to a bamboo pole; a length of line; a float or bobber; and a hook. The hook carries a natural bait—worms, minnows, hellgrammites, crayfish, grubs, insects—and lies static beneath the water until a fish bites.

2. Trolling. In this method, the hook, with bait or artificial lure attached, is drawn through the water by a slow-moving boat. Trolling is practiced on the ocean, on fresh-water lakes, and in rivers that are wide enough and deep enough to give your lure unobstructed passage.

3. Casting. Here the angler employs the action of his rod to "throw" an artificial lure over the water, then retrieve the lure so that it imitates the action of live bait. (At times, live bait is cast in the same manner.) The principal casting techniques are bait, spin, and fly casting for fresh-water fish, and surf casting in salt water.

The question that's often put to us is, "Why bother to learn to cast when you can just drop a line in the water and still-fish?" There are three obvious answers that come to mind immediately, and a dozen more that may occur to any of you who have tried both methods.

First, it's much more fun and more sporting to catch a fish by casting. Second, when casting, you can present your lure in good fishing spots that can't be reached by still fishing. Third, while the still fisherman can present his bait only to the fish in his immediate vicinity, the caster can reach much farther, has a greater potential number of fish within his range. His chances of taking a trophy catch—the ultimate goal of nine out of ten anglers—increase correspondingly. Because of the importance of casting, we'll devote the remaining portion of this chapter to the four main types—bait casting, spinning, push-button fishing (or spin casting), and fly casting. Still fishing and trolling will be fully covered in Chapter 5.

Bait-casting techniques

Two-thirds of the bait-casting fishermen have a great deal to learn about the art of bait casting. The majority give little thought about the outfit with which they are casting and pay little attention to their method of casting. Their main idea, apparently, is to get the bait out in one way or another, so that it falls on the water somewhere within ten feet of the desired spot.

In fly casting, the rod is the great motive power which forces the line

forward to its destination. The fly-casting reel, while serving a more important function than merely holding the line, does not provide impetus to the cast. In bait casting, the rod is secondary in importance to the reel. It is the latter that is the power that gets the bait forward to where you want it. Therefore a good reel is important to the bait-caster.

It's easy to learn to bait cast, but it requires a reasonable amount of practice. Fortunately, however, you can practice almost anywhere—at home on the lawn, in a park, or over water. (Remember that casting practice is as helpful to the angler as driving practice is to the golfer or batting practice to the baseball player.) For these training sessions, tournament plugs weighing from ⅜ to ⅝ ounce should be employed. These plugs are made for practice casting and have no hooks. Remember that in bait casting, as in any other casting method, distance is less important than accuracy. Therefore, you should select targets to help you develop your aim. When you are on the water you'll want to make every cast count, to drop your lure into the exact spots where fish are most likely to be lurking.

The following instructions on the operation of the reel during a cast are rather general. Be sure to read the instruction booklet that comes with your reel for specific instructions. Some reels have features that require special casting techniques. Our thanks to Henry Shakespeare for the following:

OVERHEAD CAST

The overhead cast is the one to master. You'll use it for 90 percent of your fishing; it's safer, easier, and more accurate. In the following step-by-step discussion of the actions of the overhead cast, you'll note that we have used throughout the instructions references to the "1 o'clock position," the "3 o'clock position," etc. This is a standard approach to beginning casting; it refers to an imaginary clock face under whose numeral 12 the caster is standing.

First, grasp the rod in a natural manner, with palm down, the thumb on the line, and reel handles up. (One of the most common beginning errors is to cast with the reel handles on the side.) Now, work your wrist up and down a couple of times to make certain that you are not gripping the rod too tightly to allow free wrist movement. Bear in mind that a good cast is, first, the function of your wrist action; second, of your forearm action; and, third, of the rod itself. The upper arm is not used at all.

The antibacklash tension device, if your reel has one, should be adjusted so that, when the rod is held in a position approximating 1 or 2 o'clock, the line will drop of its own weight at a rate of 2 or 3 feet a second. Also see that the click of the reel is off. (The click on a reel is not an antibacklash device, as many beginners believe, so don't leave it on when you cast. It causes excessive wear of the reel parts. Use it only to keep the line from

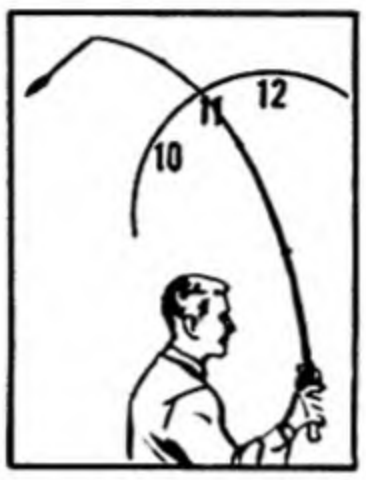
loosening on the spool when carrying the rod, when trolling, or still fishing.)

If your reel has a free-spooling arrangement, it should be placed in a casting position so that it will disengage the drive gears from the crank assembly. After the cast is made, the gears can usually be re-engaged automatically by turning the crank forward to retrieve the line.

When you are ready to make your first cast, turn the reel handle until the lure is dangling about 6 inches below the rod tip. Face directly toward the target you intend to reach with the lure. Begin the cast with the rod pointing above the target (sight your target through the first guide), at about a 2 o'clock position, with your forearm parallel to the water on the ground surface. All your movements from this point forward should be made with the point of your elbow serving as the fulcrum. The elbow should remain in the same spot throughout the cast, with the wrist and forearm performing all the action.

Now, with an upward flick of the wrist and a slight upward motion of the forearm, raise the rod tip in a smooth, continuous arc until the rod tip approaches a perpendicular—12 o'clock—position. There, smartly and quickly, begin to check the backward travel of the rod so that its momentum and the weight and momentum of the plug will bow the rod to the rear. Your lift must be sharp enough to put a bend in the rod over much of its length and to get the bait behind you quickly. The force of the cast will cause the rod handle to move forward in your hand, to exert outward pressure on the second, third, and fourth handle automatically, with enough muscle tension to snap the rod forward. This forward impetus should be followed through with a steady, smooth, forward-and-downward push with the wrist and hand to complete the cast. In other words, you start the forward push without a pause, in one single, blended motion. This takes full advantage of the power you have transmitted to the rod during the back cast. It is now a fully flexed spring, ready to throw the lure out and ahead of you with great speed.

As the rod tip approaches the 1 o'clock position, release the thumb tension on the spool to start the lure on its way. Do not lift your thumb completely clear of the spool; instead, keep a very light, constant thumb pressure on the line as it is running out. Rock it over the back pillar to maintain better control. When you release the line, the lure will travel out at about a 30-degree angle to the water—if your release has been correctly timed—and the spool will spin rapidly as the line peels off. By this time the lure is well on its way, and your forearm and wrist will have dropped down almost to the 3 o'clock point. Keep your eye on the plug as it begins to drop; then increase the thumb pressure on the spool to take slack out of the line and to drop the lure gently. When the plug reaches the target, or when it hits the



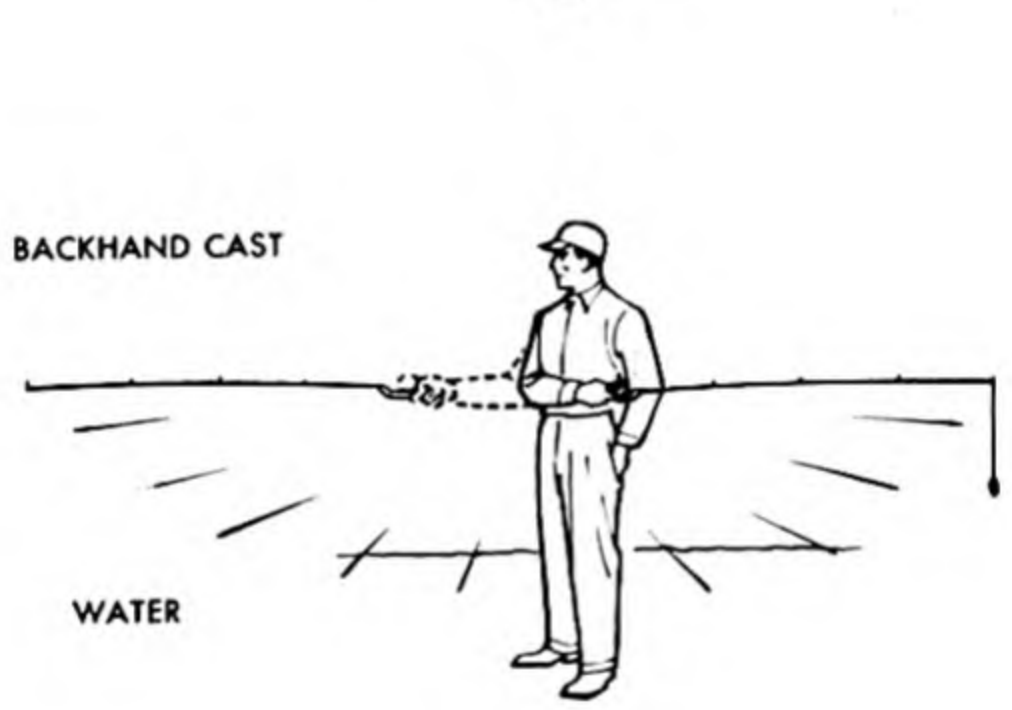
water, apply enough thumb pressure to stop the spool completely. With some of the new antibacklash devices, you can let the spool ride free without thumbing during the forward flight of the plug. Just as the lure lands, raise the rod tip and switch the rod from the right to the left hand to begin the retrieve.

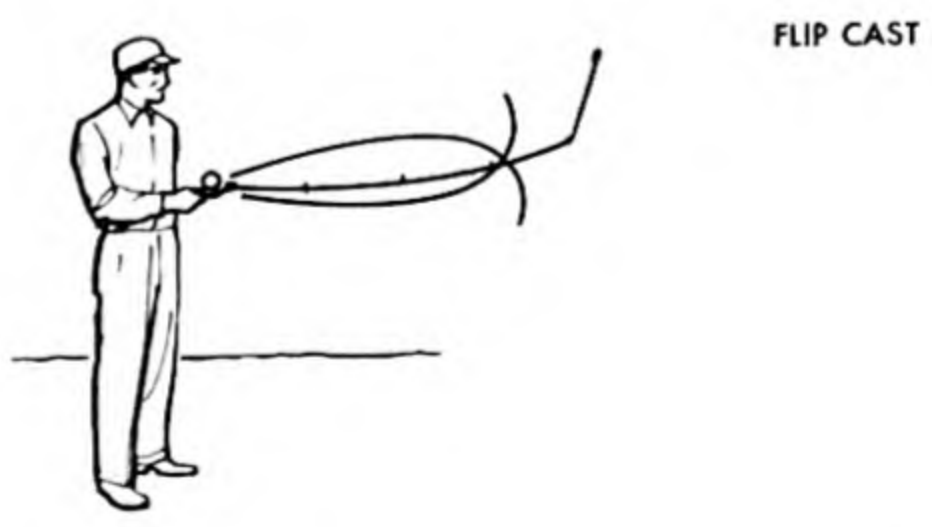
In making the retrieve, hold the rod with the fingers of your left hand just below and ahead of the reel seat so that the side plate touches your palm and the heel of your left thumb. This will give you the necessary leverage to set the hook should a fish strike, and to stabilize the position of

the reel when you are playing a hooked fish. Keep the rod tip lifted fairly high on the retrieve to keep as much of the line out of the water as possible.

SIDE CAST

In effect, the side cast is simply the overhead or perpendicular cast with the rod traveling in a horizontal plane. The value of this cast lies in the fact





that with it you can cast to targets which lie under overhanging trees and foliage along the shore. Such growth often comes close to the water and may extend fifteen feet or more out from the shore. An overhead cast will wrap your line around the branches. It takes plenty of practice to master

the side cast since you can't "aim" the lure as you can in the overhead cast. The movement of the rod throughout is in a horizontal plane, not up or down. The handle of the reel should be down, with the spool perpendicular to the water. The rod should travel backward as far as it did in the overhead, but the release of the line shouldn't be made until the rod is almost straight out before you. Leaning the body to the right and bringing the head down in line with the horizontal position of the rod aids some fishermen to make accurate casts by this method.

BACKHAND CAST

In the side cast, the movement is usually made from right to left. In the backhand cast, however, the cast is made from the left side toward the right. The position of your reel here is with the handle pointing straight up, and the line spool facing toward you. The rod pauses at a position behind your left shoulder and about 30 degrees below horizontal, and then travels to a position almost straight in front of you. As with the side cast, the backhand method is used chiefly when you are casting a lure under overhanging branches. It is also useful when you are casting from the stern of a boat, so that you won't cast over your companions' heads.

FLIP CAST

This cast is good when you must get your lure through brush. To accomplish it, just poke the rod straight forward through an opening in the lakeshore foliage. With the rod tip pointing down, the rod butt straight up, the reel spool facing toward you, and your thumb lightly pressing on the spool, allow the lure to hang 6 to 8 inches below the rod tip. Now, with elbow action only, flip the lure first upward, then downward; with the momentum obtained by the flips, shoot the lure outward and straight ahead. At the moment the reel spool is released, the rod should be aimed at the target. Practice casts should be no more than 15 to 30 feet. When you have thoroughly mastered flip procedure, you can strive for greater distances. For longer casts, the rod should be carried up to an angle of almost 30 degrees in front of you; as the lure drops to the water, press the thumb on the line spool; then turn the reel up to pull in the lure in the usual manner.

Although we have given you specific points for terminating the back and forward casts, we hasten to mention that these will vary, even considerably, with the outfit you use and with the weight of your practice-casting weight or lure. Generally, a short, stiff-action rod will have to be brought somewhat farther back beyond the perpendicular than described here in order to obtain the desired casting distance. A long, loose rod will have to be checked on the back cast even before the perpendicular position is reached.

For these reasons, you must get the feel of your particular outfit and determine in practice the limits to which your rod should travel during the cast. The rod length and action, and the weight of the casting lure, will also help to determine how far below the rod tip the lure should be suspended at the beginning of the cast, and at what point in the forward cast the lure should be allowed to start its travel toward the target.

Spinning techniques

Although spinning was known to fishermen of the seventeenth century, it wasn't until recently that the art of the thread line was put to any great use by anglers. Among the many advantages it now affords, the base of its increasing popularity is due to the ease with which the equipment operates. The average person can learn to toss out 50 or 60 feet of line in ten minutes' time. Since the reel is a stationary drum, the line can't overrun as it spins off and the cast can be made from any position.

If you spear a spool of thread, using a pencil (on which it spins freely) as an axis, and pull the thread off with the other hand, you will duplicate the principle of the ordinary reel. Now, without a pencil, hold the spool at one end between thumb and forefinger, and the thread can be pulled off more swiftly, unencumbered by the resistance of the spool's turning. By the same token, the turning spool will snarl the thread should your hand stop pulling before the reel's momentum abates, whereas with the stationary spool this is impossible. When the hand stops pulling (or the lure drops to the water), the thread stops unraveling. The cast depends on the angler's holding the line between forefinger and rod grip while the rod is thrust back and forth, as one does in bait casting, but the line is released from the finger *after* the forward drive of the rod has been completed. This point of release is a slight variation from plugging, and a requisite for spinning accuracy.

Before casting, it's a good idea to examine the reel and to read the information that comes with it. Most spinning reels are fastened to rod grips by means of the T-shaped support on the reel. This keeps the reel spool far enough away from the rod to allow the line to uncoil without excessive slapping against it. The crossbar of the T is called the "foot" and the vertical bar the "leg." You grasp the rod grip by having one, two, even three fingers ahead of the leg and the others behind it. (In the case of most closed-face reels, the entire right hand is placed forward of the reel.) The number of fingers will vary with the size of your hand and the style of your reel. To decide how many are most comfortable for you, grasp the reel so that the tip of your forefinger can easily be placed against the front face of the reel spool. Correct use of the forefinger against the face of the spool allows for instant control of the line, and thus it is very important in spinning. The

thumb offers some leverage on top of the rod handle and increases accuracy. It is important to keep your hand as relaxed as possible. Starting with a relaxed hold, you shouldn't squeeze down on the rod grip until the very instant power is applied to the back cast. After the reel has been installed and the rod assembled, thread the line from the front face of the reel spool, or from the cone opening, through the rod line guides, and attach the lure or the practice plug.

Most spinning fishermen find it advisable to carry an extra reel spool filled with line. This gives a choice of two sizes—4 pound and 8-pound test, for example. The spools on most reels can be changed in a matter of seconds. The extra spool is handy in case of a broken line, and the two sizes provide a lighter line for longer casts, a stronger line for fishing near lily pads, stumps, and other obstructions, or for handling larger fish.

Set the drag by adjusting the spool nut or micrometer ring to just under the breaking strength of the line. While there are several methods of adjusting the drag, the easiest way for beginners is to adjust the nut or ring by hooking your lure on some object, and with the reel in a retrieve position, to step backward with the rod under stress so that you can feel the amount of drag being exerted. If the line merely pulls taut and the clutch doesn't slip, or if it is released with difficulty, lessen the drag a bit. When it rolls off smoothly under almost maximum pressure without apparent strain on the line, the drag is set properly for most types of fishing. Each time you change line spools, remember to reset your drag to its proper tension. There are times when the amount of drag must be changed.

OVERHEAD CAST

The overhead or overhand cast, generally considered the standard method, permits the greatest accuracy with the greatest distance. Grasp the rod loosely—don't strangle it. Set the antireverse lever in the off position; leave 6 to 12 inches of line dangling from the tip to the lure; pick up the line with your index finger; and open or release the bail or pick-up device. (In the case of an enclosed spinning reel which has no bail, hold the line against the grip with your index finger and back up the crank until it stops. This will disengage the pick-up device and leave the line free for casting.) Don't hold the line too tightly against the rod handle. It should be handled in much the same way as you would the trigger on a rifle; in other words, rather gently.

For greatest accuracy, begin the cast with your rod sighted on your target and at about a 2 or 2:30 o'clock position, holding the line relaxed in the index finger. Now lift the rod with a quick upward sweep of your forearm, cocking your wrist back as you do so until the rod reaches the 12 o'clock position in an easy, though accelerated, movement. When you

stop your power lift as the rod reaches the vertical position, the momentum of the back cast will bend the rod backward. As the rod reaches its maximum flex, immediately drive it forward, using wrist motion only, keeping the elbow of your casting arm close to your side. As the rod reaches the 2 o'clock position on the forward cast, release the line by straightening out your index finger; follow through by lowering your rod to a 3 o'clock position as the lure flies out. You will note that one of the major differences between spinning and bait casting is the line release point. The spinning rod, being longer and more flexible, must be brought farther forward before releasing the lure; otherwise it will shoot high into the air above you.

If you have made too strong a cast, you can stop the line in flight in one of the following ways:

1. Place the forefinger of your casting hand on the edge of the spool, and immediately turn the reel handle to close the automatic finger or bail for retrieving.

2. Catch the spinning line on your forefinger preparatory to placing it on the pick-up roller for subsequent retrieve.

3. If you are using a closed-face spinning reel, pinch up the line against the grip.

To drop your lure or bait on the water with a minimum of noise and splash, touch your forefinger across the spool or pinch the line as described above. This also keeps the line under control and tight. To insure a soft cast, you can pull back on the rod just before the lure strikes the water. The pull should be gentle, serving only to tighten up on the line. This takes the momentum out of the cast, and allows the lure to land on the water with only a ripple.

Let the lure sink to the desired depth, then start reeling in by turning the crank with the left hand. Don't change hands as you would in bait casting. Except for reels with manual pick-up, the pick-up device on either the opened- or the closed-face reels will engage itself automatically when the handle is turned forward. If you should be using a reel with a manual pick-up attachment, drop your right index finger against the edge of the spool. Pick up the line, pulling it behind the path of the manual pick-up roller. Then turn the handle forward, and the roller will pick up the line.

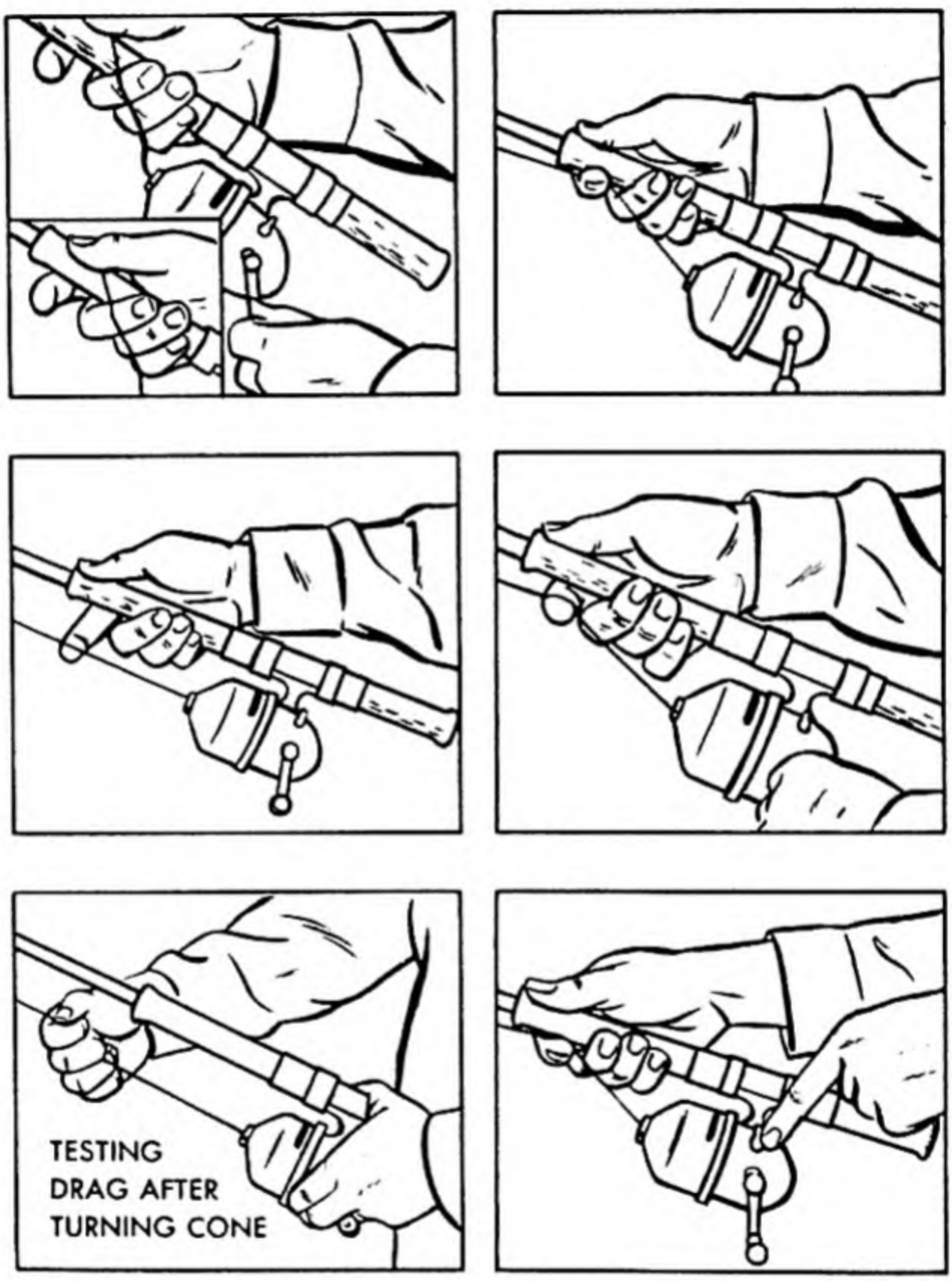
As we have said, most spinning reels have an antireverse arrangement which saves plenty of barked knuckles. When a fish strikes, you quickly flip the control lever into the "on" position with your left thumb, at the same time holding firmly to the reel handle. Once the antireverse is on, the handle need not be held except when you are reeling in the line. No matter what the antics of the fish, the handle won't turn backward, and the drag can be used with full effectiveness.

At this point we would like to say something about line-twist. A small

amount of it is of little or no consequence and can hardly be avoided. It's a normal hazard, inherent in spinning tackle. You can minimize this line trouble by:

1. Using a small swivel at the lure tie-on point.

2. Avoiding "horsing-in" or jerking a fish, or cranking against the run of a fish. (In addition to twisting the line, such action will cause monofilament, which is spooled under great tension, to come in "stretched." It might sink



into the previously spooled line, causing a jam when you cast. If the tension is great enough, it may even crack the reel spool. The pump and reeling technique described in Chapter 5 will bring the line in "relaxed," so that it lies on the spool gently and peels off in orderly spirals without kinking or twisting.)

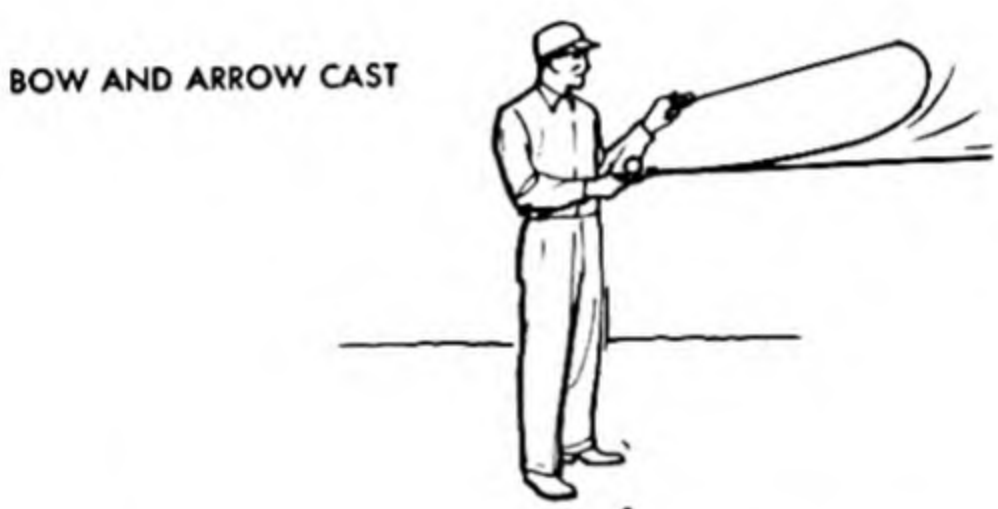
3. Stripping off the reel the line that has been used and trolling it behind the boat for straightening. (To remove line-twist and to spool the line under proper tension, pay out all the line. Then reel it in again, allowing it to slide

through the forefinger and thumb of your right hand to remove the twist and to provide even tension.)

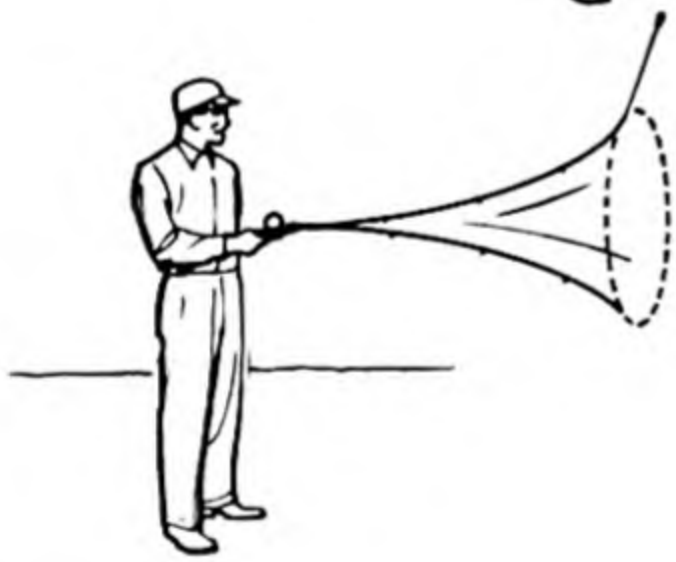
SIDE CAST

Point the rod toward the target as before. Keep your upper arm close to your body, as you did in the overhead cast, using the wrist and forearm exclusively. Bring the rod to the side and downward. Now, using the bend put in the rod by this side motion, snap the rod forward and slightly upward, releasing the lure the instant the rod points at about a 45-degree angle over the target. After the lure drops to the water, retrieve it as before.

Although not so accurate as the overhead, you will find the side cast ideal on windy days or when casting under trees and bushes along the shore.



BOW AND ARROW CAST



LARIAT CAST

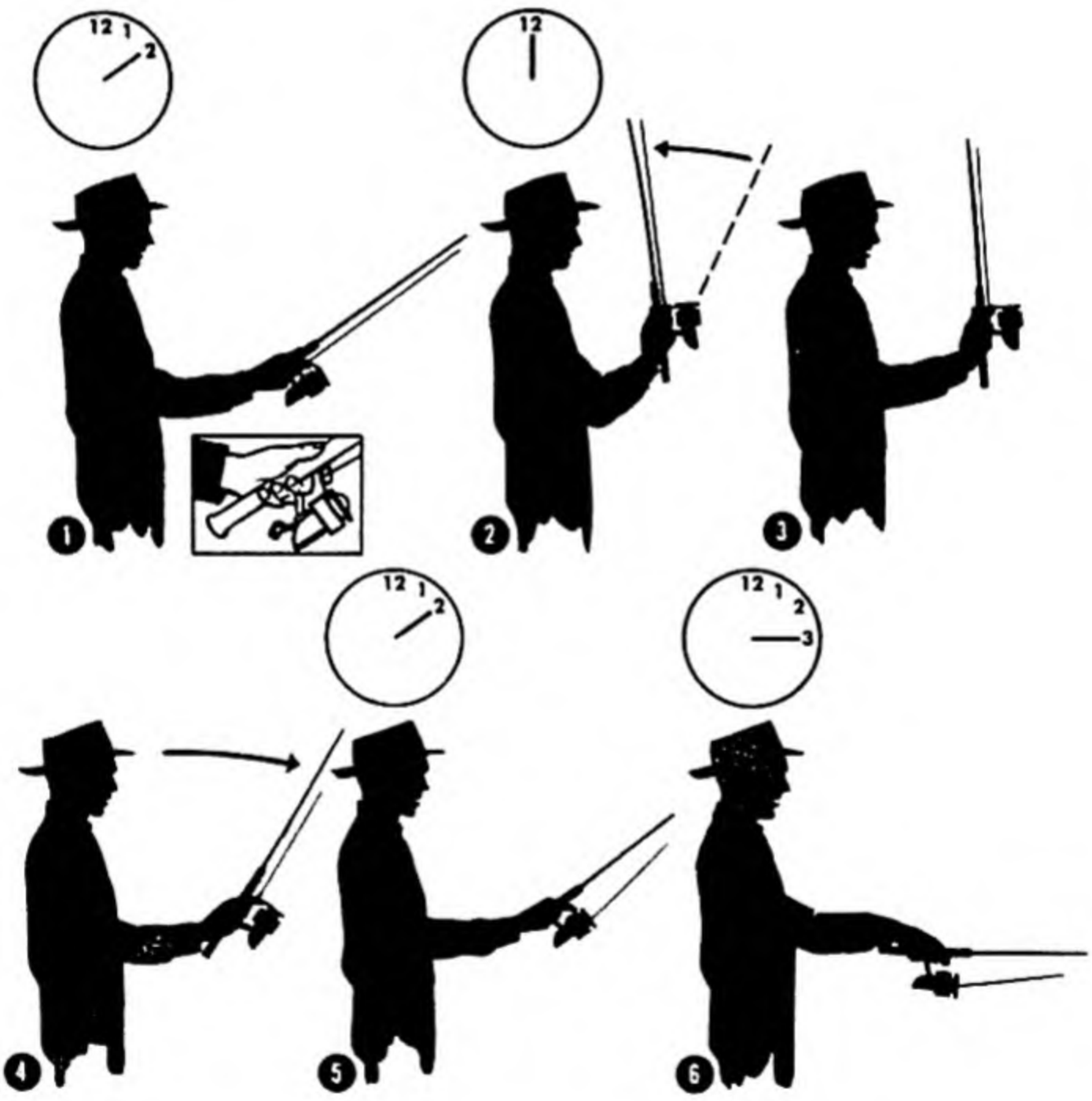
BOW-AND-ARROW CAST

The bow-and-arrow enables you to make a fairly long and accurate cast even when you are standing in the middle of overhanging bushes. In this case, the rod does all the work. Let the lure dangle about two feet from the rod tip; then grasp the lure between the thumb and forefinger of your free hand, and bend the rod by drawing back the lure. Keep the line from unwinding by holding the line against the rod handle with the forefinger of your casting hand. With the rod aimed on your target, release the lure and line; the power of the rod flex will shoot the lure out and away. Be careful, of course, that you do not set the lure's hooks in your finger.

LARIAT CAST

Another cast also used in heavy brush is the lariat or circle cast. With the rod pointing slightly downward and the lure hanging from the rod tip about a foot or so, twirl the lure around in a circle in front of you as you would a sling. As the lure gains speed, release the line and the lure will shoot out to one side. By reversing the spin, you can cast the lure in the other direction.

There are other casts, but the ones above will take care of most fishing situations. Remember that in the beginning it pays to try for accuracy, not distance. Perfect the one and the other will come naturally as your skill increases.



CASTING ULTRA-LIGHT LURES

In Chapter 2, we stated that there has been a tendency in recent years toward lighter lures. The popularity of spinning gear has added impetus to this trend. Ultra-light lures, which are cast with balanced ultra-light action spinning outfits, weigh 1/32 to 1/4 ounce, with the majority ranging from 1/10 to 1/8 ounce. They look much like ordinary artificials, except that they are much smaller and lighter.

Ultra-light spinning tackle is designed primarily for sport with the small fish of the larger species. In reality, that covers a lot of territory. Spin fishermen have taken white marlin of the 100-pound class on 10-pound test line with spinning tackle, so you can see that the ultra-light when properly set up will take, say, on a 2-pound test line, a wide range—bass of 10 pounds, shad of 4 and 5, and snook, school tarpon, trout, pickerel, and pike of 3 pounds and up.

Casting control in ultra-light casting, as in ordinary opened-face spinning, is achieved by fingering the line as it slips from the reel spool. Become familiar with the rod's action, and the balance of lure weight to line diameter. One mistake many anglers make when first using ultra-light tackle is in using lures that are too heavy, and throwing too far without accuracy. It's necessary to get used to casting without the usual feel of weight at the rod tip, and without being able to see line and lure throughout the cast. The ultra-light fan, using properly matched spinning gear, loses a few yards of range, but long casts are seldom necessary. As in all types of casting, always settle for accuracy, and that fish-catching magic called lure presentation.

Push-button or spin-cast techniques

Basically, the push-button casting procedure is the same as that used for bait casting, with an exception: you don't have to control a revolving spool —the most difficult part for bait-casting beginners. Just as in bait casting, the wrist plays the star role. The forearm has a secondary part, and the upper arm is used hardly at all.

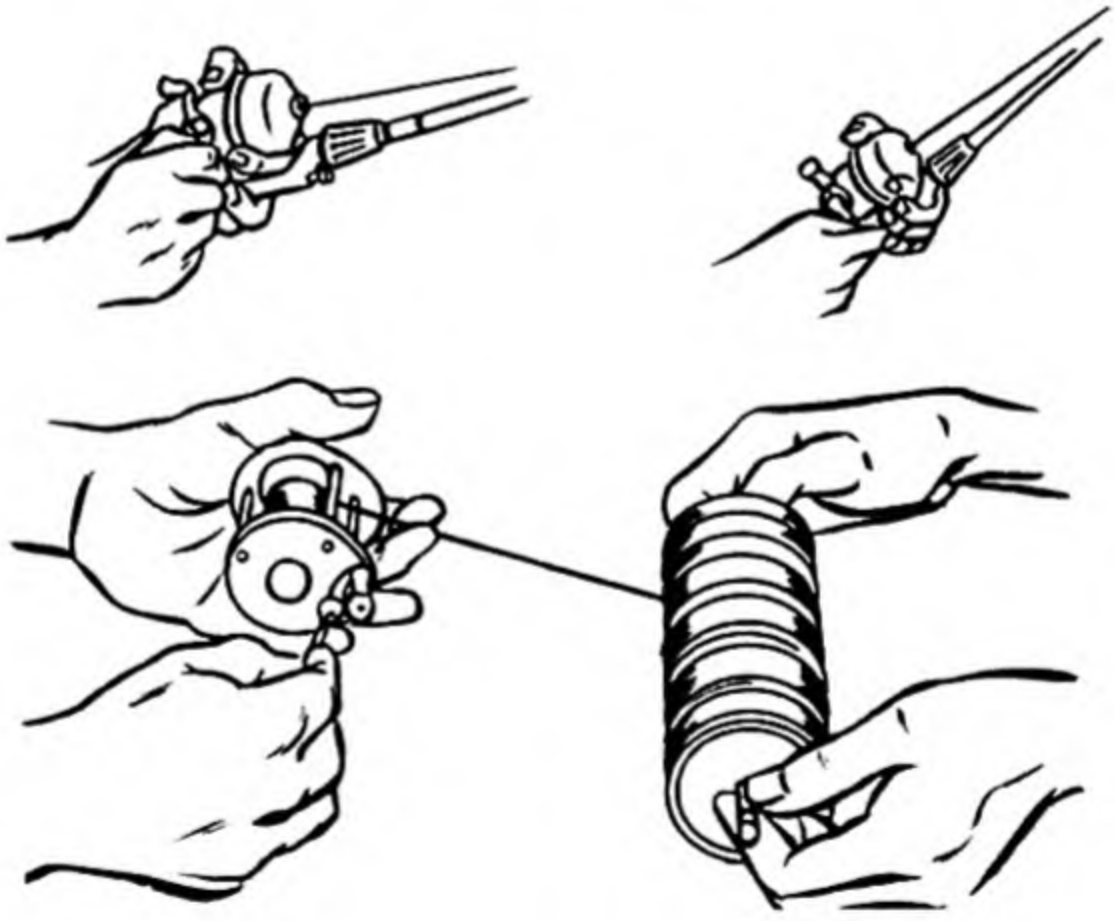
Hold the rod in a natural position so that your forefinger curls around the finger hook and your thumb rests on the push-button. Turn your wrist so that the crank side (opposite side for left-handers) is up. While this may seem a little awkward at first, you'll find that it permits more freedom of wrist action, making for greater power and accuracy. The nonreverse lever, if the reel has one, should be in the "off" position.

With the lure hanging 3 to 6 inches from the rod tip, press the push-button and hold it down. This automatically retracts the pick-up pin which leaves the line free to spool off; it also traps the line until you're ready to release it on the forward movement of the wrist. Start the rod back toward the 12 o'clock position. Check the rod in a nearly vertical position and let the weight of the lure bend the rod back its full limit. Without a pause, begin the forward movement of the cast by bringing your wrist forward and downward.

When the rod tip starts its forward motion and reaches the 1 o'clock position, remove your thumb from the push-button. This will permit the lure to

shoot forward in the direction of your target. Continue the forward motion of the rod until you reach the 2:30 or 3 o'clock position. As soon as the lure lands—or before, if you want to shorten the cast—press the push-button down again to engage the line. This gives immediate control of the line should a fish strike quickly. Transfer the rod to your left hand at once and begin the retrieve.

When you are fishing, once the lure has hit the water and the slack line is reeled in, keep the rod tip up in a 1 or 1:30 o'clock position while retrieving the lure. Adjust the drag just tight enough to overcome the weight of the lure. On most reels this can be accomplished by turning the outer cone or the star drag control. Loosen the cone to decrease the drag; tighten to increase it. When you feel a fish strike, set the hook by a slight upward movement of the rod tip. Bring the nonreverse control into play and let the drag take over. It is better to use drag pressure to control the run of a fish than to crank against it with a lightly set drag. When drag is properly set—this you can do while playing the fish—it will slow him down without putting undue strain on the line and, at the same time, tire him quickly. When playing a fish, don't press down on the thumb control since it will trap the



line and nullify the advantage of the drag. To prevent line-twisting, don't crank when placing a severe load on the line or when a fish is taking out line.

You will use the overhead cast just described most of the time for push-button fishing. But the variations described previously—the sidearm, the backhand, the flip—will be useful in many situations you'll encounter in stream and lake fishing. Remember that it is the spring of the rod, not the caster's arm, that targets the lure.

Fly-casting techniques

It is important to remember that in fly casting it's the line that must be cast, and that the fly simply "goes along for the ride." In other words, as your line is thrown back, its weight pulls the rod back and gives it the spring that impels it forward when the cast is made. It can readily be seen that if the line is too light to pull the rod back and give it this spring, it will fall flat and will have no energy running through its length. For this reason we stress again the fact that the fly line *must* be of sufficient weight to utilize the action built into the rod by its maker.

OVERHEAD CAST

Have someone hold the rod for you while you draw off about 20 to 30 feet of line from the tip of the rod. After a few minutes' practice you'll be able to work out the necessary length of line by making short, false casts while stripping line from the reel.

With the line lying straight out in front of you on the casting surface, hold the cork handle firmly—with the reel underneath—in your right hand, with four fingers gripping it below and the thumb extended flat atop the rod. The fulcrum is in the center of the palm of your hand. (If you're a southpaw, do exactly the same thing with your left hand. Either way, the hand you cast with is your *rod hand* and the other is your line hand.) With the thumb and forefinger of the left hand (the line hand), grasp the line between the reel and the first rod guide, hold the line coiled in the left hand, and point the rod tip to a position approximating 2 or 2:30 o'clock. Now you're ready for the pick-up and the back cast. It is the back cast that is the mark of the expert angler, so pay particularly close attention to perfecting it.

By a smart upward twitch of the rod, the back cast picks up the line lying out in front of you and propels it upward and backward over your right shoulder. To accomplish this, draw in the slack line with a rearward motion of your left hand until you can feel a tension on the line. Then start the the rod tip in an upward arc of travel with a sharp upward motion of the forearm that is fast enough to whip the line into the air toward the rear. During the upward snap, the weight of the rod will be felt in a pressure against the two first fingers of your right hand, curled underneath the cork grip, with a downward pressure exerted by the heel of the hand. Keep your wrist and forearm rigid during the back cast. Then check the wrist and rod travel as the travel of the rod tip reaches a point at, or slightly beyond, the perpendicular. The power of the rod will propel the line upward and backward.

Now pause momentarily and permit the rod tip to drift backward to approximately an 11 o'clock position as the line straightens out horizontally

behind you. (If you bring the tip of the rod back too far, the line will hit the ground in back of you and spoil your cast.) Then, at the precise moment that the line straightens out behind you and a slight tug is felt on the rod tip, start the forward cast with a smooth, decisive forearm-and-wrist motion that is much like the slow, powerful swing you would use to hammer a nail into a wall at shoulder height. Holding your elbow close to your body, terminate the forward cast at the 2 or 2:30 o'clock position—the same point from which the pick-up was made and the back cast started. (When you are fishing with heavy lures, such as bugs and poppers, which offer considerable wind resistance, the forward cast should be terminated with the rod tip pointing at approximately a 3 o'clock or nearly horizontal position.) As the rod is checked, the line continues on its own momentum to straighten the rolling loop it has described in the air. While the line is still "live"—that is, pulling forward—release the left hand entirely from its grip on the line; the extra line between your left hand and reel will shoot through the guides while the line falls gently to the surface of the water or the grass. (In actual fishing, never release the line entirely from the line hand because you're likely to get a strike when the fly lands. You will want to have the line in your hand to hook the fish.)

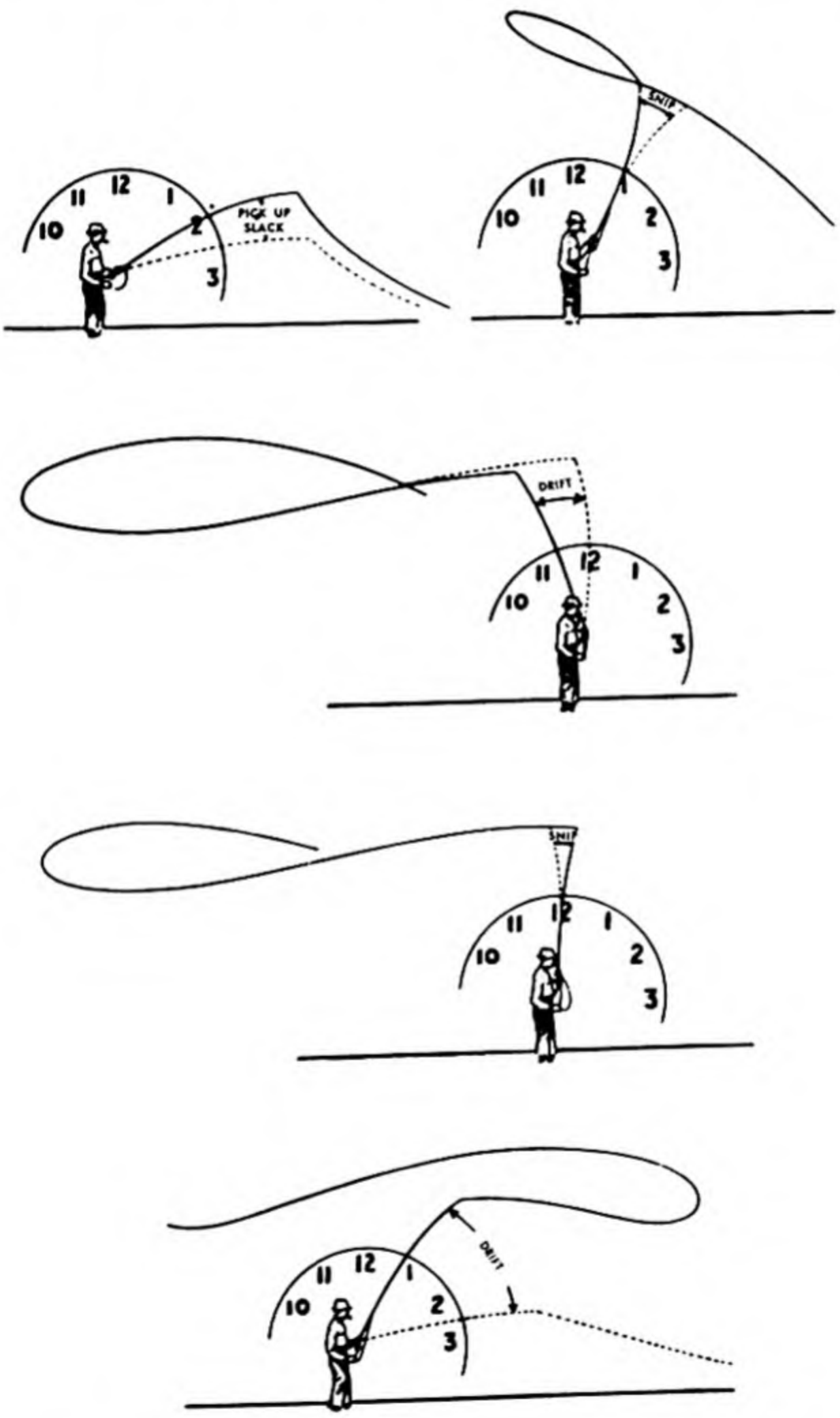
Now, repeat the cast. Remember the importance of blending all the phases of the back and forward cast together so that they flow in one continuous pattern of motion. If your cast is accomplished in stages, it will never achieve the smoothness that is absolutely necessary in fly fishing. For instance, if insufficient time is allowed for the line to straighten out in back and the forward cast is made too quickly, you will get a whip-cracking effect which is apt to snap off the fly.

Counting while practicing will help to develop good timing. Synchronize each cast to a count of "one-two-three-four" by counting "one" as you take up the slack on the line; "two" as you make the sharp, high, upward-and-backward cast; "three" as you permit the line to unroll and straighten in back of you; "four" as you start the forward cast. Don't rush the count. As you increase the distance of your casts, you will necessarily have to increase the time interval between each count to allow for the slightly increased length of time that will be required for the longer line to straighten out at the end of the back cast. Remember: don't try to control the line; learn to control the rod and it will control the line.

On the water you can follow this fly-casting procedure exactly, except that you will make several backward and forward casts in the air without letting the line touch the water. These are called false casts and are employed to help you measure distance, to dry the fly, or to extend the line and give longer range to the final cast. To extend the line in a false cast, strip off 6 to 8 feet of line from the reel and hold it in your left hand.

On the first forward cast, let it go and strip off additional line to be released in the next forward cast. Repeat until you have extended as much line as you want. For additional line control during a false cast, hold the line against the rod handle with the first two fingers of the right hand.

The impulse of the beginner is to spot a good fishing target and aim his



fly at it immediately. This is wrong. Instead of casting directly at the spot, cast at an imaginary point about 2 feet above. There are several methods of dropping the fly naturally:

1. As the line shoots forward to the imaginary mark, 2 feet above target, raise the rod tip about a foot and at the same time draw backward a foot

or so with the casting arm. The upward impulse of the rod will check the line, while the backward movement of the arm will extend to the fly and pull it down to the water.

2. Another method of accomplishing an easy dropping of the fly to the water is by shooting the line, held in coils in the left hand, at the moment when the forward cast reaches its termination and exerts a pull on the line in the left hand. When this pull occurs, a little line is fed out, which puts a damper on the energy in the line and slows it up.

The line should be a little slack or wavy as it lands on the water. This slack will compensate for conflicting currents on the surface and help prevent the line from dragging. Too much slack results in the loss of line control when striking fish or picking up the line for a back cast.

THUMB AND FIRST FINGER-GRAB

HOLD WITH LITTLE FINGER PLUS INDEX

TURN HAND DOWN

PICK-UP

FOLD IT UP IN YOUR PALM

When the fly is in the water, it should be moved with twitches of the rod tip to give it the desired animation. As you are twitching the rod, you should be raising it gradually. At the same time that you are twitching the rod and raising it, your left hand is working the line toward you, down and off to the side. Then reach forward toward the guide of the rod and take a coil of the line. As shown in the illustration, the line can be retrieved in the left hand, giving you positive control the instant a fish strikes, This also enables you to pick up the line for a new cast at any moment. The rod should be pointed at the fly, but with the tip slightly elevated. In this position, the tip will offer shock-absorbing spring if a fish is hooked.

The hand retrieve is started by taking the line, about halfway between the reel and stripping guide, between the thumb and first finger of your left hand. Then tip the hand up and back; pass the last three fingers above the line. Hook them over it and turn your hand down, making an S bend in the line. Withdraw them from the loop and, at the same time, pick up the

line between the thumb and first finger again. You now have both ends of a 3-inch loop between your thumb and finger. This process is repeated until the retrieve is finished. The short loops of line, each containing about 6 inches, can be dropped or folded up in the palm of your left hand.

SIDE CAST

At times a screen of trees or bushes will prevent the backward extension of line necessary for overhead casting. Or your target may lie under a screen of trees, preventing forward extension of the line. In either case you have a problem. If you can't change position, and there's enough open area between the water and the branches to extend a proper length of line, you can use the side cast.

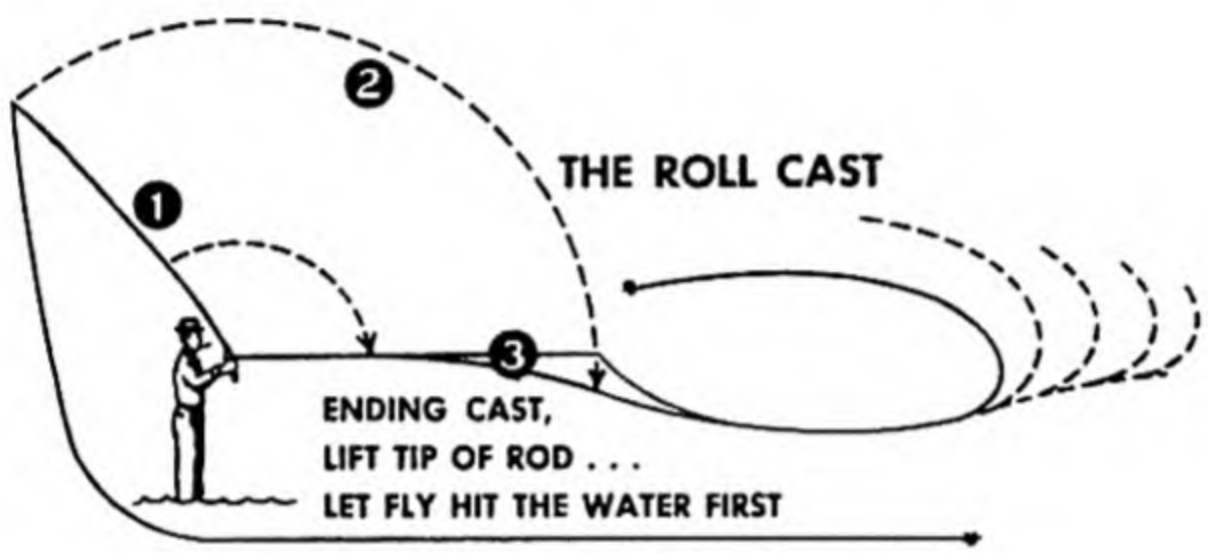
Simply make your cast parallel to the water, facing the direction of your target. It can be executed to the left (across the body of a right-handed caster) or to the right. Obviously, the same cast can be made in any intermediate plane between horizontal and vertical that will utilize the back cast to its best advantage. Line speed is the main trick in this cast. Considerable velocity is needed to keep the low-flying line from sagging into the water. Otherwise, the cast is much the same as an overhead throw.

ROLL CAST

Often there are places along the stream where obstacles such as brush, trees, or high banks are too close to prevent a normal back cast. In a roll cast, the line does not travel more than a foot or two behind you, if at all. Keep in mind that you are not to lift the back cast into the air. First, work out about 20 feet of line by using a horizontal cast; then pull more line through the guides by hand. Permit it to drop on the water in front of you. The rod should be pointed forward and nearly horizontal (3 o'clock position) as you begin the cast. Strip a few additional yards of line from the reel and raise the rod slowly until it is just a little past vertical (12 o'clock position); that is, point it back slightly over your shoulder. When the line has assumed this position, with the belly of the curve slightly behind the right elbow, the forward cast is made immediately by driving the rod sharply downward. The impulse given the line immediately beyond the rod tip causes it to travel forward before the leader and fly have entirely left the water on their backward movement, with the result that they are pulled after it in a big loop and unrolled on the water. You can get more distance by working out slack, repeating the rod movements described here. Remember that as more line is worked out it is necessary to put additional power in the forward stroke, and to make sure that the line is moving toward you on the water when the forward stroke is started.

In other words, you retrieve the lure until your rod is pointing upward and behind you at about a 45-degree angle (1) and the line droops beside you. Bring the rod over and down smartly (2); the line will sail up behind you and forward in a perfect loop. End by lifting the rod top (3), and your fly will hit the water first.

In fishing a quiet stretch of water, the dry-fly angler can use the roll cast to considerable advantage in retrieving without making a disturbance on the water. However, instead of making a complete roll, snap the rod forward only partially, pick the fly out of the air with a back cast, then make a regular forward cast. These motions blend smoothly, and should keep you from spooking nearby fish if you are casting a short line.



CASTING WITH AN ULTRA-LIGHT FLY ROD

In recent years, many fly fishermen have been employing ultra-light fly rods. While most American fishermen consider that we have made a giant step forward in the direction of discriminatory fishing, it's not considered so abroad. As if in answer to the plea of Bobby Burns, for some power the gift to give us, to see ourselves as others see us, we quote you hereinafter a passage from a book, *Lake and Loch Fishing for Salmon and Sea Trout,* by the veteran British angler, W. A. Adamson, published in London by the firm of A. & C. Black, Ltd.

In the past two years there has originated in America a vogue for the ultra-short and ultra-light rod. It is made of split cane, is six or seven feet long, and weighs as little as one-and-a-half ounces. Note that these rods are being used for salmon. . . .

The action of casting is quite foreign to British practice (outside tournaments) and it may even involve the arm fully extended, the line in the left hand frantically sawing away to shoot line *in the back cast* as well as forward. The whole process is fairly strenuous and more akin to a tennis service than casting, as we know it, with ease and grace. . . .

Mr. Arnold Gingrich is the publisher of the American magazine *Esquire.* From time to time, in that periodical, he gives his comments on "the light-tackle trend in angling." After a successful trip to Iceland when he caught many fish of from

three to seven pounds on an ultra-light rod, he had some rather scathing things to say about the "hop-poles" used by British salmon fishers. Since then he has gone overboard for Mr. Lee Wulff's vigorous casting methods with ultra-light rods.

Let nobody be misled by Mr. Gingrich. He fished for small fish from the treeless banks of Iceland's small rivers. I like to imagine Mr. Gingrich attached to a forty-pound fresh-run salmon on the Spey. I like to think of him with his six-foot, one-and-a-half ounce rod, leaping over bushes, dodging round trees, swinging from bough to bough like Tarzan, glissading down screes, and abseiling down sheer rock faces, in a mad rush of half a mile or so to get on terms with his fish!

We thank Mr. Adamson for what has become, since reading those last lines of his, our very favorite nightmare. We'd like nothing better than to see that wild dream come true, and if he can get us onto a beat on the Spey, attached to a 40-pound fresh-run salmon, we'd be every bit as eager as he is to see what would happen to us and our 6-foot, 1½-ounce rod. But before that can happen, let us be first to second his motion that nobody be misled by anything we have to say about the pleasures and advantages of light tackle in pursuit of both salmon and trout.

Like everybody else, in the days before light, short rods, platyl (monofilament) leaders and nylon lines, we learned to cast in the old way, gently flexing a 9-foot rod in the arc from 10 o'clock to 1 o'clock on an imaginary clock face and with a book held under the right armpit, in the hope of thus confining the action to forearm and wrist and thus preserving the old English tradition of "casting, as we know it, with ease and grace."

So when it came time to try to achieve the same results, or better, with a rod two-thirds as long and weighing only a third as much, it meant unlearning the carefully acquired casting habits of more than thirty years. And it's perfectly true, as Mr. Adamson says, that the modern action is much more closely akin to a vigorous service in tennis, with the right arm fully extended, than it is to the old-fashioned cast with its easy and graceful rocking-chair motion of the forearm. And the sawing motion of the left hand involved in the double-line haul that is essential to getting out a long line with a short rod, while not frantic, is necessarily fast, since if it were any slower, the long line would fall of its own weight in a helpless and hopeless heap. But as right as Mr. Adamson is that far, he is just as wrong the rest of the way. Granted that there is much more effort involved in making extremely long casts with an extremely short and light rod; once the action is joined, the odds go just as sharply the other way, and it is actually easier to play a strong fish on the small rod than on the bigger one. The less the fish has to pull against, the fewer are his chances to break off during the jumps and rushes that wear him out far faster than the old-fashioned method of "giving him the butt" ever could. Once this becomes more generally understood, there will be less snobbism, and fewer occasions for the

indulgence of braggadocio, over the use of the short, light rod for salmon and sea trout.

However, here, too, let nobody be misled by anything we have to say on this subject. You'll do plenty of running, to get and keep on terms with large fish, if you use light tackle. But this is not because of the lightness of your rod, but rather because of your terminal tackle. With the light rod you are obliged to use a light line, certainly no heavier than HDG, and IEH is preferable, because the length of your casts will overburden the rod if you go heavier. And, because you can't cast flies larger than No. 4, at the outside, with the light rod, your leader-tippet should not be heavier than 6-pound test. With the 6 and 8 size flies you generally use, any heavier tippet will seem disproportionately large, and scare away even such a relatively unscary fish as the salmon. *There* is your Achilles' heel, during the first five minutes of playing a large fish. And that's why you'll need at least 150 yards of backing, and preferably 200, to let the fish enjoy his first run, while you in turn run like hell to try to get below him. It is at this juncture that you will show no semblance of any "ease and grace," and that you may well amuse the chortling likes of Mr. Adamson by incurring one or more pratfalls. To compensate for that hazard, you will also have the satisfaction of giving the fish, at this point, the nearest thing to an even break that he ever gets during his whole sorry life cycle. We should think that would appeal to the traditional British sporting sense.

Rocky Pool Brown Trout

5

Stream fishing is the greatest fun

To say the *real* fisherman is a queer bird is merely to reiterate a proposition that seems quite generally prevalent outside of our fold. Or at least this is William J. Schaldach's opinion, as you will see in the following commentary. Scarcely had printing been invented when scribes began to busy themselves in the production of quips and sallies directed at the activities of the angler. Professional humorists have long considered jokes about fishermen as only a little less valuable than mother-in-law gags. And where is the cartoonist who has not, in an odd moment, dashed off something along the line of the country lad with his can of worms putting it all over the city chap and his fancy tackle?

If, in the face of this tendency, the angler feels that he requires justification, he may seek refuge under the principle that art needs no explanation; for fly fishing is assuredly one of the arts. But that's a trifle high-hat. We feel that all of us would rather have the public understand something of our psychology—the motivating principles behind our quaint behaviorism—then let them laugh their heads off if they want to!

Take the matter of costume. Encased in mackintosh waders for three-quarters of his length and clumping about in huge, steel-studded brogues,

creel over one shoulder and net over the other, his hat bristling with flies, the fly fisher is weird enough in appearance to frighten little children.

His rod must be well made by some well-known craftsman (it will not be perfect, for no angler can be found who will admit that he has ever seen a rod that was *quite right in every respect*), his line must be a hand-dressed double-taper and his fishing vest—well, that deserves a separate paragraph!

The best fishing vest is the one with the most pockets. To get at the meat of the thing, it might be well to state at once that a really good fishing vest is merely a collection of pockets, sewed, in a not too logical juxtaposition to each other, on barely enough fabric to hold them onto the owner. Capacity is the whole secret. The vest must be efficient, for it holds the angler's most cherished possessions: reel, dry-fly oil, tweezers, blotters (for absorbing the moisture from soaked flies), leader boxes, fish knife, and flies—box after box of them. Even after the vest has been stuffed to what might seem to be the bursting point, there must be room for another fly box—if the angler considers it necessary. And invariably he does!

Is all this equipment vital to the playing of the game? Nine times out of ten, no. But in that tenth case lies one of the aspects of the angler's viewpoint which is not always appreciated. The ardent fly fisherman is a tireless experimenter. When trout aren't feeding, a means of making them take must be found, and often only in a large collection of flies can the secret be found.

Every fly fisherman experiences periods when trout will take almost any fly offered them. Under these conditions the game becomes too easy. A sudden hatch of flies, water just right in temperature and volume, and the pools boil with fish which seem to have lost their native caution. The beginner stands on an equal footing with the seasoned angler, and is apt to conclude that most of what has been written about the technique of fly fishing is pure tripe.

But those who have followed the sport over a period of years know that such conditions are the exception, and while they furnish interesting interludes they are not the rodster's goal. The keen angler wants problems to solve. He will tell you that there is more sport in coaxing one trout out from under a bank by repeated, skillful casting than in the taking of half a dozen fish on a hatch, where all one has to do is to cast, play, and net the fish. When the novelty wears off, boredom quickly replaces enthusiasm. One can listen with enjoyment and pleasure to a Berlin song or the score of a Romberg light opera for a limited time; for sustained musical satisfaction one would prefer a Brahms quartet, or the Franck symphony.

Just for the record, fly fishing does have an illustrious past. History vaguely tells, for instance, of the use of red hackle flies on the River Astracus A.D. 300. Just as Columbus was exploring the new world, Juliana

Berners, a nun, described trout fishing with flies in England. Over three hundred years ago Izaak Walton and Charles Cotton elaborated somewhat in *The Compleat Angler*. Since then, mention has been frequent in our literature. Let no one doubt that stream fishing is an art. In 1683, Izaak Walton wrote: "Doubt not that Angling is an art . . . he that hopes to be a good Angler must not only bring an . . . observing wit . . . he must bring a large measure of hope and patience." His advice still holds even though you may throw a fly in some likely-looking eddy and be rewarded at once. But to sit quietly and wait for a good trout while lesser fish splash water in your face takes patience. And when the big fish does come up, to sit even longer and wait for him to "go steady"—that's sheer will power.

One of the reasons that fly fishing appeals to so many men is, we think, that the sport is noncompetitive. There are occasional individuals, we know, who can't seem to be happy unless they go forth for the day's fishing laden with bets on the first fish, the largest fish, the heaviest creel, and so on. Such men miss the point. Angling is an aesthetic pastime. There are thrilling moments, of course, but there must be leisure and a receptive mind to appreciate the delights of the stream. A man has no time to listen to the song of the thrush if he feels an obligation to break a record. Golf or trap shooting would better suit his temperament.

It is a mistake to take things too seriously. Flies will get caught in trees in spite of one's best efforts, and a spill in a clear, cold pool is always a possibility. The angler must not let it dampen his disposition. He should accept these as minor matters to be dismissed with a wave of the hand. The next pool holds a fine trout (it invariably does). Perhaps an iron-blue dun will interest him.

Among fly fishermen there exists a very special kind of comradeship, the feeling referred to in Walton's time as "Brothers of the angle." There are fireside powwows at clubs and in fishing lodges, where amid the ascending wreaths of tobacco smoke the sport is discussed with fervor and enthusiasm. Effective patterns are offered as gifts or exchanged, much as small boys trade postage stamps. The newly arrived angler offers a greeting, pulls up a chair and joins the discussion without preliminaries. None are expected, for this is a fishing circle.

On the stream anglers are mutually helpful, too. When you see a man standing hip-deep in a pool, his rod arched by the strain of a good fish, it is entirely proper to call out, "Whadja raise him on?" Only a mean fellow would refuse to give you the right answer—and he, of course, wouldn't be an angler.

It sometimes happens that regardless of the number of flies one has along, none of them seems to be the right answer as far as the trout are concerned. Under these circumstances one just keeps changing, trying this and dis-

carding that. With trout boiling out all over the stream the fellow who can keep his temper within anything like reasonable bounds will pass anywhere. The temptation is to give up, but when trout are really on the feed there is always one pattern that will take them.

To give an example of this, we would like to quote from an experience of William J. Schaldach, whose etchings appear throughout this book, that occurred several years ago.

"Fishing along the Beaverkill one evening I had taken a fish or two in fast water, but as there were no flies apparent and the trout were not definitely on the feed, I decided to drop in at a pool farther on down the river. Now it often happens that trout will feed in a pool when the fast water stretches are dead—and vice versa. The bulk of water flowed along a large ledge of rock in this particular place, forming an excellent feed lane whenever there was the suspicion of a fly hatch. Arriving at the pool I saw an angler standing there looking exceedingly dejected. When he turned to greet me I recognized a friend. That he was in difficulty was at once apparent. He said that there were a few flies on the water, a very few, but whenever they appeared they were engulfed by what looked like whopping big brown trout.

"The fly had a pale lemon body and a dusky gray wing. Did I have anything like it, and if so, would I, for God's sake, put it on? He had stood there for an hour, trying everything in his collection without results and it was getting to be more than his nerves could stand. As we talked, there was a watery explosion in front of us as another trout broke to take in one of the succulent flies.

"Hauling out my fly boxes we went over the contents feverishly and found two fan-wings that seemed to fit the description. It seemed an age before we could tie them to our leaders. Wading into position we started to cast.

"I saw a break, just a bulge of water such as a large fish often makes, and a careful cast dropped the fan-wing a few inches above the spot. There was the suggestion of a swirl, just a mere dimple, and I struck. A pound trout cleared the water in a clean leap and was off for a stiff fight. As I netted the trout I looked up to see my friend's rod arched under the weight of a struggling fish. He looked at me and grinned. We had found the right answer. Half a dozen fine fish left that pool before the hatch was over.

"As we left the river I was asked the name of the fly. I didn't know. It was a special, concocted in an idle moment by an angling friend who handed me several with the remark, 'Here, try these. I don't think they're worth a damn, but you can never tell.' Up to that time they hadn't been; neither have they been of value since. Nevertheless, my companion of this adventure promptly ordered a dozen from the local fly tier. I haven't fished with

Corey Ford since that occasion, but I'll venture that several flies of this pattern are always in his vest when he ventures forth. 'You can never tell' is a saying that has a perennial value on the trout stream."

Stream fishing strategy

If you don't know (1) the habits of the trout, (2) the most intimate love and family life of stream insects, and (3) the proper mechanics of casting, the best equipment in the world won't help you catch trout. In other words, a man should know where he may expect to find the various species of trout in a given water, that rainbows will use the fastest and heaviest rips, that brown trout are partial to a steady and even flow, and that brook trout love shade and, usually, quiet pools. When to look for fish in the tail of the pool and at what times of the day to seek them in the shallow bright water are important considerations. A sketchy knowledge, at least, of aquatic insects is to be recommended, but it need not be at all scholastic. An angler should know a drake from a spinner, a May fly from a shad fly. We have covered points (2) and (3) in Chapters 3 and 4, so let's look at the first one.

Fish, like people, have two demanding needs: food and shelter. To meet these two desires, fish seek out these spots in streams where food can be found and where there is also a certain amount of shelter from fast currents and exposure. Fortunately for the wise angler, there are certain locations in every stream that supply both vital needs.

Streams, also like people, have definite personalities. Some are tricky and inclined to be mean; others are open and frank. Most streams fall into two major categories: (1) fast-moving streams flowing through mountainous, heavily wooded terrain; and (2) slower streams flowing through flat, open country. Let's take a look at both types of water for the signs that will locate fish.

In fast streams, it's always surprising the heavy water in which a trout will live and feed—and it's from these unlikely spots that the angler can take those extra fish. In rapids and riffles, there are nearly always trout hiding in the calmer pockets by the rocks that cause the white water. Here they stay, ever alert for passing food, ready to dart out and grab it as it slides by in the current. Some of the larger rocks, of course, stick well out of the water, others barely show their backs, and many only give themselves away by the ripples they cause on the surface. Yet each of them will form pockets, glides, pools, runs, and plenty of resting and feeding places for big trout.

The long, shallow riffles of a big stream also hold trout—usually along the far bank where they are hard to get at. In the latter case, it is almost impossible to get a long float without the middle current grabbing your line, bellying it out and putting drag on the fly. But if a riser shows, usually you can

get a 2- or 3-foot float over him, sufficient to bring a strike. One way is to cast harder than required for the distance, stop the rod high, and let the line fall in a series of S forms, thus providing slack line which will allow a few feet of float. Another way is to cast well above the fish, pull back on the line, skidding the fly across the surface, then point the rod downstream. This will give you a short float over the fish. And a third possibility is to edge as close as you can to the run, drop the fly above the riser, then hold the rod high, thus obtaining sufficient float to interest a feeding fish.

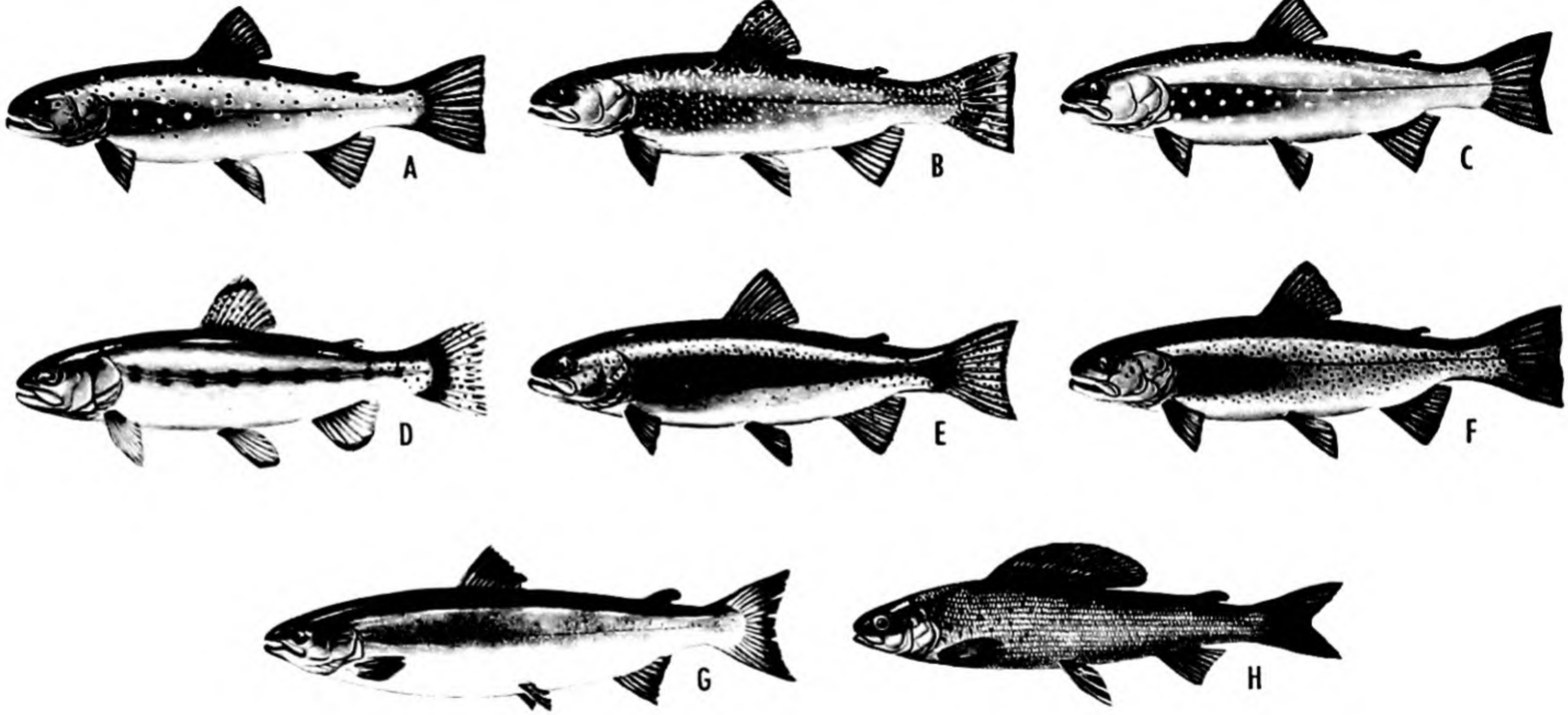
Besides breaks, bars, and rocks in riffles, good places to look for feeding trout are near the heads of pools just where the current fans out into the still water. The process of fishing near the surface, in midwater, and close to the bottom should be repeated. Some days you will find nearly all the feeding trout near the heads of pools. On others you will catch them both there and in the riffles, and at times they will all be feeding in the riffles. Only rarely will trout feeding beneath the surface be found near the tails of pools, well back in the smooth water. If you don't get strikes or see signs of action in the first two spots described, try the still water in a couple of pools. Trout in these locations are likely to be deep, and your fly usually has to brush the bottom to catch them.

In the strong water of the early season, don't overlook the small runs, glides, and pockets close to the bank. By working them you can pick up some sizable fish. The same holds true of the fast, heavy, whitecapped currents coming down from the head of the pool.

A waterfall is another natural home for trout in fast waters. The tumbling water is aerated and charged with the fresh oxygen which trout require. Patches of foam floating overhead in the pool provide shadows on the bottom and obscure vision into the pool, giving the fish a feeling of security. Look for trout at the edge and to each side of the white water. If the pool is deep, the trout will probably be close to the bottom unless they're surface-feeding. A bit of split shot attached to the line will sink the lure into position.

In fast streams, the V at the lower end of small islands is often a good location for a fish or two. Cast your lure into the fast water a little above where it swirls into the eddy. This will bring the lure to the waiting fish in the same manner as his food usually comes to him. If you fail to get a strike from one leg of the V, cross the stream and try the other side.

In fast water, it's better to employ a short line. It's needed to keep control, to be able to pick up line neatly for the next cast, and for quick striking. And when the angler is using a dry fly, a certain amount of drag-free float is necessary, even in the eddies below rocks. (Drag is caused by the line floating on a current on one speed and the fly on a current of another speed. The line then pulls the fly unnaturally across the currents when it should float



STREAM FISH

A. Trout (*Brown*). *B*. Trout (*Brook*). *C*. Trout (*Dolly Varden*). *D*. Golden Trout. *E*. Trout (*Rainbow*).
F. Trout (*Cutthroat*). *G*. Salmon (*Atlantic*). *H*. Montana Grayling.

down with the current.) Taking good trout from this type of water requires a meeting of all things—cast, drift, line and rod manipulation, strike, fight, and landing. But the proper combination of these can produce the kind of angling you dream about.

When fishing fast water it is usually best to make the cast straight upstream. Generally, such a cast pays off with a much better float than a cast made to the side, where the current will grab the line and pull the fly sideways almost at once. Most experienced anglers like to fish this kind of water by making a cast of about 30 feet upstream, stripping in the line as fast as possible to maintain a tight line in case of a strike, and using a roll cast to pick up the line when it's about 13 feet above them. This short-cast fishing is tricky, but it pays off in heavy water.

Trout often prefer to lurk in the shadows and remain hidden during the day. Undercuts in banks and under bridges are among their favorite spots. Here the fish wait during the sunshine hours, darting out of their lairs for food—or for your lure—that is drifting past. These are choice spots for lunker trout, the kind that will really bend your rod in his fight to dislodge a hook.

Snags, brush piles, beaver dams, and fallen trees attract bass and big trout. The branches cast shadows on the bottom, breaking up the outline of the fish, providing a natural camouflage. Insects fall from the limbs, minnows hide among the submerged snags; a tree is a gourmet's delight to a fish feeding there. Wade into position carefully, without too much disturbance, and drop your lure near the snags. Of course, fishing among snags can be hazardous and often costly, with the loss of some tackle—leaders, lures, and lengths of lines. Many times a fly headed for an obstacle can be kept from entangling its barb by letting it go rather than trying to stop it with a jerk. If you don't tighten up, the hackles of the fly will sometimes brush over the branch or the limb and hold the hook clear. An attempt to snatch the fly away is likely to sink the barb in a branch. But to catch fish you must condition yourself to the fact that some tackle will be lost from time to time.

Learn to recognize fly-feeding trout. Sometimes it's difficult for the novice to spot some of the most significant rises, because he's always looking for the traditional rings in the centers of pools. Some of the best fish leave no rings when they rise.

Watch a long riffle very closely. Look for a flash of the trout's side underwater and for a tiny white tent of splashing water in the riffle. These are signs of a trout rushing up to grab a tidbit that the current is hurling past him. This fish has no time for the deliberate rise of trout in quiet water. He must grab his food on the run. Also watch the surface of dead-water pools just where overhanging bushes nearly touch the water or where the bank is undercut. Look for floating bubbles or tiny dimples on the surface. Even

large trout make these signs of feeding in such spots. In the evenings, pay special attention to the tails of pools. Trout love to gather there in the gloaming to feed on big flies and chase minnows. Here they're likely to make big rings and loud splashes.

When you find a feeding area that pays off, stay with it. Try it each time you pass the spot, for when one lunker is caught another will soon move in. If it's attractive enough for the first, it is doubtless equally attractive to the next big fellow that passes that way.

Study the quieter patches of water to determine the kind of insect present near the surface, then select a fly that closely resembles the natural one. If you have any doubts about what the fish are taking, slit open the belly of the day's first trout and empty his stomach. If the contents are too mixed for you to distinguish any one fly, dump them into a pocket of calm, shallow water. The last flies the fish ate will still be undigested, and will float to the surface. Tie on an artificial fly that closely resembles them.

While there are hundreds of patterns of flies, it is sometimes difficult to match the natural with the imitation. There is a rule—a fact of nature—that may help a little. Virtually all the natural flies in evidence at the beginning of the trout season are dark in color. As the season progresses, they are joined by insects of lighter hue. By the end of the season, there are also insects of the very lightest colors. Therefore, you're on fairly safe ground if at the beginning of the season you use flies that are dark brown, gray, blue, or even black; at midseason, tan and bronze-blue; and at the end of the season, in addition to all of these, flies in light ginger, cream, light badger, and even white. This is, of course, the broadest sort of generalization. But some such rule is needed as a guide at times when there are no natural insects in evidence to give you a guide to the best patterns.

As to the hook size to use never go over the No. 8 fly for average trout, while the No. 10 and No. 12 are by far the most desirable. It is our opinion that if more of the No. 12 were used in average trout fishing, catches would be far better. In fishing the superlatively clear mountain pools in the high altitudes of the West, the No. 14 to No. 20 midget flies are employed with a great deal of success. It's hardly ever necessary to use more than two flies on a leader, and in clear waters one is best.

Temperature of the water, we believe, has much to do with the trout's activity. Water that's too cold or too warm affects fish just as it does animals and man. True, trout must eat at all seasons, as witness the catching of trout through the ice where such fishing is legal. But at such low temperatures trout metabolism is reduced and the fish need only one meal every few days. This continues as long as the water temperature remains below 40 degrees F. for brown and rainbow trout, and 44 degrees for brook trout.

As the water is warmed by spring sun, trout slowly show more interest

in food, and their metabolism rises. But they still aren't eating regularly or hungrily. This means you have to work harder to fill your limit. Use minnows, worms, crayfish, or other natural bait, and fish only where the trout are apt to be concentrated: in deep holes and slow, deep-running currents. Shallow water is apt to be as barren of trout at this time as your bathtub.

When the waters have warmed to 50 degrees, the streams come to life and trout tend to spread out, though they still remain deep. They feed fairly often and show an interest in wet flies and nymphs as well as live baits. At 55 degrees the fish are found in shallow water as well as the holes and deep slicks, and now they often feed near the surface on rising nymphs. Minnows also seek the shoals and the big trout follow them. Some flies even hatch and trout may rise to feed on them. However, wet flies pay off better at this time and should be fished on or close to the bottom unless you see definite signs that the fish are feeding high.

The magic temperature for all trout is 60 degrees. When the water reaches this temperature, trout go on a feeding spree if everything else is normal. Insect life beneath the surface gets very busy, and many large flies hatch. Trout rise to dry flies. This is the time of times to go trout fishing. But these 60-degree temperatures are only good for browns, rainbows, and brook trout. In streams or lakes, brook trout bite best when the water temperatures are between 55 and 65 degrees. Rainbows and brown trout feed most in water between 55 and 70 degrees. At higher temperatures the fish tend to stop feeding readily. They seek deep holes with cool springs in the bottom or the mouths of cool brooks. Some work downstream to cool lakes.

The temperature of the water as it relates to fishing types of flies, too, has a bearing on the fisherman's success or failure. In water temperatures between 33 and 45 degrees, bait is the accepted and logical lure. Between 40 and 55 degrees, the regular wet flies, streamers, and nymphs work more successfully. The best dry-fly temperatures are between 50 and 70 degrees. If it is your desire, do not be reluctant to fish any type fly you choose regardless of water temperature.

Natural conditions of the stream (wading animals, for example) rarely concern the trout. Nature's upheavals, such as storms, lightning, thunder, hail, and snow, are not only of little consequence, but generally, from the fisherman's viewpoint, trout are more active then than during less turbulent periods. But all fish react to high and low pressure exactly as people do, becoming most active during the highs and less active when a low pressure system is present. It simply isn't in the cards to find good fishing when the barometer is falling; at this time your only chance to get a strike is to fish slow and near the bottom.

After a summer rain, trout usually start on feeding sprees. Not only will the barometer be on the way up following the localized low at the height of the storm, but the stream itself will be muddied, on the rise, and quite likely carrying a fresh supply of natural foods to feeding fish. At times like these, live-minnow and worm fishermen find their finest sport. In other words, the stream fisherman must be as weather-conscious as his lake brethren (see page 135).

In stream fishing, you must use caution. Trout are able to keep in the swim by their acutely developed senses of hearing and sight. Your progress along the bank of the stream, even though you are not in sight of the water, may be heard with ease by the trout, and since the sound is alien to their surroundings, the possibility is that they will pause in their feeding and become suspicious. Move with care along the bank, even tiptoeing in, and we can assure you that your chances of making a capture are far more certain.

Brook trout and rainbow trout are more prone to venture out in the open water on bright days than are the browns or the cutthroats. Browns, for example, like to have the ready protection of a bank, a log, a rock, weed clump, or an overhanging bush. The brown, too, is no one's fool. He's possibly the most suspicious of all fish in our waters.

In wading a stream do not splash through the water or make any more sound than necessary. Push along a step at a time. Your hobnails grating on the bottom of the stream are liable to be heard at a great distance; the noise may cause the pool's quarry to interrupt its feeding to be on the lookout for danger. The mere shadow of your rod thrown across the water as you cast is likely to cause every trout in sight to quit feeding. Plan an approach that will keep your shadow off the water as much as possible. Since the trout will be facing upstream in the current, you're generally less visible to them when you approach by wading upstream. A trout's eyes are positioned so that it can see ahead and to either side clearly, but it has limited vision to the rear. There are times, of course, when you can use the sun as a valuable ally. When it's shining brightly, for example, you'll do better if you can cast with the sun at your back. This makes it difficult for the trout to spot you and your leader, allows you to get quite close to rising fish.

Before we go any further, let's not forget our friend, John Butterworth, mentioned in Chapter 2. By this we mean, don't spend all your time concentrating on stream strategy. It is so easy to become a professional fly fisherman, and thereby to lose the whole point of the sport. If a man safely passes the tackle mania stage he may yet fall into the trap of trout stream theory. The symptoms are first manifested in an avid reading of everything that has been written on the subject; and that is plenty! His mind

laden with the controversial writings of ten volumes dealing with the natural imitation theory, the question of whether or not trout are color-blind and the exact distance at which they can distinguish sound, the victim now finds himself in much the same position as the centipede that didn't know which leg came after which. Doubt and confusion creep in to ruin what should be a corking day, regardless of the outcome in creel results. When a man starts dashing about from pool to eddy with a thermometer, testing the water temperature to see if it checks with the advice of, say, His Grace, the Duke of Penningworth of Shropshire (who has done a 1,200-page volume on the subject), the case is rapidly becoming grave. It would be a real blessing to find the poor chap's books and burn them, while there is yet time!

If what has been written sounds hard and overcritical, let us say that our intentions are only of the kindest. Having experienced the various phases of nuttism discussed, and having passed through them with at least a measure of sanity remaining, we offer some suggestions which we hope may prove of value in obtaining the fullest enjoyment from a day spent along the river.

Every angler should be a collector of trout streams and the moods which overhang them. He should be an observer of beauty in a definite and conscious way. As he wades along and casts his flies he need not be so intent on the possibility of a rise that he misses the leap of white water, charging and singing over ledge rock.

One can well spare time out to listen to the song of a white-throated sparrow; and where the river opens out around a bend to reveal a broad valley, whose enclosing hills are bathed with enchanting light, there should the angler sit for a while and drink it in. These things give meaning to Izaak Walton's thought that angling is a contemplative sport.

It is impossible to spend a day along a trout stream without absorbing something of the atmosphere of nature. But the point we make is that it is too often done in a subconscious and halfhearted manner. Zest for the sport itself may easily overwhelm a man. What fly to use? How to overcome drag in casting to that far bank? Is a 3 leader light enough? Problems, problems! After all, are these things *really* so important?

Of course, we want to catch fish when we put on our waders and string up our rods. But at best a few will suffice. And under anything like normal conditions we need not be so terribly serious in order to take those few. It seems to us that a sensible division of the time spent during a day's fishing might read like this: attention to tackle and casting problems, 20 percent; consideration of stream conditions and fish habits, 30 percent. That is half of the time devoted to actual angling, leaving the other half to leisure for the pure enjoyment of the out-of-doors. Once this attitude is adopted, it is possible to return from a trip empty-handed, yet perfectly content.

Dry fly vs. wet fly

Since the introduction of dry fly in this country, there has been a hot controversy between trout fishermen as to what is best. The following is an *impartial*° survey of the two types of fly fishing.

Few will deny that the dry-fly method is the most spectacular. To see the fly riding cocked up on the current, and the fish coming out of his native element to take it—these are thrills seldom offered to users of the wet fly. But with this admission, the agreement ends.

Let us examine the negative side of this argument first—the dry fly. What does its successful use require (presuming a thorough knowledge of stream conditions and the habits of trout to be the common property of all good fishermen, regardless of their method)? The use of the dry fly requires just one skill—casting ability. It is all a question of placing the fly in the proper position, with due regard to the fish and the currents. Once the fly lands on the water, the angler has nothing to do but retrieve it at the proper time, or set the hook in the rising fish's mouth. The whole theory of the dry fly is based on the premise that the fly floats without interference from the fisherman. That leaves him with nothing to do except to put it in the right place.

There are many ways of casting, and many tricks to the trade, but they can all be learned—on the lawn. We are not arguing that precision in casting is easy to acquire, nor that anyone can become a good dry-fly fisherman merely by hours of practice over grass, but there is no gainsaying the fact that when a man has acquired accuracy in placing the fly, he is well over halfway on the road to being a good dry-fly man. A little actual experience with moving currents of water, with the acquired accuracy maintained, and 90 per cent of the skill is his. All that remains is to learn to strike the rising fish, to play him to the net, and to pick the right fly. The refinements, such as "creating a hatch" or raising a reluctant trout in crystal-clear still water, are merely extensions of the casting skill.

Picking the right fly is perhaps easier when fishing dry than wet. The opportunity is generally presented to see what the fish are taking; the hatch on which the trout are feeding is visible, and can be matched by the angler, with a little patience and care. What constitutes matching is a matter entirely between you and the trout (we can "match" a trim alder fly with a fuzzy Pink Lady Bivisible, to the satisfaction of both the trout and ourselves), and requires only observation and imagination, although experience is of the greatest assistance, and is the factor which brings about a proper match in the quickest possible time. But that's all there is to it—accuracy in casting,

° If, after reading this section, you believe the dry-fly fisherman got the worst of the deal, remember the editor of this book and C. B. H. Vaill, the author of this section, have been avid wet-fly anglers for many years and therefore may be *slightly* biased.

steadiness in striking, and cleverness in choosing the fly. As soon as you have made your cast, and the fly has been placed where you want it, there is nothing more for you to do except to await the strike and handle that minor matter without violence. It's spectacular, it's grand sport, it's highly scientific —and, comparatively, it's a cinch!

But the wet fly! Here is the method which will take trout from the first day of the season to the last, under good conditions and bad, if properly used. And its proper use requires more knowledge and skill than any amount of dry-fly work. Doesn't that make it the highest expression of the angler's art? Well, let's look it over.

To begin with, we admit that the most necessary part of the dry-fly fisherman's equipment of skill, accuracy in casting, is relatively less important in wet-fly fishing. There are times when fractions of inches count, but on most occasions and in most waters inaccuracy in casting can be compensated for by a little manipulation of the fly under water; if it does not land in exactly the right spot, you can haul it over there, provided it will not frighten the potential trout.

And when the fly is in position, then what? Seldom can you let it drift with the current, and expect to catch trout. The fly must be fished, fished in such a way as to suggest to the trout that it is not mere feathers and hair, but food. It must be brought to the attention of the fish, who may not be looking for it at all. And it must be brought to his attention without disclosing its traitorous character. Here is something which the dry-fly fisherman does not have to do. When he casts to a rising fish, he knows that the fish is watching the surface. If he has the proper fly, it will look enough like a natural to draw a rise. If it doesn't, there is nothing to be done but to try another type. But he can be certain that the trout saw the fly.

Wet flies, as described in Chapter 3, fall into two broad classifications: exact imitations of natural stream life and purely artificial creations which look like nothing except the inspiration of the original inventor's imagination. With the first type, which includes all the nymphs and a few of the winged flies, the action of the insect represented must be simulated exactly. Natural appearance must be fortified with natural behavior. No matter how cunning an imitation it may be, the trout will be loath to take it if it behaves like a banshee (a fish's idea of a banshee, that is). So the wet-fly fisherman is faced with the problem of delicately manipulating that tiny bit of feathers and silk 40 feet away. This takes not only skill with the rod, but also a great knowledge of the actions of underwater insects. When the dry-fly man has assimilated the fact that an insect floats with the current on the surface, he knows all that he needs to know about the insect's relation to its environment. But with the wet fly, he must know much more, and be able to translate his knowledge into action.

With the second class of wet flies, the pure artificials, ingenuity is the prime requisite. These flies, which include the bucktails, the streamers, and most of the ordinary wet flies, are all supposed to represent to the fish some form of escaping life. Possibly the trout sees some relationship between your Royal Coachman and a floating nymph. Maybe he thinks he's caught a flash of a passing minnow. Perhaps it's just ridiculous enough to whet his curiosity. Whatever his reaction may be, it's up to the fisherman to stimulate it to the striking point, and it will take more than a mere repetitious presentation of the lure to do this. There are dozens of things you can do with that Royal Coachman after you get it on the water. But you won't learn much about it on the lawn.

The bucktails and streamers are comparatively easy, of course. There is no doubt in the wet-fly man's mind as to what they mean. They are all minnows, or strong suggestions of minnows. All you have to do with a bucktail is to get it to the proper spot and make it act like a minnow. There aren't more than a dozen or so ways a minnow can act, or more than half a hundred different designs of bucktails. Just fit the two together, that's all.

There is, of course, no question about the fact that the proper use of the wet fly requires terminal tackle quite as fine as does the dry fly. In some cases, actually, the requirements are stiffer. The fish rising to the dry fly is convinced of its reality by the time he makes up his mind to rise, and while a great chunk of gut across his path will unquestionably put him down, his field of vision is limited by the surface of the water. It's possible to catch many good trout on the dry fly when a recalcitrant leader insisted on floating, provided it did not float right up to the eye of the hook. If a couple of inches sank, or stood above the surface, the rise was not checked. The dent made by the floating leader might be only 2 inches or so from the fly, but that was enough, apparently, to still any suspicions which may have arisen in the trout's mind. Even a tiny dry midge will take a respectable weight of gut, provided it does not rest on the surface of the water right up to the fly itself. But under water it is a different story. The only defense against detection is clear gut of the lightest possible weight. We speak, of course, of normally clear water, where there is no distorting water surface, no deceptive refraction, to supply a margin of doubt. The fish either sees the gut or he does not; he cannot ignore its proximity, as he appears to do so often when the dry fly is in question. There, he may think the floating leader is a twig, or other uninteresting and unrelated substance, but when in his unrestricted underwater vision he sees the apparent food supply being dragged hither and yon by an inexplicable cable, he knows something is definitely wrong, and leaves it alone.

There are several reasons why it is more difficult (and therefore more praiseworthy) to hook a trout with a wet fly than with a dry. First, of course,

is the matter of knowing when to strike. As long as your fly is floating, you will be able to see your rise and act accordingly and instantaneously. With the wet fly, often out of sight or nearly so, you must depend on many subtle signs to know when to give it to him—a movement of the leader, perhaps, a twitch felt and not seen, the flash of a turning trout. Whatever it is that tells you to strike, it generally means that about half your opportunity for setting the hook has already passed, and you must act like lightning, double-greased, and yet with gentleness enough to save your light tackle. And when you do strike, as likely as not you are snatching the hook away from the fish's mouth. The fly is moving through the water, following the leader, and the fish follows the fly. The instant he takes it in his mouth, and thereby signals for a strike, your twitch of the wrist tears it away from him, unless he has clamped firmly on it and has not started to spew it forth again. It may match his lips, but it is quite as apt to keep right on going.

The situation is generally reversed with the dry fly. It comes downstream, following the leader, point forward. The fish ordinarily comes upcurrent, so when you strike, you are pulling it right back into his mouth. Just a slight stiffening of the casting arm is all you need to set the barb firmly.

There is another aspect of the strike which we believe to be true, but which we must admit we can't prove. We believe that one of the reasons for the better hooking of trout on the dry fly is due to the fact that when, as, and if a trout decides to take the dry fly, he does it without reservations. It may take him a long time to make up his mind, and it may cost you half an hour of hard casting to persuade him that he wants it, but when he does, he does. He gorges it. But the wet fly gives him better chances for observation. It looks good, but perhaps it's not just right. "Well," he says, "we'll take a nip and see, just taste the edge." And that's when you strike. Too bad. Now, if you had fished that wet fly as well as you had cast the dry, the fish's doubts would have been resolved, and he would have gorged, not tasted, and you would have acquired a trout by the exercise of much more comprehensive skill than that required merely to float a fly over the same bit of current a couple of dozen times in a row.

For a long time, the argument of wet versus dry has been fought with most of the weight and authority on the dry side. Its proponents have shouted so loudly about the beauty of the floater, and the skill in casting required, that they have lost sight of the fact that there is really little more to it than that. The dry fly is an effective, entertaining, and exacting method of taking trout. It is a highly sportsmanlike method, reasonably difficult to use well on many fast American streams. It has been highly honored, and with justice. But the wet-fly method has all these attributes, plus the fact that its effectiveness can be augmented by the skill of the angler. If the trout are not taking surface food, the dry-fly man can cast his arm off without moving

a fish, but it is a very rare circumstance, when, even though the trout are apparently not feeding at all, the persistent and experienced wet-fly man cannot score. Therefore, to be a really successful trout angler you must be both a wet- and dry-fly fisherman.

Always be willing to abandon all pet types of flies when they fail. You'll never see a "lucky" angler trying to force trout to take some favorite fly when the fish are feeding on something else. Remember that generally trout, if feeding, have a one-track mind—they relish one course at a time. When nymph-feeding, they indulge until somewhat gorged (if food is ample), then take to the fly on the surface. Expecting trout to come to your floating fly when he's concentrating on underwater feeding is the equivalent of a man eating a meal who takes a forkful of meat in one mouthful and then a forkful of pie à la mode. He may do it, but it isn't common practice. Therefore, don't gripe about bad luck, for example, if you stick to dry flies when you see trout chasing minnows. Likewise, don't stick to wet flies if you see trout taking flies off the surface, then grumble about poor fishing. Thus, while we may not have resolved the great debate between the true dyed-in-wool advocates of the two rival factions, let's say that fishermen should learn to use both wet and dry flies and employ either when the need arises.

Wet-fly techniques

Your first attempts at fly fishing for trout during early spring will probably be done with some type of wet fly—nymph, streamer, bucktail, or a standard design of wet fly. This makes good sense, because the trout, generally, still aren't feeding right on the surface. There will be thousands of insects moving in the stream, but the big hatches won't take place until late May or early June. In other words, wet flies are best when the trout aren't rising, when the water is cold or roiled up as it is in the spring or right after a heavy rain. When trout break the water's surface, but there are no insects on it, they are probably feeding on nymphs. An artificial nymph, at this time, is also the best bet to use.

A wet fly may be fished in a number of ways, and the method used is dependent on various conditions. In a heavy stream, for instance, you can't wade against the current all day if your daily exercise has been confined to chasing your secretary around a desk. Regardless of how the trout are disposed, most wet-fly anglers fish downstream, casting across the current, letting the line swing around and then working it back before making another cast. When doing this, an expert plays the game with fine precision based on experience. He works slowly, wading carefully to avoid splashing or dislodging stones, while his eyes almost unconsciously search for those places that suggest the lie of a trout. As the potential water comes into view

he makes a snap estimate of the current and depth, so that his cast is immediately corrected to send the fly around at the proper level. Once committed to the trout's view, the fly is sensitively worked back to the angler—no longer a mere hook and feather but a living bit of food.

When the water is clear, a great many anglers prefer to cast upstream. But, by fishing upstream, we don't mean that every cast is made straight into the current. Rather, you work gradually up against the flow and your cast may be anywhere from straight across to straight upstream. Most of them should be quartering up and across. Once the fly is in the current, tighten up on the line and permit the fly to swing down to the feeding area in a long arc. The current does the work.

A variation of this method is to cast as before, then as the fly starts drifting, follow its progress with your rod tip, releasing more line or retrieving line to prevent any drag due to variations in the current. It's best at all times to have your line just short of the point where the fly makes a dart across the current.

Another way of fishing flies that is usually effective in extremely clear water is to cast upstream and slightly across the current, allowing the fly to sink and drift back to you. There are several advantages in casting upstream that the wet fly shares with the dry and with live bait. Fish always lie facing the current, and you can therefore approach them closely from behind. Your fly also drifts more naturally and swims deeper. Further, the slack in your leader is less objectionable to drag-conscious fish. As the fly drifts, retrieve the slack line. Trout will often dart out from under a log or a rock to snatch the deep-sunk fly as it passes their lair. Be sure to hold the line close to the rod so that you'll have complete control of the slack between the butt guide and your line hand, which makes it easier to hook a fish. If you simply pull line directly from the rings with your left hand, the rod no longer commands the situation. The forefinger hold also expedites the handling of the slack with your line hand. When a cast is fished out, drop the line from your finger and cast again.

Your aim will be to modify casts according to the depth of the water and the speed of the current. In a quiet pool you cast straight across stream, and when your line begins to sweep around below your position, the fly will be bumping bottom. In a swift, deep riffle you will probably have to cast almost directly upstream to get the fly down to the same depth. In any case, you'll know when the fly isn't being fished correctly because it will show at the surface. Let it drift through the good water, feeding a little line back out of the guides if necessary, and allow the fly to swing around in the current downstream. Trout often follow a wet fly and strike at the moment that the line becomes taut.

Actually, the idea is to keep as much slack as possible out of your line

without interfering with the natural drift of the fly or drawing it toward the surface. In a place where the currents are varied and the line belly-floats too fast, thereby pulling the fly to the top, correct the speed with slack. To adjust the drift of a wet fly, release a few yards of line just as the belly part begins to gather speed. If the current isn't strong enough to pull the line from your hand, give the rod a few shakes up and down, and the line will slide out of the guides. Adding slack takes the tension off the line and lets the fly sink deeper. In time you will learn the many nuances of directing and mending your casts, but all you have to think about today is putting that fly near a trout.

The angle from which each spot is fished is an important part of fly presentation. As you look downstream, you'll see slick places in the bouncy water, pools, bars, breaks, perhaps old logs or tree roots, and undercut banks. As previously stated, these all provide cover for the trout. We don't suggest that you cast *at* them, however, because the fly won't be swimming deep enough when it passes these lies. Always think in terms of aiming your cast so that (1) the fly has enough time and slack to sink deep, and (2) it reaches the fish just as your line completes its swing across the surface. Sometimes the only spot from which you can do this is directly up- or downstream from the fish. At other times it may be straight across, or at any other angle between these two extremes.

If you are lucky enough to see a trout splash, follow the same rule of aiming a proper length of line upstream from his position and let the fly sweep around to it. Then, when the line tightens in the current after the swing, the fly comes to life. It rises like an insect from the bottom and moves toward the surface. This is a natural motion for an emerging nymph or a larva that has left its gravel home and is swimming toward the top. So even if your wet fly passes several feet under a surfacing trout, it will arch up to his level in a lifelike manner. You may notice, incidentally, that most of your wet-fly strikes occur at the moment your line has completed a swing.

In working the wet fly, one should experiment to find the depth which will bring the best results. The following method will cover all levels. Let the fly go right to the bottom; then jerk the rod tip upward a short distance. Retrieve a foot or so of line, then go through the same spasmodic jerkings. Follow through with this repeated action until the line has been taken up and is ready for another cast. As with other retrieving operations, the angler should try faster and slower motions until the successful method is found. By this time it should be apparent that you can't fish a stream thoroughly and keep your fly always above or below the fish. Each cast should be fished as long as possible. Keep your fly in the water. Nobody ever catches a trout while he is casting or moving from one spot to another.

Many wet-fly fishermen are now using weighted types during the early

spring when the trout are bottom-feeding. The casting techniques are the same as for the standard wet fly, but the added weight tends to keep your line straight, in a direct line between your rod tip and the fish. This enables you to react more quickly to a strike. This type of fishing allows you to search out the bottoms of pockets and eddies, which would otherwise be impossible to fish properly with anything but live bait.

The strike of a trout with a weighted fly which is near the bottom of a stream is ordinarily quite different from that of the same fish taking a wet fly closer to the surface. It usually feels as if your line has become snagged on some underwater obstruction. Trout seem to take food very slowly and deliberately when the water temperature is below normal; as a result pronounced strikes are not the rule. However, it's surprising how many trout are hooked during a day of weighted-fly fishing. They apparently take a weighted fly much deeper than they would ordinarily. We have noticed that many trout caught on such flies are hooked farther back in the mouth than trout caught on other flies.

For some reason the average angler has the idea that it requires years of experience and a special aptitude in order to fish nymphs successfully. This is not the case. Most of the wet-fly methods are also nymph methods. Any natural-drift method will do the job. The reason why so many say they can't catch fish with nymphs is that they don't know how to fish those wet-fly methods which are identical with nymph methods. Too often the nymph fisherman is unsuccessful not because of lack of angling skill but because he frightens the trout. Avoid causing shadow movement, and cast the nymph about 45 degrees up and across; then let the lure sink and drift as naturally as possible, avoiding drag from the faster-moving line. If you are unable to "sense" the strike with more line out, tie on a dry-fly line, about 4 feet above the nymph. This will serve as a "bobber" or strike-indicator and also gives you a better idea of the location of your nymph.

Bucktails and streamers are the most versatile of flies. They catch trout from all kinds of water that any stream has to offer, from flat, still pools to the pockets in the fastest runs. The place to use them is where the trout are feeding and that, of course, has to be learned by experimenting.

Under normal stream conditions, the streamer or bucktail is cast across and downstream. As the lure drifts with the current, a regular movement of the rod keeps the fly alive and the slack out of the line. The darting motion should be very short but spaced at regular intervals, to simulate a minnow struggling in the current. Don't lift for a new cast too often. A deep-sunk fly left to be shouldered by the current and seldom fully retrieved can be tantalizing to a big trout.

When fishing streamers or bucktails, it's important to vary the retrieve from time to time. A slow, jerky movement will ordinarily attract and catch

trout, but there are situations where a rapid pull will provoke more strikes. In general, the slow, bottom-scratching retrieve is effective in cold-water periods and the faster, near-surface swim better in summer weather. As in wet-fly fishing, it ordinarily is best to use as short a line as possible with a streamer or bucktail. But don't hesitate to use a lot of line where it is necessary to get your fly deep.

Trout ordinarily hit a bucktail or streamer hard. They frequently hook themselves because the fly usually is fished on a tight line—except, of course, when the angler is sinking it into good water. Even with slack, however, a trout often hits a bucktail hard enough to make his capture reasonably certain. The angler who enjoys casting a long line and covering a lot of water on a big stream will find bucktails and streamers made to order for him. He can cast just as far as he wants to, and he will be able to hook a good percentage of the fish that strike.

Dry-fly techniques

For sheer joy in fishing, nothing compares with taking trout on the dry fly. Most beginners, however, look upon dry-fly fishing as the most difficult to master; they think that only anglers of particular skill can hope to accomplish its fine points. Nothing is more untrue. In fact, in some ways, it is easier to master dry-fly fishing than wet-fly fishing. True, it is necessary to take care in placing the fly, in floating it in as natural a manner as possible, but once these techniques have been acquired, the difficult becomes easy.

The best dry-fly water for the expert is in the riffles. They produce most of the trout food in any stream, and feeding fish are more likely to be in them. Avoid racing current. Fish water that has a moderate flow, preferably over a rough, rocky bottom that keeps the surface broken. A choppy surface, with little waves and occasional boils and swirls where the stream eddies around submerged rocks, nearly always indicates good trout water. Furthermore, the broken surface helps to conceal the line and leader. It makes up for faulty casting and enables the angler to fish a shorter line because the trout can't see him so far. Still pools often harbor big trout. Browns, particularly, like to cruise in such water and sometimes lie in the shallowest part, just before the current breaks into the next riffle.

Extremely fast water isn't good for dry flies because they won't float long enough for a fish to see them. There is a lot of water of this type in the West, very little in the East. Even in the fastest streams, however, it is possible to use dry flies successfully by searching out the little slicks and pockets and such pools as there are. Sometimes dry flies can be fished on a short line in these spots with excellent results. But always remember to pick times when fish are rising. Trying to make trout rise when they're not

in the mood is fine sport for the "expert" who loves a challenge or likes nothing better than to cast a dry fly.

It is almost imperative that dry flies be fished against the current or upstream. The reason for this is that you'll be out of sight of the fish, and both the fly and line can float back toward you with a minimum of drag. A good cast under most conditions—the exception being real fast water—is a slack one quartering upstream and across. Generally, a cast straight upstream places the leader and line over the fish before the fly and often frightens them off. The S cast, mentioned earlier, will prevent this by giving the fly more free float. To make this cast, strip 4 or 5 feet more line off your reel than are needed for the distance you plan to cast. You then make a normal forward throw, but at the end of the forward cast you stop the rod high, even pull back a little. The line, jerked to a halt, will jump back and fall to the surface in S curves. Before these curves straighten in the current, the fly will get at least a couple of feet of free float.

Sometimes, in order to obtain a little more float, line may be fed through the guides as the fly moves downstream toward the shadowy position of the waiting trout. And at the finish of the float, instead of continuing to hold the rod tip straight across current, you should move the tip down with the floating fly. Often the line can be mended by giving it a quick flip upstream when it threatens to go below the fly and pull it off course. And as the float continues, the rod and arm can be shoved downstream as far as you can reach to get every possible inch of free ride. Any of these small operations may get that extra foot of natural float that will take the fish.

The trick in dry-fly fishing, of course, is to approximate the real thing. You must be able to control the fly so that it lands lightly, stays upright, and floats naturally without being pulled under by the current drag on the line. To accomplish this, pull back slightly with the rod just at the instant the cast falls from the air and the fly is about to touch the water. This will stop the fly in the air so it will not drop to the water on a tight leader. To keep the fly drifting naturally, release extra line which will allow sufficient slack to avoid drag setting in and spoiling the effort. As the cast drifts down, retrieve the slack, being careful not to move the end of the line itself where it joins the leader. If the end moves, it will cause a surface disturbance and may frighten the fish. You must keep a constant watch on the line since varying current speeds within a pool or a run continually affect the line as it drifts, pulling on the fly.

Always fish every cast out, even a bad one. More anglers miss trout by lifting their fly off the water too soon than because of drag. Leave your fly on the water till it has floated down past you and your line has straightened out below you. Trout frequently follow a dry fly downstream and strike just as the fly swings into an arc caused by the straightening of the line.

But if you don't get a trout on your first try, the pick-up for the next cast must be accomplished quietly and skillfully. If the line is yanked roughly off the surface, it's bound to scare any nearby trout. Often a fish will be following right under your fly and a sloppy pick-up will generally chase him away. So the line should be retrieved gently and picked up with a minimum of commotion.

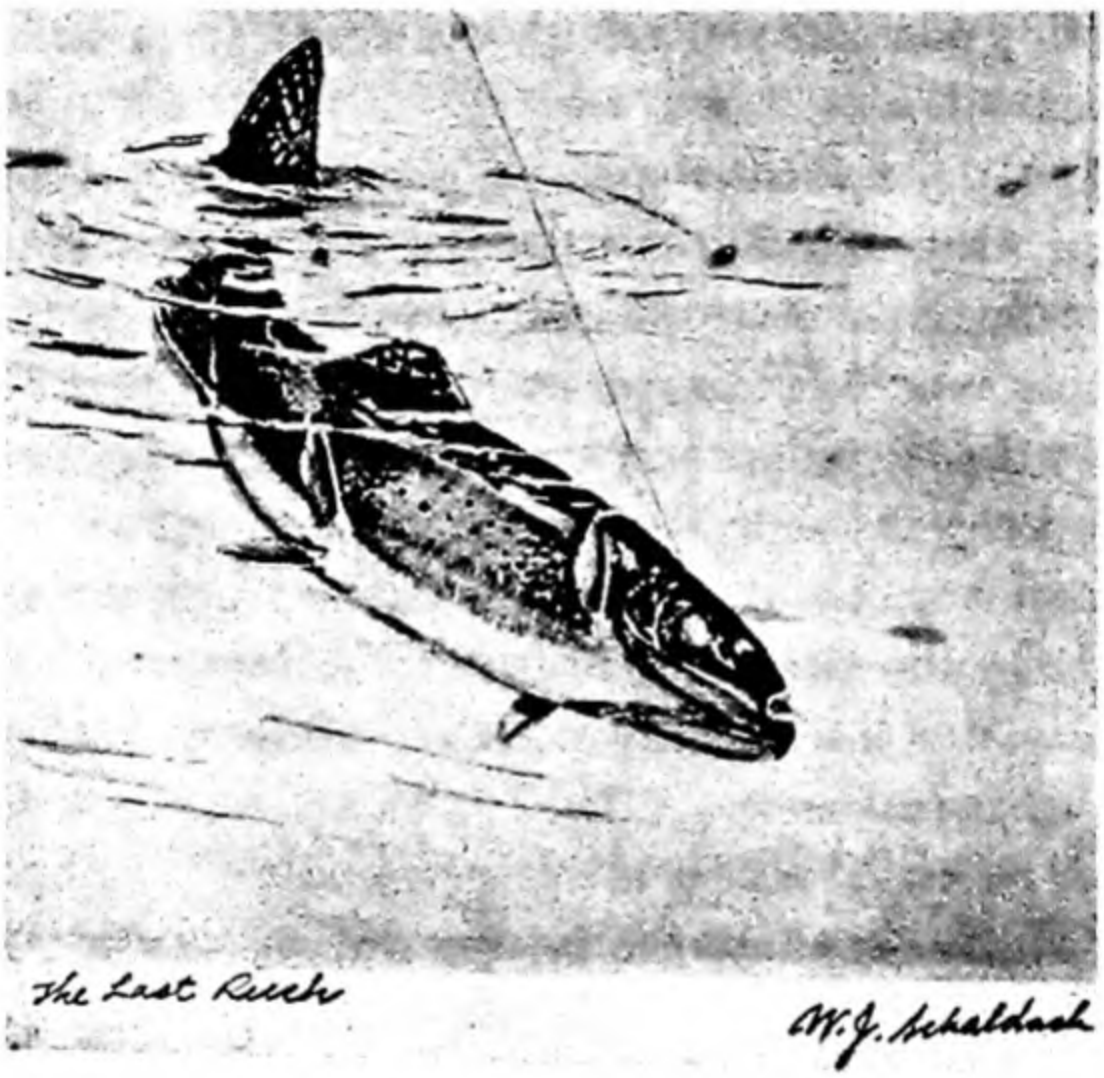
A poor rod position as the fly floats down toward you can ruin its action. When the fly is floating downstream, the rod tip should be pointed right at the fly, and the rod held low. A high rod tip allows slack and permits drag to occur quickly. Furthermore, it's almost impossible to strike with a high rod tip. If a fish were to strike when the tip is high, he could snap the rod tip. The rod should properly be held horizontal to the surface and pointed at the fly. From this position you are always ready for a strike or to pick up for the next cast.

Among serious dry-fly fishermen one phase of the art has divided them into two camps. One school fishes the rise exclusively, the other does not. This leaves the beginner in a state of confusion because both methods are successful. Those who fish the rise exclusively claim that there is really no reason to cast a dry fly unless you see a fish break water because there simply isn't a fish there. It has to be admitted that there is a certain amount of logic to this statement. On the other side of the fence, the angler who fishes the water and not the rise maintains that the best way to catch fish is to search out the water intelligently with a maximum number of casts. This point of view also makes sense. Let's take a closer look at both of these systems.

In ordinary stream angling, fishing the rise has one big advantage. That is the knowledge that a fish is really there. You are approximately sure of the time that your fly will float over him. This puts you on your guard and when he strikes you are ready for him. This corresponds to hunting birds with a pointer. You know when the bird is there and when he flushes, your chances of bringing him down are much greater than if you just chanced upon him. Before you cast to a rising fish you also have an opportunity to study the currents surrounding him and decide the best approach to make in order to avoid drag. When a good hatch of flies is in evidence and the fish are feeding on them, each trout seems to select a spot which suits him and seldom does he move too far away from this dining area. By careful observation before he casts, the angler can, with reasonable accuracy, select the largest fish to cast to. Thus he can sometimes avoid hooking small trout. In very still pools or ponds, fishing the rise is a bit more difficult. Quite often trout in these locations don't remain in one spot for any length of time when they are feeding. The very nature of the quiet water requires them to move about constantly if they are to enjoy a full stomach for there is no current

to deliver their food to them. As a result of this, when flies are hatching they cruise around the pool or pond methodically, usually in a circular pattern taking their food as they come to it. The best way to dry-fly a fish under these conditions is to observe the direction the trout is moving by watching the rise pattern, and then casting at least 6 feet in front of him. Let your fly rest motionless for at least half a minute and then twitch it slightly. Sometimes the fish will pass the fly by and then pause for another look. If the pattern is right, the little twitch will often seduce him.

With anglers who fish many waters during the course of a trout season, fishing the rise is most popular. It is almost impossible to become really familiar with more than one or two streams during the course of a lifetime.



When visiting a strange stream an angler simply does not know where the fish are most likely to be, especially the big ones (we all like to catch big ones if we can). Of course, if the trout aren't feeding on surface insects the fisherman must use sunken lures, or go home (we very seldom do the latter).

Many British anglers, and quite a few old-timers in this country, are great advocates of "waiting out the rise." What this means is selecting a pool which past experience has proven contains sizable trout and, after finding yourself a comfortable seat, proceed to wait for the fish to jump. It is very true that this type of fishing requires very little physical effort and can't always be relied upon to produce trout. Its biggest claim is that it is one of the best ways to catch a big trout on a dry fly. When you see a fisherman sitting in one spot for an hour or more on a good dry-fly day, you can be fairly certain that he knows that a big trout resides in the stretch of water he is watching. When that particular fish begins to feed, he will try for him;

failing, he will try for him perhaps the next evening, and the next. Many large trout are caught in exactly this manner. To more active fishermen, this may sound quite boring. But to each his own.

"Waiting out the rise" can also give a fisherman an exceptionally fine education on the life cycle of aquatic insects. While sitting perfectly still beside the tail of a pool, one can easily observe the phases of May fly development. The nymph can be spotted struggling to the surface and hatching, the duns flopping heavily to leave the water, and later the spinners returning to dip gracefully while depositing their eggs back into the stream. Even if the fish don't take them, watching the flies themselves is most fascinating.

The choice of the two methods of dry-fly fishing depends, to a degree, on kinds of trout. Broadly speaking, the brown trout responds better to the "rise type" fisherman. The brook trout, in small streams is taken more often by the "stream type" angler. This is due mainly to the lower temperatures of brook trout streams, which cause the trout in them to feed during most of the day. In the larger streams, where brown trout are in the majority, the water temperatures fluctuate more often, making the trout more selective in their feeding time. The ideal temperature range for dry-fly fishing seems to be between 55 and 65 degrees F. This is very natural when we consider that this temperature range usually brings hatches of May flies, thus offering the trout something to jump about.

When fishing with wet flies and streamers, or other sunken lures, it's quite naturally difficult to fish the rise. When these kinds of artificials are

useful, the fish are seldom taking anything from the surface and spotting them becomes almost impossible. "Fishing the water" is then the most logical way to catch trout. When fishing the water, the angler who fishes all types of flies, that is, wets, dry, and streamers, is much better equipped with experience than the angler who has restricted himself to the floating fly. The very purpose of casting a sunken lure is to draw the trout from his hiding place and tease him into making a fatal mistake. On a stream one fishes often, these favorite haunts of trout are recorded in the angler's mind. When conditions call for the dry fly, these mental records are put to use and the fly is cast to the hot spots.

On an evening when conditions seem right for dry-fly fishing but no jumps are in evidence, there is another method of "fishing the water" which sometimes brings results. This is "creating the hatch." This involves choosing a spot which past experience has shown holds a trout. Then, very carefully cast a fly to this spot, letting it float naturally without drag. Then cast again, and again until the trout either takes your fly or you tire of casting. This type of fishing requires great skill and endurance, as each cast must be exactly like the preceding one. The idea is, of course, to convince the trout that a hatch of insects has begun. While some old-timers and guides claim that it can be worked with regularity, we have had only *very, very* limited success with it.

It would be folly for anyone to believe that one type of dry-fly fishing is really more successful than another. If one did nothing but fish the rise, he would miss many hours of good sport. On the other hand, if he didn't watch the rises carefully, he would be missing many chances to capture a large trout. The thoughtful angler adjusts his style of fishing to the conditions which exist at the time. One well-known angler summed it up this way: "Find out what the fish want, when they want it, and how to give it to them—then do it." That's about it, isn't it?

Bait fishing for trout

No fisherman should fish for trout with bait when there's a chance of of catching them on anything else. The reason for this is *not* that we're purists, but because it's the least fun. We firmly believe that it's wasteful of both fish and sport to catch trout on anything else but flies. In our minds, there are two circumstances that make the use of bait legitimate: (1) when water conditions, as in early spring and after a heavy rain, are so bad that no artificial lure has a chance, and (2) lack of skill and experience on the part of the angler, which makes any other means impossible for him. During the early spring, when water temperature is below normal, as already stated, trout tend to stay near the bottom. Thus live bait often attracts them

more than flies. In addition, fishing with bait gives the beginner an understanding of trout and their habits that would be rather difficult to learn with flies. While it's fine for a beginner to try bait fishing for trout, he should learn to use flies as soon as possible so that he can get the greatest enjoyment from the sport.

When trout fishing with natural bait, use either a fly rod or a light-action spinning outfit (see page 27). A 6-foot length of nylon leader is sufficient. If the water is slow-flowing, no split shot need be fastened onto the leader, but if it is medium- or swift-flowing, the shot is a necessity. Place your split shot at least a foot above your baited hook; if the sinker is close to the hook, it will drop the bait into the leaves and bottom debris. A small spinner will catch the eye of a trout and attract it to the bait especially if it is cast into a pool, allowed to sink to the bottom, then moved with just enough motion of the rod to make it flutter—never with a fast, continuous retrieve. Use no sinkers on this arrangement.

There are many good baits available for trout, and most of them are found in or near the stream. Most popular of these are worms, minnows, grasshoppers, hellgrammites, caddis larvae (either with or without their cases), May fly nymphs, crayfish (crawfish, as fishermen call them), stone fly nymphs, and dragon and damsel fly nymphs. Most of these baits should be fished with a small hook. To use them naturally, you should know something of their habits, although trout—and lucky it is for us fishermen, too—frequently hit baits that are acting unlike anything in nature. Dragonfly nymphs, for example, move by jet propulsion. They take in a little bit of water and then expel it to dart ahead an inch or so. They obviously should be fished with short, sharp jerks. Stone fly nymphs, however, can't even swim. When they are dislodged, they just tumble along through the water. Fish them with a slack line and let them drift naturally. The bait should be hooked lightly for maximum freedom of movement.

In some Western waters salmon eggs are very popular. As a matter of fact, rainbow trout will often pass up every artificial offered, but can't seem to resist salmon eggs. This has brought on something of a problem in some areas where salmon eggs have been outlawed. Anglers, however, are usually able to solve the lure problems, and in one area they have worked out an expedient that is within the law. They scoop out a bit of petroleum jelly on a finger, hold it in the cold water until it becomes firm, then mold it into a pellet and spear it on the hook. Some carry the illusion still further by mixing a reddish stain with the jelly and adding a touch of fish oil to increase the realism. The rainbows grab this fake with abandon.

The best way to present natural bait to trout is to allow it to drift along the bottom at will and subject to every vagary of current. When following this method, you'll find that the same problems of line drag that affect your

dry-fly fishing also influence your fishing the bait. If you make a cross-stream cast to reach a deep pocket on the far side of the main current, the pressure on the line sweeps your bait clear of the hole before it reaches good fishing depth.

There are two ways you can reduce this annoying drag. One is to use the lightest, thinnest line you can handle, thus cutting down on the water friction; and second, cast and fish the bait upstream so you can get the right drift on a slack line. Then, as the bait comes toward you and passes your position, you can switch out a bit more slack to keep it riding just over the bottom, without any hindrance from the line. You can see now why it's important that you have a fair notion as to where the trout is likely to be. You must gauge the speed and depth of the current at his lie in order to calculate just where you'll drop the bait upstream above him to bring it to his attention.

The ideal situation when employing natural bait is to know where your fish is, or should be, then take a spot on or near the bank just below his position. Then, by flipping the bait upstream, you have full control of its movement as it approaches the fish. It's also a big advantage to be downstream from the trout when he grabs your bait. Then, when you strike him, you'll be setting your hook back into him instead of pulling it out of his mouth, as you would if he were below you.

Hooking, playing, and landing a trout

After making the cast, follow the line around with your rod (the tip should be at eye level), so there's a minimum of drag and you are prepared for a strike. If the line twitches or jumps as though it hit a bump, set the hook. You won't often see the fish that takes it in deep or broken water. If the line sweeps around without a bump and stops its arc over deep water, just let the fly hang there for a minute or two. Sometimes trout will strike a perfectly motionless fly in the quiet part of a pool. Actually, the current gives the feathers a slight movement as the fly sinks very slowly toward bottom. Now lift the rod tip and gently twitch the fly to the surface. That should do the trick.

Water conditions can often determine the timing of the setting of a hook. For example, in swiftly moving water, the trout doesn't have much time to decide whether or not he should take a dry fly. When he does decide to take it, he generally does it with a rush and makes a considerable splash hooking himself. In still water, he has all the time in the world to look over your offering and to take it in a slow, positive manner, making little surface disturbance. Trout in water of this type seldom hook themselves; you must strike quite quickly to set the hook. It is best accomplished by

merely raising your rod tip to tighten the line. Never yank or jerk up on your rod. The struggling fish will put on enough pressure to set a fine, sharp fly hook after you've given it a tight line. When small wet flies are used, the line friction alone is usually enough to hook the fish. In nymph fishing downstream, raising the rod tip smartly will generally be all that's required at the moment the hit is felt.

To hook a fish, your barb must penetrate the fish's mouth. For this reason it *must* be sharp. A good angler tests his hooks for sharpness before attaching his lure to his line and again after a day's fishing. He keeps a small whetstone in his pocket or in his tackle box to hone his hooks as they need it.

Once the fish is hooked, let your rod do the work. A rod works best—flexing forward under pressure, recovering when the pressure weakens—when it is held nearly vertical. Never point your rod at a fish to play him, but rather keep your rod tip high during most of the tussle. This is especially important when playing a strong, fast fish in shallow water where there are obstructions. Holding the rod high helps to raise the line and keep it free of snags. A fish should not be given anything solid to pull against. When your rod is held nearly vertical, it bucks and bends under the pull and takes most of the strain. But if you reel a fish too close to your rod tip, he'll get a more direct pull and may break away.

Play hooked fish gently. If your trout is over 9 inches, he must be played; if he's twice that size, he must be played quite carefully. Keep a tight line and steady pressure on your fish, but never try to hold him by grabbing the handle of the reel; that's almost certain to break a light leader. Most fly anglers can hold small trout in check by employing the single-hand hold, but when a hard-running fish takes the lure, the two-hand hold is to be preferred. When a big one runs, it's almost impossible to exert maximum pressure with the rod when using a one-hand hold. When you have the fish coming or when you wish to exert pressure to turn him, you can usually place one hand across the rod butt and push down, pulling up on the rod grip with your other hand. This system for pumping with a fly rod isn't tiring and doesn't require a great deal of strength.

When playing a fish, even a small one, do so from the reel. We realize that many people ignore the reel and strip line back by hand, but it's a bad habit to develop. You can get slack loops tangled quite easily, and a large trout may make several wild runs that demand uninterrupted yardage. Although a fly reel is basically a storage drum for line, rather than an actual casting tool, it must function smoothly when a strong fish pulls for freedom. If you don't learn to switch hands now (or crank with your left hand, depending on which way you mount the reel), you will begin stripping automatically—and that's bad. Also remember that the fly reel does not always have a brake.

To prevent a big fish from running, you can exert varying degrees of

thumb pressure inside the revolving spool. Without this pressure, your line may overrun and backlash. But watch out for your knuckles on that whirling reel handle.

With an automatic fly reel, you retrieve the line by pressing the lever, and the reel does the work. One point should be made here, however: You should never play a fish on the spring of an automatic reel. When taking the line in, use the hand-retrieve method; when you want to wind the retrieved line onto the reel, press the lever. The automatic reel is not, and was never intended to be, a mechanical fish-player.

Another point is worth making: When you take up line with an automatic, always run the line between the fingers of your free hand. If you press the lever when the line isn't controlled, you stand a good chance of running all the line into the reel. This means that the hook will slam into the tip of your rod, and something is almost certain to break—leader, hook, or maybe even the tip section of your rod.

Line reeled into the spool of a single-action fly-rod reel can form ridges high enough to jam against the cross braces of the reel frame. Avoid spool-jamming ridges by using the little finger of your left hand as a level-wind device. As line comes in, the little finger first pushes it to the right side of the spool, then hooks at the end to pull line to the left. The result is a smooth spool of line that won't jam the reel during your battle with a large fish.

If you're playing a fish in a stream or a river, try to keep him fighting upstream as much as possible. If he has to battle the current as well as the rod, he'll tire out much sooner. If the current is strong, however, get him out of it as soon as possible. Lead him into an eddy or the quiet water of a large pool.

When a large trout makes a run downstream through heavy water and the chances of stopping him are slim, you can sometimes bring him back by feeding out a lot of slack quickly. If the fish pauses long enough for the slack to release all of the pull from upstream, he is likely to come back toward you. Since the pull now comes from below, it is natural for him to return. But this doesn't always work. At best, it is a gamble.

Sometimes you are faced with the decision of whether to stop a fish at the risk of breaking your line or leader, or to let him swim into a tangle of snags or down over rapids. In such a case, only you can decide what to do. Sometimes you can attempt to stop him and lose a leader; at other times you can stop him and bring him in. On other occasions, you can allow him to get into the brush or down the rapids. Then you'll do the best you can under the circumstances.

Once you've tired your fish, he can be led into your landing net. Always net the fish headfirst so that his desperate tail swipes will force him into,

not away from, the net. As the fish enters the net, ease up on the rod pressure, and he'll drop safely inside.

Trout up to 4 or 5 pounds in weight can be landed quite easily without a net. Play such a fish until he is tired, and lead him close. Then put either hand down over his back with the thumb toward your body and the little finger toward his tail. (In other words, the fish should be facing you.) Then slide your hand forward until your thumb and index finger are over the back edge of his gill cover. Press hard and lift him from the water. A word of caution: Watch out for sharp dorsal fins.

To land large trout, it is often possible to use the beaching method. To do this, play the fish until he is on his side or fanning feebly on the surface. Then hold the rod high and apply enough steady pressure to start the fish coasting toward shore or a sand bar. Keep his head high and skid him onto the sand bar with as much momentum as your tackle will allow. Grip the beached fish by his gills and carry him farther ashore before you attempt to unhook him. When the shoreline is too rough for smooth beaching, you can skid his nose up against a shoreline rock and hoist him out with a firm grip on his gill cover. Don't use the gill grip on fish you plan to release. It's a crippling hold.

While we are on the subject of releasing fish, let me reiterate that it makes good sense to throw back fish you don't plan to eat. Undersize fish, of course, *must* be released. Remember that a released fish means future sport for all. Fish hooked lightly on a fly can be released by enlarging the hole slightly and backing the hook out. A small trout hooked lightly in the lip can easily be freed without even lifting him out of water. An artificial lure with several hooks sometimes embeds more than one hook in the mouth of a fish. Use pliers or a hook-disgorger to work the hooks out gently. (If the hook is deeply imbedded within the mouth, use the disgorger only.) But don't use this tool if the hook is far down in the stomach. Instead, it's best to cut the line close to the mouth and let the hook remain in the fish. As long as it doesn't block the passage of food, the hook will not hamper his movements unduly, and the normal body acids will dissolve it eventually.

Dry hands can grip and hold a fish better than wet ones. The tail and the thick part of the body are the best areas for grasping; holds established there prevent squirming. Usually a tired fish that isn't squeezed too tightly will not struggle. If he does, close your hand gently around him. As a rule, the harder you squeeze a fish, the more he struggles to get away. Therefore, don't squeeze tighter than necessary or you may injure vital organs. Also, avoid fingering the gills or the eyes of those fish you are going to release. If you wish to take photos of large fish before you let them go, it is safe to keep them away from the water for a few seconds.

To release a fish, hold him upright in a normal swimming position just below the surface of the water and move him back and forth to force oxygen-carrying water through his gills. When he has regained his strength, let him go in calm water so that he does not have to face strong currents right away. If you are in rapid water, place him behind protected rocks where he can rest until he is able to fight the pull of the current. Never toss a released fish out through the air to hit the water with a splash. Also, never release a fish that you have accidentally squeezed too hard or one whose gills are bleeding or bruised. Many small trout are easily killed by poor handling. Save badly injured fish for eating.

Spinning for trout

A real trout angler should be versatile and be able to use either spinning or fly-fishing gear, whichever seems more appropriate to the stream conditions. At low, summer-water stages, for example, or at times when hatches of insects bring feeding trout to the surface, the dry fly is indicated. The spinning rod, with fine monofilament lines and deep-running lures is, we believe, particularly adapted to heavy, high-water stages on larger streams. Between high and low water, you can take your choice. Once you find a big trout you can always come back later if he is lost the first time, as he so often is.

Spin fishermen are lucky, for they can fish their lures both ways—upstream, in dry-fly fashion, or downstream like the wet-fly or worm fisherman. Because most spin lures are fast sinkers, it's easy for the spinner to approach his trout just as the dry- and wet-fly fishermen do, then snap accurate casts into all the places where that particular variety is likely to be hiding out. Since the constant goal of fishermen is to take bigger fish, the spinning method is made to order for stream trout fishermen. Big fish like a big bait, and compared with the average fly any spinning lure is a big bait. But the myth that spinning is an easy way to take trout should be put to rest. It takes time and practice to become proficient with spinning tackle on streams and even wide rivers. Spinning reels and monofilament lines have drawbacks as well as advantages, and trout water must be studied from all angles if you're going to make the most of spinning gear.

The use of the plastic bubble makes the spinning rod perform most of the tricks of the fly rod, including dry-fly, streamer, nymph, and similar light lures. Before using the bubble, you must fill it through a tiny hole with water or mineral oil. To do this job, use an eyedropper. Most anglers prefer using mineral oil because it doesn't evaporate. It's a good idea to make up a set of variously weighted bubbles at home to have them ready for the various casting conditions you will meet. For example, when you are cast-

ing into the wind, you'll want a fairly heavy one; when the wind is behind you, a light one may be better; and there are times when you will want one more than half-full so that it will sink. In some instances, you may even need to add one to three BB shots when you are working a swift stream. Since the stopper used to close the hole in the bubble has a nasty habit of working free and popping out while casting, seal it with a coat or two of fingernail polish.

For dry-fly angling and near-surface wet-fly and nymph fishing, attach the bubble to the end of your regular spinning line. Now add a length of lighter line to the bubble, about 3 or 4 feet long. Attach a single dropper about in the middle for one fly; add the second fly to the end of the line. Actually, you tie one, two, three, or more on short leaders spaced at appropriate distances ahead of the bubble. With normal ease of casting the combination won't tangle on the cast or during the float. The use of more than one fly will help determine quickly the correct fly patterns the fish are taking. Quite often experienced spin fishermen use a dry fly on the dropper and a wet or hatching nymph pattern on the end, particularly during the spring hatching season. When you cast this kind of rig, use the side cast rather than the conventional overhead cast since you need to have the flies and the bubble out beyond the tip of your rod. Don't snap the cast, but gently swing it out over the water in one continuous motion. If the sweep isn't slow, the rig will twist and tangle. If greater distance is required or you are fighting a breeze, fill the ball with enough water or mineral oil to weigh it sufficiently, but not enough to make it sink out of sight.

Big-river fishing for trout

The angler fishing the larger river waters can often use the same lures and techniques for trout as those described in stream fishing, except that here you have to contend with deeper and broader waters and with currents that may be a great deal stronger. The fish are generally larger and heavier lures and sinkers are often employed. So the river angler most often uses longer, heavier, and stronger rods to handle the big fish and to make the longer casts necessary to reach the best fishing spots. Either fly-casting tackle or spinning gear may be used.

There are three ways in which to fish a large river—from a boat, by wading, or from shore. If you have no boat or if the river is too deep to wade, your only choice, of course, is to fish from shore. Here you can often fish without boots, but they can be worn if the shoreline is muddy. In rivers with shallow bars and gradually sloping shores, you can also use boots. But in most big rivers you need waders to reach the best fishing spots.

Most of the big trout rivers are in the West and the rainbow and cut-

throat are the most common in these waters. Dolly Varden are also found in many fair-sized Western rivers. Rainbows, especially the big ones, like deep, swift water with scattered rocks and boulders where they can lie and rest. Such water can be fished by casting at various angles so that every hole, pocket, and boulder is covered. Another good spot for trout in big rivers is at the foot of riffles where they enter a pool. But when fishing for big river trout it's usually best to keep moving and cover as much water as possible. Of course, you should fish each good spot thoroughly. So the more territory you cover, the better chance you have of locating fish.

Most river trout anglers concentrate on wet flies, nymphs, bucktails, and streamers. Also, the average fly is both larger and gaudier than those in common use on Eastern streams. Spoons and spinners are also good lures for trout in rivers, as is live bait. As previously stated, salmon eggs are extremely popular in the West. Actually, all Western trout eat salmon eggs when they're available and even in the inland rivers and lakes, where salmon are never found, cutthroats, Dollies, and rainbows will take eggs. Early-season fishing with eggs, as practiced by the experts, is very delicate and sporty fishing since only the lightest of tackle is used. The single egg is fished with a long, flexible fly rod and light leader, seldom over 2-pound test. This is attached to a 5- or 6-pound monofilament line which is carried on either a large-diameter fly reel or one of the free-line types of spinning reel. The tiny egg hook, usually a size 10 or 12, with short shank and turned-up eye, is completely buried in the egg.

The seagoing rainbow—the steelhead—has always been a popular fish with Northwest anglers in California, Oregon, Washington, and British Columbia. "Steelies" start their principal upriver migration anywhere from early December to well into March. As a matter of fact, there are two distinct spawning runs. The second run, of far less importance in terms of spawning intensity, starts in May and continues into September. They stay the winter in these Western rivers and spawn the following spring close to the time that the main run of winter steelheads will spawn. This means that these trout can be found in rivers of the West the year round.

In any given steelhead river, certain pools and runs are better than others. Even in the pool itself, certain spots are chosen by the fish for resting and feeding. The natives and old-timers know these spots from past experience and work their lures or baits so that the fish see them. The beginner or stranger is handicapped by lack of this knowledge. But there are general locations and preferences of steelheads which will help an angler to locate these fish.

Steelheads like the fast, deep runs and here they choose some obstruction such as a sunken log, boulder, or a hole where they lie to avoid the full force of the current. In pools they're found in the lower ends or tails, where

they rest. When they're on the move again, they lie at the head of the pool. Most of the time they stay in or near the main channels. But when rivers are low, steelhead fishing falls off. When the water starts to rise, fishing usually improves. If the water gets too high and muddy, the fishing becomes rather poor again.

Steelheads will take a wide variety of lures and natural baits. The smaller fish found in the rivers during the summer are more active and will rise to flies, spoons, and spinners. But, as a rule, the big fellows are taken deep, almost on the bottom. For this reason, artificials as well as natural baits should have enough weight to get them right down on the bottom, no matter how fast the current. One of the best ways to do this is by slipping an egg-shaped sinker onto your line above a good-sized snap swivel to which a 2-foot leader is also attached. Such a rig will not only get your line down fast but, properly weighted, permit it to bounce or "drift" along well within the steelie's strike zone, which is from 6 to 10 inches off the bottom.

In casting such a rig, experienced steelhead anglers try to estimate the speed of the current, then aim at a spot well across and upstream so that the current will carry it right into the hidden pocket they're trying to reach. If, however, you don't happen to know the location of these hidden hot spots, you'll have to fish blind. While you will undoubtedly lose a few lures, you're sure to catch plenty of steelheads.

Most winter steelheads are taken by drifting a cluster or "strawberry" of salmon eggs through a run or riffle so that it barely clears the bottom. The trick in drifting is to cover the entire bottom in a favorable run, to insure that the bait comes to the attention of any fish that might be in that run. Most anglers start at the head of the run, flip the bait upstream a bit to give it a chance to get well down, then allow the eggs to drift at will until the slack (which you feed as the bait moves down) has run out, and the line tightens. When the angler feels the sinker touch the bottom, he manipulates it so that it goes bumping along. He may walk the bank and so fish down through a long run or else make a series of casts from one position. In either case, he attempts to keep the sinker touching the bottom every foot or two. The bait, of course, trails out downstream in steelie's striking zone. During the drift, you must be alert for the slightest bump or hit indicating the fish has taken the lure or bait. It pays to set the hook when you feel such pick-ups, even if in doubt.

Steelhead fishing is often cold, wet, and miserable during the winter months, but the minute you hook a fish you forget all this and the excitement warms you up in a hurry. Few fish found in our fresh waters fight harder than a good-sized steelhead. And for the most thrills and fun use the lightest rod and line that you can.

Salmon on flies

Anyone who has handled a fly rod knows that the fish he seeks to master is not sought for economic reasons, but is merely a means of satisfying or expressing that God-given thing which is called dominion. During the fly fisher's early years, this desire for mastery is satisfied by the capture of trout, which in itself is no mean feat as the trout is both cautious and wary, requiring delicate tackle as well as some knowledge of the types of natural insects upon which it is accustomed to feed, so that appropriate artificial flies, imitating or suggesting these insects, may be presented. After a while, however, this desire for mastery is no longer satisfied by the trout, which is relatively small, and a larger and perhaps more elusive fish must be sought if man is to exercise to the full his birthright of dominion. This search must of necessity lead him in the end to the Atlantic salmon, the king of all fish taken by means of fly tackle. Or at least this is the feeling of Preston J. Jennings and Al McClane, whose ideas form the basis of this section.

The Atlantic salmon at one time was abundant along the Atlantic seaboard, perhaps as far south as the Delaware River. As an instance of this abundance, the Connecticut River, when it was first dammed in the late eighteenth century, had such an accumulation of fish below the dam that for the ensuing three years farmers hauled them away by the wagonload, presumably for use as fertilizer. As civilization expanded and the need for water power grew, more and more dams were constructed which barred the salmon from their normal breeding grounds. Then industrial pollution increased and there were changes in climate, with the result that the Atlantic salmon almost disappeared from our waters (they still can be found in a few minor streams in the state of Maine) and must be sought in the rivers of our neighbor to the north, Canada. (See Chapter 10 for European Atlantic salmon hot spots.)

One of the major questions that has always perplexed anglers is: Why does the Atlantic salmon take an artificial, commonly called a salmon, fly? Before we can arrive at a simple answer we have to clear up several misconceptions about salmon. Perhaps the reason for so much argument as to why a salmon is caught on an artificial fly is due, first, to the general belief that this fish does not feed when it returns to fresh water; and, second, to the fact that the artificial salmon fly does not have any counterpart in nature, in that it is not a plausible imitation of anything which the fish may have previously taken as food.

Unfortunately, many books written by fishermen are merely interesting diaries or journals recounting their own experiences at actual fishing. A fisherman learns very little while actually engaged in fishing; here he is only putting into practice those things which he has already been told by

a more experienced angler, or those things he has acquired by reading and study. One learns very little on the stream unless one has a preconceived idea of what to look for and what to do. However, if the fly fisher happens to be a woman, Lady Luck seems to play an important part. To illustrate: while fishing a Gaspé river a celebrated Broadway actress stopped for lunch and left her salmon fly trailing in the water from the beached canoe. Before the preluncheon cocktails were consumed, the canoe was yanked off the beach by a salmon which, when landed, weighed 36 pounds! Truly a prize for which more experienced anglers had sweated and labored for years without avail.

Let's take up the question of the salmon feeding, or at least taking food, upon its return to the river, a journey concerned primarily with seeking a suitable spawning ground and, later, a nursery for its young. For many years salmon have been taken in Scotland on natural bait, such as minnows and prawns. These natural baits, however, are not allowed on Canadian rivers, and American fishermen are not familiar with their use. The Britisher, Arthur Wood, the master of the greased or floating-line fly fishing, noted that salmon often would feed on the natural British March Brown (a May fly), and that during one entire season he fished his water on the River Dee with an artificial March Brown and accounted for as many fish as usual.

If the salmon does take food in the river, why is it then that food is never found in its stomach? This may be due to two things. First, the salmon has a tremendous capacity for digesting and assimilating food: it grows from a weight of a few ounces when it runs to sea to 3 to 5 pounds in one year of sea feeding, to 10 or 12 pounds in two years, and from 12 to 25 pounds in three years. Second, a salmon is seldom gutted until some hours or days after it is caught and by that time the digestive acids have completely obliterated any traces of food. In this connection it might be stated that Dr. William McFarland, a New York surgeon, decided to gut salmon *immediately* after capture, and found that some 50.2 percent of the fish examined contained identifiable food—minnows in the case of the large fish and aquatic insects in the small fish or grilse.

Thus it would seem that salmon do feed in fresh water, but, as they are seldom seen actively seeking food, it would appear logical to conclude that they take only such food as can be obtained with a minimum of effort. From a standpoint of economy it would hardly pay for so large a fish to spend more energy in going after food than the food so obtained would replace. The types of artificial flies are predicated upon an illusion of being nearer —and, therefore, reachable with a minimum of effort—than they actually are.

Artificial flies for salmon are by no means something new, as they have been tied and used in Scotland for at least 140 years. One early writer suggests that the maker of gaudy flies for salmon may exercise his fancy as he

pleases, for it is impossible for him to be too extravagant in his ideas. Following this line of reasoning, literally hundreds, perhaps thousands, of different salmon-fly patterns have been devised on what might be called a tie-and-try basis, and it is not our wish to detract from them in any way. Artificial flies which suggest minnows are necessarily quite large and should be used only under conditions of poor visibility, such as turbid or high water, or low light. Under proper conditions they kill well, not only for salmon, but for trout and steelhead. The two patterns of minnow-type flies are necessary because of the variations in the spectrum. Under full light, say, during June, yellow light is predominant. As the intensity of light diminishes, during the fall months, yellow is replaced by orange. Artificial salmon flies have proved to be killing patterns in Maine and on the Canadian rivers in New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Cape Breton, and Newfoundland. They have also been tried with good results in Iceland and Norway, and worked well in British Columbia for steelheads, a close relative of the Atlantic salmon.

You won't have much choice of method in taking Atlantic salmon. In virtually all waters you will be restricted to the use of the fly only. This makes sense, for the fish aren't hard to reach, the stream beds are clean, offering few hazards in the form of snags that might foul you up—and besides, it provides the most sport by far.

In fishing wet flies and streamers, the procedure is exactly the same as on your favorite trout stream: a long, quartering, cross-current cast, then a tense wait while the water sweeps your fly across the stream to a point where it's picked up in a single back cast and sent out again. While dry-fly fishing for Atlantics is a relatively recent development, it is accomplished in almost the way as when trout fishing—an upstream cast followed by a short, drag-free float directly to the fish.

The choice between the two methods—wet or dry flies—depends on several factors. The first is the condition of the water. It has been our observations that the rivers with peat-stained waters aren't so good for dry-fly fishing as those which are clear. In the early season almost all the salmon rivers run dark brown with peat stain coming from the runoff of bog water in their drainages. Some of them carry the brown stain all through the season but the stain is less noticeable once the main flow comes from springs instead of runoff. It's at this point that most streams reach their peak for dry-fly effectiveness. Fishermen who have had successful dry-fly fishing on a rather clear river may suffer a rude jolt when they try the same flies on a dark one. In other words, the clearer the water, the better it is for dry-fly angling.

The speed of the water is the second factor. A wet fly moves faster than a dry fly in order to cover more water, but it occupies an important place in

the salmon's vision for a longer period of time. The wet fly moves in contrast with the objects the water carries instead of at their identical speed and is therefore more conspicuous. The wet fly is first glimpsed out of one eye as it approaches, then just ahead as it passes, and finally going away on the other side. The dry fly, difficult to distinguish amid the ripples, debris, and surface foam that convoy it, approaches head on and disappears into the salmon's area of blindness behind him. When the waters slow down and lose much of their surface motion, the dry fly becomes more conspicuous and increasingly effective. This speed of water is in direct ratio to the speed of the dry fly relative to the stream bed.

The speed of the current is only one of two considerations with the wet fly. The fly's speed is also affected by your pull through your tackle as well as by the motion of the water. Your pull normally is employed to impart speed as well as direction, but the tackle can be used to slow down the movement of a wet fly in relation to the stream bed. Even if the tackle isn't employed to slow the wet fly, it still helps maintain it in a better position for a salmon to see and rise to it than the dry fly, for which, in fast water, a salmon must make a downstream rush.

Another factor is height of the water. Dry-fly fishing is most successful when the water is low and the fish are concentrated in groups in the pools. A wet fly when cast covers, let us assume, the fishable width of a small river. The fly lands on the far side and swings all the way across the flow to the near side, covering at least 40 feet. During the same period of time a dry fly cast out on the same water would drift not more than 10 feet downstream from the point at which it landed. As a consequence, the wet fly reaches four times as many fish as the floating feathers. When the salmon are scattered over a wide area, the advantage is always with the wet fly. Later on in the summer when the water drops and the salmon tend to congregate in small groups in known locations, the dry fly in its short float will be presented to as many fish as a wet fly on its full swing because most of the wet fly's travel is through barren water.

When we mentioned "rise" earlier in this chapter, we meant that a trout came up and took, or tried to take, the fly. In salmon fishing the same term means that a salmon moves up to *look* at the fly, perhaps taking it, but more likely turning away short. A trout, moving up close to take a fly, rarely turns away short of taking it. With a salmon, a fish that may never have seen an artificial fly before and is much less schooled in the detection of insect "fakes" than the trout, the reverse is true. More salmon are hooked after one or more false passes at the fly than are connected with on their first pass at it. Time after time a salmon may rise to the dry fly falsely before taking it, and in many instances he will rise and rise without ever opening his jaws.

Some salmon have a habit of waiting until the dry fly has drifted over them and passed on down into their blind area. Then, turning with a rush —and almost always making the turn away from you, of whom they are already aware—they come around downstream to take the fly. They rush at the fly, open-mouthed, heading downstream and toward you, already turning back at the take to complete the circle to their former lie. You must have keen enough vision and must watch your lure so closely that you can determine whether the salmon really takes the fly or just comes up alongside and opens his mouth, missing the floating feathers by a fraction of an inch. If the fly is taken, you must strike—and if that great fish, suddenly appearing after hours of inactivity, doesn't close his jaws on the fly, you must not twitch your rod arm even a little bit, but must hold steady and let the fly drift carelessly on its uninterrupted path. Such control is far from easy but it is essential to the taking of many of these curious fish. If the fly is yanked away at the false rise, the fish will usually sulk and come no more. If the fly drifts on and the salmon keeps returning to look it over, sooner or later he can be brought to the lure.

You can also catch salmon in the fresh-water portions of many of the Northwestern steelhead rivers. Only two of the five species of Pacific salmon are usually caught, the big Chinook or king salmon and the smaller silver salmon. They are usually taken in the same way and on the same tackle you use when drift fishing or plunking for winter steelheads.

"Lower your voice, dear—you'll scare all the fish away."

6

Lake fishing for everyone

Most fishermen got their start in the game with the lowly little pumpkin seed (sunfish) in a neighborhood pond or lake. The true fisherman will still get pleasure out of the chubby little pumpkin seed or his cousin, the blue-gill, for everything is relative in fishing. The man who whips a 500-pound marlin on a heavy salt-water outfit can still have fun with a sunfish—if he's a true fisherman. He'll use, of course, a very light fly rod, a light line and leader, and a tiny bug—but he'll have fun.

Taking any kind of a lake fish is not merely the obtaining of so many pounds of edible meat. There are a lot of things involved: dark hemlocks and spruces marching down to rocky shores; the smooth, liquid sound of a canoe paddle in quiet water; the clean smell of the North Woods. Of course, the thrill of landing a fish like the fighting smallmouth, which comes from the depths to challenge the angler's skill, is a definite part of the picture, but it is only a part. Getting close to sky and water and the silence is what really counts.

David N. Newell supposes that the thing which irresistibly attracts us

fishermen is the primitive urge which we inherit to go out and capture one of nature's wild things. We don't buy it or barter for it. We go directly to nature and take it through our own patience, skill, or just plain good luck. There's satisfaction in this, such satisfaction as isn't felt by simply carrying home a fine, fat fish from the store.

This should be easy to understand. You go out, for instance, to a mountain lake. But you don't know just what is down in that blue water. There is mystery and uncertainty. Time turns back five thousand years and it is a matter of life and death to take a fish out of that lake. Your ancestors didn't have a glass fiber rod and monofilament line but they were no more in earnest!

So you forget everything but what is there before you—the lake and the nearby forest and the sky. Your plug lands near a lily pad, it floats softly, and makes a tiny bit of rich color against the blue-black depths. Then, from nowhere there appears a brown-green form that rises to strike at that floating morsel. You set the hook and instantly there is a gleaming arc of gold-bronze as a big bass flashes out into the sun. You lay him in your net, finally, and let no man try to tell you that here is just 4 pounds of dead fish! You know better.

We have all heard in recent years that fishing in many parts of the country is "lousy" and that there are no big fish left in most lakes. After a decade or more of experimenting in heavily fished waters we have reached two general conclusions:

1. Game fish of any species, in civilized and much-fished waters, are getting wiser and warier each season.

2. Fishermen are too prone to be haphazard in their methods: they follow orthodox rules of fishing; buy popular plugs, flies, and lures; employ traditional ways of using them. They spend too much time studying tackle, not enough in attempting to learn about the regular habits of their quarry.

These statements are so obvious as to be trite. Perhaps it is for this very reason that they are so often disregarded, that is, by the average fisherman. But we all know the fellow who can go out and get 'em any time. Rain, sunshine, hot, cold or stormy—he practically never gets completely skunked. And on the days when some of us make a modest catch he will come in with a record creel.

Lucky? Well, perhaps. He has the same variety of "luck" as that bestowed upon the chap who burns the midnight oil in study and eventually becomes district manager, or consulting engineer, or something. He is the bright boy who uses his head.

The changed conditions of modern living call for a revision of our ideas in almost every field. It is a principle that applies even to fishing, whether

we like it or not. To make this task easier, let's see how we can catch those bigger and wiser fish in our lakes.

Big catches and the weather

Arguments about the best time to fish are easy to come by. Scientific proof, on the other hand, on this subject is harder to find. There are, however, some good studies dealing with the effects of weather on the feeding habits of fish. And there are interesting theories covering every phase of the subject—from wind direction and barometer readings all the way through solar effects and the phases of the moon. The conclusions that follow are by John Alden Knight and are, in part, the basis for his famous fishing tables.

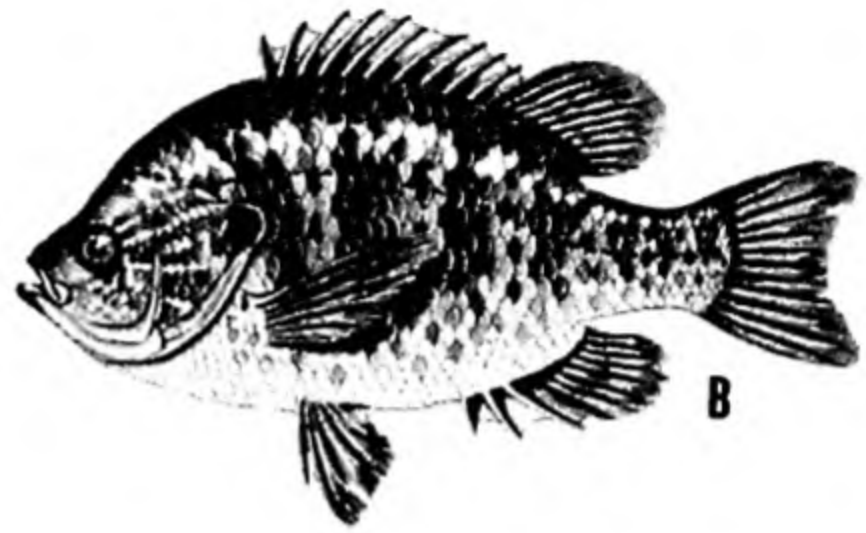
Weather conditions perhaps govern the taking of muskellunge, bass, pickerel, walleye, pike, et cetera, more than they affect the taking of trout with the fly. However, there are exceptions to almost every rule of game fishing, hence no angler should govern his sport entirely upon the cut-and-dried signs of old-time fishermen or abide too strictly by the old rules. Even the ancient rule laid down by Izaak Walton sometimes proves of little worth. His rule goes:

When the wind is in the West,
The fish they bite the best.
When the wind is in the East,
The fish they bite the least.
When the wind is in the South,
It blows the bait in the fishes mouth.
When the wind is in the North,
A good fisherman rarely goes forth.

Now, we have discovered that this scale of things does not always run true, but nevertheless it has its good points and means well. Naturally a north wind cools the surface waters and sends the game fish deep, where they are difficult to locate. South and west winds are usually accompanied by good, clear weather and the game fish are nosing around for food, but the east and north winds usually blow up the kind of weather few fishermen care to mingle in, especially on a lake.

The effect upon fishing of fluctuations in atmospheric pressure, however, is now a scientifically established fact. Generally, a "high glass" will bring good fishing with it, while a "low glass" means poor fishing. But that is not an infallible rule by any means. Far more important is the *trend* of the glass. If atmospheric pressure is increasing so that the "glass is rising," then you are pretty sure to have good fishing weather. If the "glass is falling," it's a good idea to forget about fishing and do something else. An alteration

A


B

C

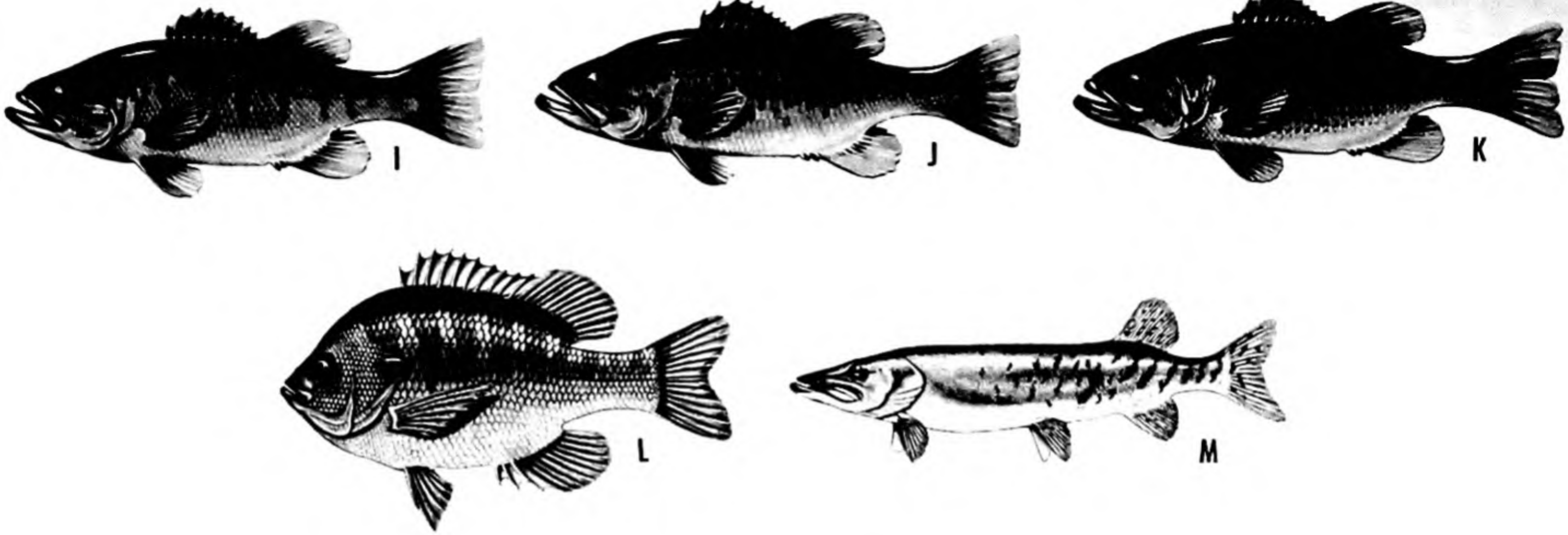
D

E

F

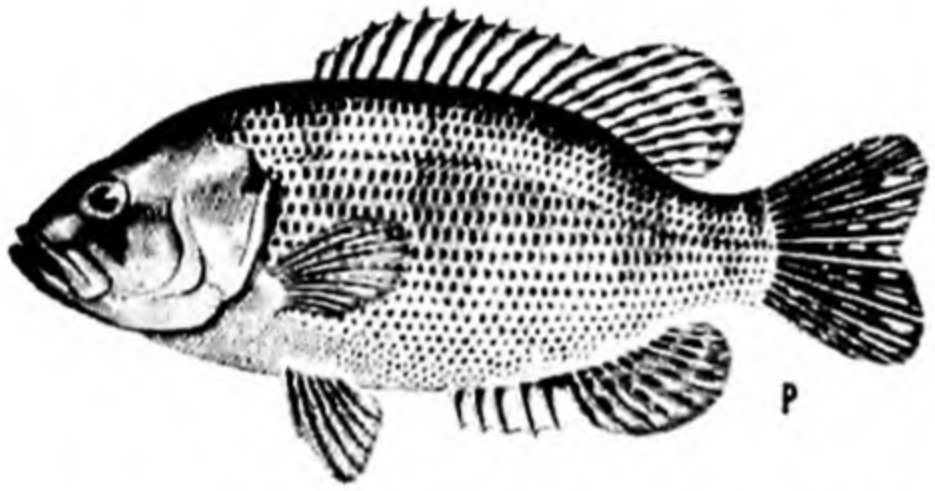
G

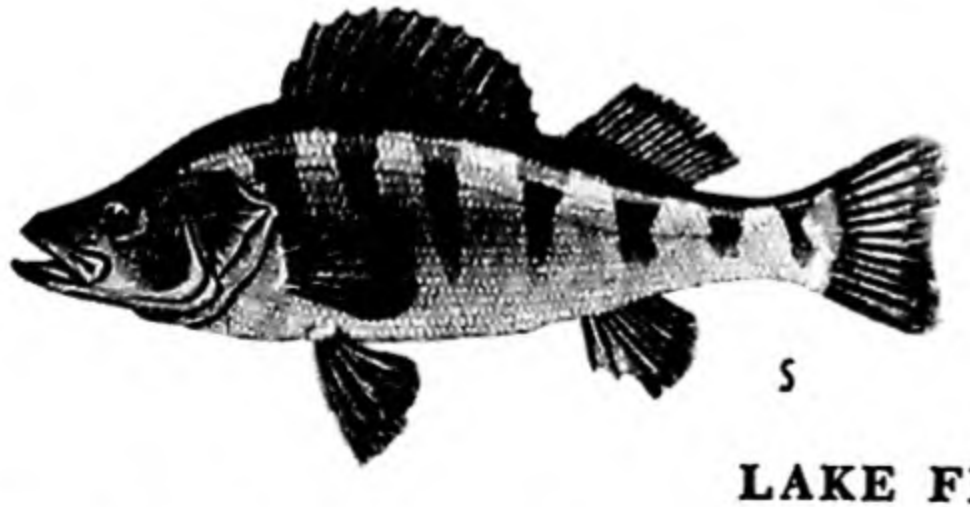
H



LAKE FISH

A. Crappie. *B*. Sunfish. *C*. Wall-eyed Pike. *D*. Trout (*Lake*). *E*. Chain Pickerel. *F*. Great Northern Pike. *G*. Catfish (*Blue*). *H*. Salmon (*Land-locked*). *I*. Smallmouth Bass. *J*. Largemouth Bass. *K*. Spotted Bass. *L*. Bluegill Sunfish. *M*. Muskellunge.





LAKE FISH (continued)

N. Brown Bullhead. *O*. Yellow Bass. *P*. Rock Bass. *Q*. Carp. *R*. Channel Catfish. *S*. Yellow Perch. *T*. White Perch.

of as little as one- or two-hundredths of an inch in the level of the barometer often will have a decided effect upon the feeding habits of fish. Decrease in atmospheric pressure is nature's warning to wildlife that storms are in the offing and they stop feeding to find safe cover.

Lacking a barometer, there are many "signs" that people who are closely associated with the outdoors depend upon for their daily and hourly weather indicators. A red sunset means clear, hot weather, while a red dawn points to rain. Mare's-tails—long, wispy clouds across the sky—indicate high winds. A mackerel sky is a sign of rain to come soon and we are all familiar with the "thunderheads" that give us advance warning of thunderstorms on summer days.

Wind direction is a good weather indicator. In various parts of the country, wind directions have different meaning. For instance, an east wind along the Atlantic seaboard is a forecast of rain, while on the West Coast it means just the reverse. It is a good idea to consult local residents about this before banking too much on wind directions. Usually, a change in wind direction, indicating a change in the weather, will ruin the fishing for a while at least.

Dew and fog are used as "signs" by many. A heavy dew on the grass in the evening means a clear day tomorrow. A foggy evening is regarded by some as a good sign for the next day. We once knew a farmer who used as a barometer a little pocket in the hills across the valley from his home. In fact, he called it his barometer. Each morning he went to the door and looked across the valley. If the pocket was filled with fog, he knew that that day would be fair. If there was no fog or haze in the pocket, then he expected rain and usually got it. He said that his barometer was absolutely reliable.

Perhaps the most deceptive form of weather is what the farmers and sailors call a "weather breeder." By that is meant a bright, sunny day with a cloudless sky and just enough breeze to be pleasant. The wind direction may be favorable and all outward indications point to perfect weather for fishing, yet the fishing will be abominable. It is easy to spot a weather breeder if you have a barometer, as the glass will drop gradually all day, long before the wind or the cloud formations will give you any warning. Lacking a barometer, there are several ways to identify the "falling glass," typical of such a day.

The *character* of the wind is as good an indicator as any to show what the barometer is doing. If the wind is high in the trees so that it does not disturb the dust in the road, and the leaves on the trees stay right side up when they flutter in the breeze, then you can be quite sure that the barometer is steady or rising. On the other hand, if the wind sweeps along the ground, picking up the dust and dry leaves and turning the leaves on

the trees upside down, then you may as well put away your tackle and go home.

If there is no wind and the day is calm, listen to the song of the birds. Bluejays will be abnormally active and noisy when the glass is falling. The "rain song" of a robin will tell you the story. If there is *no* bird song and the woods are quiet, then you are fairly safe in assuming that the barometer is dropping. Sea gulls are good weather prophets and when you see them flying inland you know storms are due, even though the sun shines brightly and the sky is cloudless. Even the clarity of the atmosphere will identify a weather breeder for you. If you can see great distances clearly and with no obstruction by hazy atmosphere, the chances are that it will rain soon. At night, your ears and your nose will tell you the trend of the glass. Sounds will travel long distances and remain unusually distinct if the glass is falling; odors are keener and more perceptible. There are hundreds of such things that will tell you what the weather is doing and what it is going to do.

A sustained storm can, of course, spoil that day's sport, *but* tomorrow or the next day you should collect double dividends. There are two logical reasons why fish feed well after a storm. They are hungry, and the rains have washed food into the water and it is easy to get. Expect to find lake fish haunting shallow waters under steep banks, rock cliffs, and logs, where a variety of food has been washed down. In streams they will be feasting on worms, bugs, beetles, and any other life offered up by that hard rain. Here, of course, with muddy water, you may have to retire all artificial lures and use the old reliable angleworm, weighted to roll along the bottom. Extended dry spells with low water and protracted wet spells with high water each make for bad fishing.

Generally speaking, mild weather, clear skies, and a light wind encourage the best biting. Here is the lowdown on the most ideal weather conditions, according to the Fife lake survey made by the Institute for Fisheries Research, Ann Arbor, Michigan, and reported by Ormal I. Sprungman:

Largemouthed bass: mild, light wind, rain.

Smallmouthed bass: cold, little preference with respect to wind and cloudiness.

Rock bass: mild, calm, clear. Bite very poorly in cold weather.

Bluegill: mild, windy, clear. Bite least in cold weather.

Perch: mild, light wind, rain. Bite poorest when cold or calm.

Walleyes: mild or warm, calm, clear.

Northern pike: cold. Number taken were too few to show other preferences.

Bullhead: No apparent preferences. Number too few to permit comparison.

Nearly all fish participate in annual migrations or changes in habitat. Fish generally inhabit shallow water in spring and fall, and swim deeper in summer and winter months. In extremely cold water, fish are inclined to lie dormant, and they are often equally sluggish when the water temperatures are extremely high. As a matter of fact, each species has a preferred water temperature—a temperature at which digestive processes are carried on most efficiently and the fish have the greatest need for food. Largemouth bass feed most actively around 70 to 76 degrees, smallmouth bass from 60 to 68, bluegills approximately 70 to 77, northern pike about 66 to 70, crappies and sunfish at about 70 to 75, walleye and muskellunge around 68 degrees, and lake trout and landlocked salmon prefer it much cooler, generally 45 to 55. In Southern states, where fish have to acclimate themselves to warmer water, these temperature preferences naturally will be slightly higher.

The lesson for anglers is obvious. When summer surface temperatures go above 80, it's just too hot for most fish. So surface lures are out; you'll have to get bait down to the fish. But the big question is: How far down?

As a lake warms, the water levels off into three layers. Since the upper stratum—called the *epilimnion*—is warm, it has less density. It is sufficiently aerated by wave action in summer, so it contains the oxygen necessary to fish life. The depth of this upper layer will depend on the lake's size and the length of the hot spell. It may contain few, if any, fish, except perhaps in shaded portions and during late evening. Fish don't like bright sun.

The lower layer, in deep lakes, will be comparatively cold and carry little oxygen because it's so dark down there few plants can live to generate oxygen. Most fresh-water game fish avoid this area—called the *hypolimnion* —for the biological desert it is. But between the two strata is a magic area called the *thermocline*. There you'll fish. It may start 6 feet below the surface in small lakes, or more than 25 in large bodies of water. Generally, vegetation grows down from the sunlit shore water until it reaches the thermocline and then it ceases.

During the heat of the day, the fish lies at or near the top of the thermocline. When he gets hungry, he moves out horizontally along the top of this thermocline level until he gets close to shore, where he finds vegetation and the minnows, frogs, and insects that lurk in it and over it. There he'll begin his hunting. That's where the fisherman should be, too, cruising along the top contour of the middle layer during the day—shallower in the evening or early morning.

There are several ways of determining the depth of the thermocline, either by still fishing with live bait or by slow trolling (see page 155). Or, if you're willing to make the effort, by using a thermometer. Your local tackle dealer has fishing thermometers available and will be glad to tell you how

to use them. When lowering the thermometer in the water to locate the thermocline, remember that water temperature changes can go abruptly from 70 to 50 degrees in a few feet. So it's wise to take readings at 5-foot intervals and you'll soon be able to find the middle-temperature strata for that particular lake. Note the depth of the abrupt temperature change and then fish just above it.

The question of the moon's effect on fishing is one that will get you some arguments. There is evidence that it has a lot to do with fishing. Discarding all of the superstitions about the moon and its effects, there are some cold, hard facts to consider.

For generations, the belief has been common among fishermen that fish feed more actively during the dark of the moon (new moon) and the first quarter. Let us see just how this idea works out in actual practice. From time to time, reports of record catches of fish are sent to us—huge catches, such as 200 brook trout in three hours, 101 smallmouth bass in four hours, and so on. (We hasten to add that all but a few of these two catches were returned to the water unharmed.)

We suppose that in the last seven years we have looked over the details of two hundred such catches. With only three exceptions, each and every one of the phenomenal catches that have come to our attention was made during the dark of the moon and between the hours of eleven in the morning and four in the afternoon; right during the hot, midday hours of June, July, and August, when most anglers knock off for a nap in the shade. In the dark of the moon, the moon is directly overhead in the middle of the day and directly underfoot at midnight. "South moon under" is what the Georgia and Florida market hunters used to call it and that was when they made their big monthly kills of fish and game.

Early morning and late evening are always good times to fish in fresh-water lakes. In other words, fish like bass, crappies, and sunfish start feeding at daylight and eat until they're filled, with usually another brief period of resumed activity around sunset. Walleyes will feed during daylight hours, particularly on overcast days, but this activity increases sharply at night and around 10 P.M. is their optimum dining hour. Northern pike, on the other hand, are strictly daytime feeders (except for the times they feed by strong moonlight), foraging from dawn to dark. Then they become relatively inactive. Same for muskies. Yet, strangely enough, almost *no* record catches are taken at dawn and dusk when the great majority of fresh-water fishing is done.

Another belief, having to do with the moon, is that fish feed more actively when the moon is closest to the earth—"in perigee" is the astronomical name for it. Conversely, it is believed that the fish are least active when the moon is farthest away from the earth—"in apogee." This belief also has an

underlying basis of scientific fact. While the effect isn't so pronounced as that of the dark of the moon, it is there nonetheless.

There is more, much more, that we have to learn of the weather and its effects on the habits of fish. Fishing by weather signs is no crystal-gazer's guarantee of good sport, but you can prove to yourself that good fishing isn't just a matter of luck. By following the wind, barometer, temperature, and the rest, you should be able to cut the completely bad days in your fishing season until they're as rare as the big ones that really got away.

How to find fish

To any accomplished angler, knowledge of the "hot spots" where fish may be lurking is of primary importance. It is, of course, impossible to predict their whereabouts with 100 percent accuracy, but certain general areas can be defined as preferable to open water. It is best in most cases to try these first.

Depending on the time of day, the season, and on atmospheric conditions, living areas are usually around sunken logs, stumps and snags, weed beds, lily pads, deep holes, entrances of cold feeder streams, boulders, gravel bars, slate ledges, undercut banks, waterfalls, backwaters beside fast currents, eddies and coves off the main part of a stream or lake, and so on. At these locations, fish find the necessities of life: shelter, food, security, comfortable temperatures. These are the spots that experienced anglers search for as they travel a stream or lake shores. It's here where the expert pauses to fish, passing up all the unproductive or "dead" water between. By finding these locations, then wading or boating carefully into casting position, you're going to have fun, and catch fish.

Getting down to specific cases, panfish are usually shallow-water species, although extreme temperatures will force them deeper in the water. Bluegills and sunfish move around the edges of weed beds feeding on bugs and hellgrammites; crappies prefer their homes around snags and brush piles; while rock bass, as their name implies, prefer rocky reefs. Yellow perch, on the other hand, wander in schools across sections of lake bottom that have no distinguishing characteristics. But even they, in springtime, gather around docks, piers, abutments, and similar structures. As a matter of fact, most panfish travel in schools and the fisherman who catches one of these fish is wise if he drops anchor and tries for the rest of the school. Incidentally, these schools seem to be organized into "grades," as the fish are age-conscious and those of one size tend to school together. You'll find the larger ones in deeper waters just outside the weeds and smaller ones inside the weeds.

Young bass tend to school, but older bass are rugged individualists, each

selecting his own territory where he can lurk in the shade of weed beds and lily pads. Northern pike like to run alone, and can be found scattered over weed beds. Although walleyes are often solitary, they may range around the lake in groups hunting for food.

Muskellunge and walleye also like weeds and may be found near sand bars and around sunken logs in medium to shallow water. But this is usually only in the spring and fall, or at night during the heat of summer. During the day in the summertime, these fish go to the deeper waters near the middle of the lake. Trolling a spoon or plug just off the bottom is the best method for taking muskie or walleye during this time.

When bait casting for muskellunge it is necessary to possess some knowledge of where to cast the lure and how to manipulate the tackle so as to attract the fish more readily. While the saying goes, "A muskie is usually found in spots where he is least expected and at times when he is not supposed to strike," we have discovered that anyone who fishes for these gamy tigers consistently knows that such is not the rule. Anglers who know where the sandy and rocky bars are located, where the shallow bays are, where the rushes and other aquatic vegetation are the thickest, and where the small rivulets flow into the limpid waters of the lake, are the fellows who catch the fish while less experienced fishermen spend hours of time without a nibble.

Muskellunge feed upon minnows, suckers, red horse, frogs, and occasionally upon a crayfish. Such foods are always located in shallow to semi-shallow waters where vegetation is present, hence the muskie swims around among the lily stems, pickerel weeds, and rushes in quest of something to satisfy his craving for food. Almost any of the artificial lures designed to represent the natural food of the fish will prove attractive to the lunge when he is nosing around for food.

While it's possible to catch both largemouth and smallmouth bass in the same waters, this is the exception rather than the rule. The bass of the cool, spring-fed lakes with rocky shores, gravel bottoms, and sandy bars are usually the smallmouth species. This same fish is also the one taken from flowing rivers and streams of the North. At times they will be found in the moving water where a stream enters a lake. Usually there's a deep hole at the spot. The fish know that the fresh water is bringing food, and they congregate there. Minnows trolled slowly through the deep hole, or artificial lures that will dive into the deep water, are both good bets for getting walleyes or even a muskie. If a small spring-fed creek pours into a lake, especially when it enters through a heavy growth of weeds and reeds, the chances of getting fish at the mouth of the stream are very, very good. The largemouth bass, on the other hand, is the species which loves to nose around among the lily pads and rushes, or close to muddy or gravel bottoms. The latter is taken from Southern rivers as well as warm water lakes.

The smallmouth bass is the clear-water fish, while the largemouth species gets along very well in sluggish waters. However, we are of the belief that both species prefer clearer waters and we know that the fish taken from the spring-fed lakes and streams are superior in fighting ability to the fish of the warmer and more sluggish waters.

Pickerel and northern pike usually like shallow water when feeding and prefer to lurk near weed beds and lily pads. They feed in the early morning and late evening hours on hellgrammites, bugs, frogs, minnows, crayfish, and mice. During midday they rest in the holes in the weeds, under logs, in the shade of overhanging bushes, or in deep holes near boulders and rocky shores.

Plateaus, or bars in the lake, are usually big producers, especially in hot weather. There are two kinds of plateaus. One is the island type from which a rock bar slopes off into deep water. The other is the sand, gravel, or mud-bar type which usually grows beds of weeds. In the hot days of midsummer when the fish retreat from shallow shoreline waters, these bars are the place to fish. You may have to ask a native to locate these choice spots, but by all means find them.

Sometimes, just about plug-casting distance offshore, there will be a sandy or rocky ledge. On the other side of it the water may be rough, but on the side toward you, the angler, it is smooth. This means that the ledge, part of which you can see, extends under water some distance and shelters the area between you and it from the waves. If there is any depth to this area—and you can tell that simply by looking—then fish there. Fish prefer to lie in such a depression, away from the rough surface of the open lake, able to see any food that drifts across the ledge, or, perhaps, just resting. We've found such places favorite lounge rooms for pike.

In most of the artificial reservoirs or man-made lakes across the land, vast sections of woods were cleared before flooding began. Never fail to fish the stumpy areas remaining. These may be visible above or just under the surface. Many state fish and game commissions provide maps of these areas. Some states even prepare underwater shelters of logs and brush for fish. Make it your business to know the locations of these—especially if you are seeking panfish and bass. Also fish small coves where logs and driftwood have backed up into jams. Fish under the jam with such natural baits as worms and minnows.

Still fishing

In still fishing a baited hook is dropped into the water and left there until a fish strikes. This branch of the fishing pastime is the most commonly practiced of all forms of fishing in that it demands the least knowledge and

the least expensive outfit. You can still-fish from a boat, from docks, piers, banks, even by wading out into the water. Altogether too many of us fishermen frown on this method of angling as being too simple and not in the realm of our capabilities. We forget that this is the method of fishing, as youngsters, that got us interested in this great sport. Every once in a while we all should try still fishing just to refresh our minds that it is still one of the most relaxing, restful, and satisfying manners of fishing.

STILL-FISHING TACKLE

The tackle is simple, consisting of a long cane pole, a length of line, a nylon leader, a float, and an assortment of hooks and sinkers. In recent years, the telescopic pole of tubular glass fiber has replaced the old familiar cane pole. These new poles, available in lengths from 12 to 16 feet, are convenient for carrying and home storage. They usually have a plastic butt section, a snap-on retaining cap (for telescope storage), and are equipped with a tip top for line tie-on.

A float and a sinker are both used in still fishing with live bait. The float, or bobber, is to keep the live bait from hiding on the bottom and to indicate bites, and the sinker is to keep it from floating near the surface where it won't be seen by a fish. Since panfish prefer shallows, the bait should be presented at a level at which fish are moving—on the bottom or a few inches to several feet above. A sandy bottom calls for bottom-lying bait. On a mossy bottom it should be held a few inches above the moss so that the fish can see it. If the bottom is weedy, the bait must rest higher still. But these are generalizations; the best location for your bait is usually found by trial and error. The height of the bait can be changed by adjusting the float. In some types of still fishing you will not use a bobber—when you are fishing for catfish, for example.

Sinkers may or may not be necessary. In most instances, the weight of the bait itself is sufficient to make it sink to the shallow depths where you are most likely to encounter fish. But where a sinker is needed, use split shot in the smallest possible size. Add just enough of these to carry the line and bait down to the required depth. Place the first shot no less than 18 inches above the lure, the next 8 inches above that, another at 18 inches, and another at 8 inches above it. At no time should the sinker shot be applied in such numbers as to carry the bobber under the water surface. By distributing the shot over a length of the line, you will reduce to a minimum any possible resistance of the bobber to the water.

Lines used in common, everyday cane-pole fishing are almost invariably too heavy. For most still fishing, a 4- to 6-pound test is sufficient. If you use monofilament, you will not need a leader. But for other lines, a 4- to 6-foot

OX or 8/5 nylon leader is ideal. For big, sharp-toothed game fish, it is best to use a wire-snelled hook or a short wire leader to save your fish.

STILL-FISHING TECHNIQUES

The baits used in still fishing are natural ones and usually include worms, minnows, grubs, crickets, grasshoppers, crayfish, hellgrammites, dragon nymphs, small frogs, caddis larvae, and various other insects. Catfish and bullheads, both of which are generally caught by still fishing, prefer any bait with a strong odor—old ripe meat, chicken entrails, etc. To entice a fish to take natural baits, you must present them properly. When using live bait, remember that its big advantage is its life. The bait's effectiveness in attracting fish drops markedly when it dies. For this reason, you should exercise care in placing the bait on your hook, a procedure which can kill it almost immediately. A worm, for example, should be impaled through its posterior position, where it is the thinnest. There are no vital organs here and the worm will stay alive and wriggling if the hook is thrust through only once or twice. If you have trouble losing bait, stab him near the middle, hiding the hook completely. That is, stick the point into him and push him up the shank clear to the eye. Then you can let the point emerge or not, just as you prefer. This method, when you're using a small hook, will make only a slight kink in the middle of the worm. Both ends will be free. Whatever you do, don't thread him on the hook in several spots. It not only kills him, but it balls him up and prevents his looking natural in the water. At times we have found the looping of two or three worms the most effective on days when it was hard to get a bite. Maybe the squirming array of loops and ends makes the fish think that it's the tastiest dish ever offered. Worms can also be used on hooks behind spinners and here the single, straight worm is most effective whether you're casting or trolling the lure.

Good still-fishing spots lie around docks and piers, over submerged stumps, logs, and brush piles, near water dropoffs, deep holes, spring holes and channel cuts, close to big rocks and off rocky shore points, and by lily pads and weed beds. Fish in shallow water near the shore in early morning or early evening and at night; in deep water or at the mouth of a stream or near cold springs, during the heat of the day. Approach each fishing spot quietly to avoid ripples that will warn the fish of your presence. Noise doesn't bother fish, but sudden movement frightens them. When using a boat, drop your anchor about 25 feet from where you expect to try your luck. Allow the boat to rest for several minutes before dropping your line.

In seizing a baited hook, most panfish generally test the bait before taking it. This accounts for the nibbling that will cause a slight, continuous

dipping of the float or bobber. It's a good idea to let the fish take the bait (indicated by the float going under the water) since this deliberation gives him time to get the hook back far enough in his mouth. Then "set" the hook by a slight upward twitch of the tip of the pole or rod. Don't try to jerk the fish all the way out of the water. You may break your line or the rod tip, or jerk the bait right out of the fish's mouth. A short, sharp twitch will do the trick, and if you miss the fish, he may follow the bait and hit again. Play the fish with the give of the pole and hold him on a *tight* line in the water until he is tired. The fish can be reeled in and netted if you are still fishing with a rod and reel, or pulled out of the water if you are using a pole. Further details on holding and landing fish can be found later in this chapter.

In August, according to Cal Johnson, bass can often be still-fished with small green frogs or some crayfish. A can of angleworms or night crawlers will also fill the bill, or a few lively shiner minnows or chubs. Bait your hook with whichever natural bait you select and toss it out behind the boat, permitting the bobber to hold the hook at the correct depth. Now row or paddle around slowly and wait for a nibble. You might get one, and you might not—but that's August bass fishing. Still-fish in a certain spot if you desire, and in the event the hot sun doesn't drive you back to camp you might connect with a lunker bass that happened to stay awake and missed his afternoon siesta.

Some lakes bloom more than others, of course, and any waters that are covered with a scum of greenish vegetation are a pain in the neck to the fisherman. A high wind might clear certain sections of the lake temporarily and the casting of a bait will be possible without reeling in a line covered with sloppy green slime, but even such days are rare occurrences during the month of August. Some rivers may be in better condition than most lakes during August, but our experience has taught us to select other periods for fishing black bass. Frequently a weedless hook and pork strip used in connection with a spinner will turn the trick, especially when fished among the weeds close to the bottoms. There are spots in all lakes that harbor bass that are little known by the average angler. Underwater weed beds are difficult to locate and unless your guide reveals the secret—that is if he knows, himself—you may not be able to find the best spots. It is possible to catch bass in most "fishy" spots when conditions are right, but the fellow who manages to bring in the best catches throughout the season is the angler who has studied the habits of the fish and then governed his angling methods according to the way of the fish, not according to tackle and casting alone. The proper use of fine tackle, to be sure, is an important factor in successful bass fishing, but it is necessary to know the waters and the habits of the fish if the two are to connect.

Casting

In Chapter 4 we discussed the proper techniques of the popular casting methods: bait, spinning, push-button, and fly. Now, let's have a look at getting the fish to take the bait once it has been cast to him.

CASTING LIVE BAIT

The natural baits employed in still fishing can be cast by any of the four methods previously described. One of the major problems of casting live bait is that it easily jars off the hook. To avoid this, use a soft, sweeping cast that eases the bait down into the water. Bait-holder hooks, which have a barb on the shank, are very good for holding worms, crayfish, and insects securely.

The casting of natural baits is a very successful method of taking such game fish as bass, northern pike, lake trout, muskies, pickerel, and walleyes, in addition to panfish. When the spinning, fly, or push-button method of casting is used an unweighted live bait can be cast, allowed to drift down, then retrieved with a soft, fluttery motion. Bait, spinning, and push-button casts can all be made with weighted live bait. To cast the bait easily without "wrap-back" and to get it into the water, fix shot sinkers to your line. A keel swivel can also be used to get the bait down.

When a game fish—especially a bass or a pike—takes your bait, he grabs it without nibbling first. Frequently the bait will lie across his mouth. Nine times out of ten he swims a few yards, then pauses to move the bait so that he can swallow it. Consequently, if you try to set the hook when your float first starts to move away, you'll generally jerk your bait out of the fish's mouth. The best way to prevent this is to let the float move off until it stops, and then to wait until it starts away again before striking. Most of the big fellows that bite will be hooked if you will teach yourself to wait them out this way.

An excellent natural bait for pickerel is made from a strip cut from a yellow perch's belly. Cut so small as to include only the bright red fin and a sliver of flesh, it stays on the hook well and gives the appearance of some fantastic insect leaping out of the water in its efforts to escape. The practiced angler can produce startling aerial effects which are an improvement on nature and will deceive himself if not the fish. When the pickerel strikes, he cuts the surface in a streak, sometimes from 10 feet away, and boils out of the water to take the "fly" at a gulp. The projecting fin makes this lure as "weedless" as any of the manufacturers' devices; and it has the further merit of being adaptable to changes in the season. For it can also be cut into a longer, thinner strip to simulate a frantic minnow and bring deep

feeders to the top after the normal surface fishing has passed. Pork rind, either with or without a spinner, makes a fair sort of understudy to the perch-belly lure; but it lacks that beguiling red fin and won't produce such ardent effects.

You can cast live or natural bait either while onshore or from a boat. Cover the water nearest you first. Then reach out farther gradually. This method is less likely to disturb lurking fish.

If you are on the water, you have two alternatives: you can anchor the boat, cast your bait some distance away, allow it to sink, then slowly work it back, letting it settle occasionally. Or you can "drift-fish," allowing the boat to move unattended as you cast.

A bobber on your line is good for this drift fishing, if you have sufficient area in which the water depth is approximately the same. If not, the bobber can be eliminated. When drifting, first head the boat with the wind so that it will pass over the most likely fishing areas. Then, as the boat drifts along, keep casting directly ahead of it. If the boat is drifting fast, long casts are required so that the bait will sink properly. Keep watching the bobber, and take in line as it slackens from the drift of the boat. If you get a strike, keep taking the slack line until the boat almost reaches the bobber; then—but not before—bring the line taut and set the hook. *Never attempt to set the hook until your line is straight and taut between you and the fish.* Should the line curve, you may have lost the biggest catch of the season.

Before leaving the subject of drifting in a boat we should say one or two words about *float fishing*. For years the Ozark region had a corner on this type float fisherman all over. The type of craft employed is determined by the waters and the season. A canoe is fine for a short float in shallow waters, while for longer trips the John boat, the familiar long flat-bottomed boat of Southern rivers, will carry all the gear necessary for extended camping and provide an excellent fishing platform as well.

Float fishing is one of the more leisurely and relaxing ways to take fish and at the same time fully investigate the potential of a river or big stream. You can spend a couple of hours, a day, a week, or more, depending on the size of the river and the time available to you, on a float trip. The only complicated factor is arranging to be met at the end of the trip, so you don't have to work back against the current. And if you make your arrangements through an outfitter or guide, you won't even have to worry about that.

A variation of both still fishing and bait casting is *skittering*—a popular method of fishing on Southern lakes. Actually, what you do in skittering is to draw the bait, aided maybe by a spinner, across the surface of the water. The commotion attracts the fish, and the bait induces them to take the hook. There's not too much skill required in skittering. It was a natural evolution by some disappointed still fishermen who found the fish feeding on the sur-

face and brought his hook up to meet them. Despite its simplicity, it is a good method for taking pickerel, bass, pike, landlocked salmon, and some panfish.

The usual equipment employed for this operation is a long cane pole, as long as you can handle, a line of about the same length, and a baited hook. The rod is used to cast the bait out to one side of you, and then drawn in an arc, as you swing it from one side to the other. The rod is held up high enough above the water to keep the bait just on the surface, and the speed of the swing varies with the action of the bait. The main object is to cover the greatest possible water area, and so present the hook to the greatest number of fish.

CASTING ARTIFICIAL LURES

In Chapter 3 we went into detail on the types of artificial lures, how to cast them, how they behave. As you will recall, there are only three types of lures: the surface bait; the subsurface type which floats until you begin the retrieve, then dives and wobbles; and the underwater. It's wise to have at least two types in your tackle box. For surface lures, select one with a concave head; it will make a loud gurgle when the line is jerked. Select another with a smaller indentation in the head, or none at all. For diving and wobbling lures, a light-colored one and a dark-colored one should suffice. The same color scheme holds true for the underwater types. A spinner end spoon will round out a beginner's tackle box. The weights of lure and sizes of hooks, of course, will be determined by the action of your rod and the species of fish you're after. Your local tackle dealer can advise you on this, as well as on what design is most popular in the area you plan to fish.

The way the lures are fished is just as important as their selection. Try varying your retrieving speeds and techniques. As a general rule, bass prefer a slow retrieve; pike and pickerel, an erratic, jerky retrieve; and muskie, a fast-moving lure. When casting a surface lure to a likely spot, let it lie motionless for about ten seconds, then twitch it gently; pause again; give another twitch; and so on three or four times. If nothing happens, then reel in; but when the lure is halfway to the boat, let it pause for a second before giving it another twitch. A fish may have followed the lure. The long pause and twitch is likely to prove too much for his curiosity. With surface lures equipped with spinners or flap tails, a very slow retrieve—so slow that you can distinguish the individual blades of the spinner as they turn over—is often desirable. With diving and wobbling lures, the same general rule should be followed, and this applies to the underwater minnows as well. Occasionally jerk the rod sharply to give the lure a darting motion.

As stated in Chapter 3, one of the newer lures developed for bass fishing is the hair or feathered jig. One of the most popular methods of using it is to

bump it along the bottom. To do this from a boat, begin by casting the weighted lure to the water's edge and let the lure sink while slowly tightening the line. When the line is tight, lift the rod tip slightly, pulling the lure off its resting place. But don't reel it in; let it sink again. Take a slow turn on the reel crank to move the lure gently, letting it bounce on the bottom. Keep your line tight to maintain contact at all times. Work the lure along the bottom until it is under the boat. Then reel in the cast again. If you feel anything touch the lure while bumping it along the bottom, hold it there, then strike and set the hook hard.

When fish are feeding, the best method of presenting your lure is to cast from a boat to the shore or to weed beds, then retrieve toward the boat. Always cast beyond the place where you suspect the fish to be, in order not to frighten him. Coming from beyond, and crossing the spot, the bait gives no warning as it would if dropped at close quarters. It will slip into a location with hardly any sound. The rod should be held high to allow only a few feet of line ahead of the lure to be in the water. The less line in the water, the more certain you are of not arousing the suspicions of the fish.

Here's another reason for holding the rod high and using a light line, so that but a few feet of the line are in the water ahead of the lure. Setting of the hook is facilitated, as you have a direct shoot, as it were, from rod to fish. This is *not* possible if the line is fairly heavy and much of it is in the water. Fishing in shallow water differs in this respect from open-water fishing. In the latter, a line admittedly can sink for a portion of its length in the water, since there are no pads or other obstructions. In shallow-water fishing, if the line does sink in the water well ahead of the lure, it will likely project itself under the pads—and thus halt the upward jerk of the line when you are setting the hook. About two times out of three, if your line gets under the pads, you are likely to lose your fish. This is offset if you hold your rod high and allow but a few feet of line between the lure and its point of rising from the water. Then you'll have a straight shoot and your fish is easily hooked.

Northern pike and pickerel don't waste any time in striking a lure. They take it with a rush and fight their demon heads off once they have felt the resistance of the casting line. All members of the pike family—which includes the muskellunge, northern pike, and pickerel—love a lure which glitters. That's why the spoon hook has lived through the years as one of the greatest pike-catchers on record. Spoon hooks, however, are usually trolled, but they can be cast with the bait-casting outfit if the wind isn't blowing too hard. The spoon catches the breeze and retards the speed of the line, all of which causes the reel spool to overrun and the line to backlash. By thumbing the reel carefully, you can control the retarded line, but it naturally takes a certain amount of casting practice to master the conditions.

A muskie will rarely strike a lure in the event the fisherman stops reeling when the fish is following it, but when the lure is kept moving and stirring up plenty of commotion on the surface, the lunge becomes more and more curious and eventually clamps down on the plug with his viselike jaws. It is quite likely that a great many muskellunge have at some time in the past come in contact with the sharp-pointed hooks of an artificial bait. Whether the fish possesses enough intelligence to remember the incident, hence avoiding funny-looking doodads in and upon the waters ever after, is a difficult matter to decide, but it really seems to us that the average muskie is becoming more careful and extremely shy when challenged by a rainbow-colored lure of modern manufacture, which, we must admit, all too often resembles no earthly or aquatic form of life.

Trolling

Trolling, the fly-casters and plug-casters say, is a lazy man's way to fish—something akin to still fishing with bait. Well, we'll agree to a degree, but there's nothing wrong with taking a breather from the often arm-wearying task of working hour after hour with the fly rod, casting rod, or spinning rod. And more to the point is the fact that trolling will many times produce fish during the "off times" of summer fishing in July and August when the fish are deep in cool water. Many a fisherman is forced by business circumstances to take his annual vacation fishing trip during these hot summer months. At such times, the casting must have to give way to trolling and still fishing as the most productive ways to catch fish.

In addition, a few game fish in certain waters are not taken readily by any method other than trolling, except during special and limited periods. Lake trout, for example, are a deep-water fish for most of the year in U.S. latitudes, so you simply must go deep for them. Theoretically you could still-fish for them, if it weren't for the fact that it's almost impossible to locate these rovers in a big lake. Trolling therefore serves two important functions for the angler: it puts his lure down to the depth where the fish are, and it lets him cover a great deal of water to find them. The same is true of other species in summer—landlocked salmon, smallmouth bass, walleyes, pike and many others.

In trolling, a boat must be used, but the kind depends on what is available and on the nature of the water to be fished. Be sure that it is big enough and sturdy enough to meet any situations you may encounter. It should be adequately powered but not overpowered, and it should never be overcrowded. When you are operating the boat, be sure you are careful to avoid heading for another boat, and that your course won't take you too close to swimmers, docking areas, obstructions, or across the line of other anglers.

TROLLING TACKLE

Probably more people do fresh-water trolling with standard bait-casting outfits than with anything else. The modern glass-fiber rod is well adapted to this work, as it will not take a set and, unless badly misused, will not break. The standard bait-casting reel, if loaded to capacity with bait-casting line, is adequate for anything but deep trolling. It is true that you have to hold the handles of your reel or keep a finger on the spool to prevent the line from running, but this is a minor inconvenience.

As in other forms of fishing, small, light lures require light tackle, medium-sized lures call for medium tackle, and heavy lures for heavy tackle. Medium- and medium-heavy-action spinning outfits can also be used for most fresh-water trolling. Heavy fly tackle can also be used in trolling for landlocked salmon and large rainbow and brook trout.

Choosing the right lure is very important when fishing any considerable distance under the surface. You can use different weights and sizes of the same lure to reach different depths, including bumping the bottom, or you can use an assortment of different designs in various weights.

Spoons of the wobbling and darting types are excellent for trolling. Some may be trolled at from slow to high speeds and maintain the desired performance. Others work in a more limited range. You must fish them at a speed best adapted to their action. One can learn these things only through experience with specific lures. There's no cut-and-dried formula to follow.

The larger spinners and spoons are often used for muskies, pike, and lake trout. We prefer a spoon that wobbles or darts to one that spins in the water. The spinners may catch as many fish, but we find them too tiring to troll. We'd rather use a lure that throbs and gives notice that it's working correctly, but doesn't put up much resistance. Spinners pull harder in relation to their size than spoons, and big, round-bladed spinners are an effort to use on light tackle.

Spinners have a tendency to twist a line, so when you are trolling with them, it is usually advisable to add extra swivels. Some spinners twist a line so badly that a rudder-shaped sinker or a plastic keel placed ahead of them will save you much grief.

Once a line gets badly tangled, it is such a chore to untangle it that one is tempted to throw the line away. If a line is twisted but not tangled, take off the line-twisting lure and let the line out carefully behind a fast-moving boat or feed it into a fast current until it unwinds. If the line is tangled and knotted, you need patience, good eyes, and imagination to straighten it. A new line may be the best solution.

Some plugs make fine trolling lures; often they prove better than other artificials. For ease in handling, the plug should come through the water

without offering too much resistance and at the same time show good action. Under most conditions the deep-running type is most useful, but there are times when surface plugs work well also. When trolling on the surface, use a very long line—100 to 150 feet. Go *very* slowly, occasionally giving the lure a series of short, fast jerks so that it pops or otherwise makes a disturbance. Then release the line to let it drift back until it is taut, at which time the jerks should be repeated. Surface-minded fish often respond quite favorably to this trolling technique.

In some areas, only live bait is used by trollers—frogs, minnows, shiners, crickets, hellgrammites, and even worms. Fly fishermen who vary their routine by trolling occasionally find that a highly effective combination is a weighted bucktail streamer, or a small black or white fly, with a bit of pork rind impaled on the hook. Small spoons and spinners worked with a fly rod are also very effective.

What is the best type of trolling line? We prefer to use monofilament with reels to withstand the pressure built up by this type. However, there are many experienced anglers who support braided lines. Both will do a good job if there is a minimum of stretch, if they let the lure sink without having too much belly. Wire or metal-core lines are good for heavy-duty trolling in deep water for lake trout.

TROLLING TECHNIQUES

The beginning troller is often uncertain about the proper speed to use. Experimentation is often the best idea. Some fish like a fast lure, others a slow one. And on some days they want them faster or slower than on others. If you fail to strike at one speed, try varying it. When you hit the taking speed, hold it.

There are certain restrictions on using an outboard for trolling in some areas. Here trollers must use oars or paddles—a back-breaking job, to say the least. However, even if you are willing to ignore the physical effort, it is our opinion that the outboard makes trolling far more productive. Certainly you can cover more water, maneuver your boat more effectively, and fish with greater freedom in different depths of water.

When you are using an outboard motor for trolling, tune it so that it will run smoothly at low speed. Continuous operation at this speed tends to clog spark plugs with carbon deposits. A simple periodic cleaning will save you from motor trouble on the water. To be doubly safe, always carry at least one spare plug in your boat. If your plug shows signs of excessive fouling, ask your dealer for a "hotter" spark type. Cutting down on the ratio of oil to gasoline will also help to prevent fouling.

How deep to troll is another question. Obviously, you must fish where the fish are likely to be. In the summer, lake trout stick to the deep holes where

the water is cold; northerns are to be found near the surface along the edges of weed beds, snags, and reefs. Generally, bass will be near land, where the level they are frequenting touches a reef or the sloping sides of the lake bottom. Landlocked salmon will be where the bait fish are, whether it is near the lake bottom or in open water.

Always avoid weeds or moss on your lure since such encumbrances will frighten the quarry and spoil the lure's action. When you are trolling near the bottom, you should reel in and check to see that the hooks are free of weeds each time there is a tug on your line.

When fish are in 25 feet of water or deeper, it's often difficult to get the lure down near the bottom. The only answer is to put extra weight on your line. Attach a heavy sinker about 18 inches from the end of your line by means of a triangle swivel. The sinker will carry your line to the bottom, but the lure will ride about a foot higher—enough to clear most sunken logs, weeds, and other underwater obstructions, but deep enough to entice the big ones out of hiding. This is a popular rig for lake trout.

Another trolling rig that is often effective is a combination of a deep-running plug and a minnow. The plug, hitched to the line on one corner of a triangle swivel, carries the minnow and spinner into deep water. The minnow and spinner, attached to the third corner of the swivel, fishes the middle depths while the plug combs the bottom. Remember that in trolling you'll be passing over both deep and shallow water. To take advantage of both situations, keep two fishing rigs working—one that is deep-running for open areas and one for use in shallow bays, inlets, and coves. A rod holder attached to the boat is an extra you will find useful. But be sure that the holder is placed where you can reach it quickly and that holds the rod securely. A big fish taking a swipe at a lure can, and often does, go off with the line, rod, and reel as well as the lure. They'll do this despite the fact that only the drag of the click on the reel is holding the line from running out, for, in the first grab, there's the inertia of the reel itself to overcome and often there's enough resistance in this to let a big fish swim off with a valuable trophy.

The time-honored and most successful method of landlocked salmon fishing is by trolling. In the spring you'll troll a streamer fly or small, flashy, wobbling spoon right near the surface, for at that time of year the surface water is cool enough for their comfort and they're on the search for smelt or other bait fish. You'll seldom need a sinker to put the lure or bait down deep in spring trolling. Furthermore, the landlocked shows little interest in a lure that's trolled slowly—as you'd fish for lake trout or walleyes. (Bass and muskies are trolled at the same speed as landlockeds.) He wants plenty of speed in a moving lure; about four to six miles per hour is good. At this speed you won't get much below the surface with any good landlocked lure.

Most landlocked trollers fish two or three rods behind the outboard. A pair of glass fly rods, in rod holders pointing out to about 30 degrees to the line of travel, and a spinning or casting rod pointing directly astern, is a good rig. On the fly rods there will be a couple of streamers of different patterns (or sizes) and on the middle line a small wobbler. It is always a good idea, too, for the lines to be of varying lengths. For example, one fly rod will troll a fly about 40 feet behind, the other about 60 feet. This gives a slight difference in the depth at which the flies will fish. The spoon is often fished on a short line, just behind the wake of the prop. At times landlockeds seem to be attracted by the wake of the prop and will take a fly or lure most readily when it just follows the wake.

In any event, you'll need to do plenty of experimenting no matter where or when you fish for these salmon. Even the old-timers try everything in lure and method when orthodox procedures fail. In some waters the salmon prefer a fly that's fished in a series of long jerks, rather than a straight trolling drag. Some anglers hold the rod and keep the tip twitching, others grip the line just above the reel and jerk the fly to a tempo of about once every two seconds. At times it pays to put a bit of lead on the leader a few feet ahead of the fly to keep it a few inches under the surface. Also, a small spinner ahead of the fly will often do a better job of attracting fish.

When two fishermen are trolling from the same boat, it's wise to start with two totally different types of lures and troll the two lines at different lengths—75 to 100 feet on one, 125 to 150 on the other. This way you'll explore most of the possibilities more quickly. Once you find where the fish are hiding and what they prefer in lures, both rigs can be fished accordingly. Remember, too, not to turn your boat in too tight an arc when two lines are being trolled. Make a big, broad sweep to avoid fouling the lines or having to reel them in.

As soon as you get a strike, stop the boat. If you've been moving with any speed at all, even a couple of miles an hour, the fish is hooked. With the motor shut off or the oars in, you can play the fish and bring him to the net. Now you're in a productive area. Troll through the same spot again, and you'll probably get another strike.

Since you can't mark an "X" on the side of the boat or in the water to locate a productive spot, note landmarks on the shore. A dead tree, a cottage, a tall pine, a hummock of grass, a rock, or notable feature of the shoreline or on a ridge of land in the background will serve to locate you in one direction. The other line of sight, over the bow or stern, will be based on one point toward or from which you are traveling. Once you have these two bearings you'll be able to get back to that same spot. It's worth your while, if you fish those waters only occasionally and they're not thoroughly familiar to you, to keep a notebook of such ranges for future reference. Then

you won't be getting mixed up among the hot spots on various lakes and rivers. You can refer to them any time in the future that you're back in the same territory and save yourself a lot of useless work in finding the fish again.

One of the big advantages of trolling is the amount of territory you can cover. You can work the shoals, edges of weed beds, the shore line, and the deeper waters. Troll systematically—that is, gradually cover all the fishing areas with lures that suit their depths.

Playing and landing fish

There's a great deal of truth in the most frequently heard fish story: the big fish—as well as many of the smaller ones—*do* get away all too often. The real whopper, the fish that you would dearly love to enshrine in the place of honor on your den wall, can give you the slip because in your excitement you fail to set the hook properly when he strikes. Too much slack line, and your fish becomes entangled in weeds and breaks loose. Hold the line too tightly, and when the fish jumps, he can fall on the taut line, snapping the restraining strand. Your catch may flop out of your hands as you attempt to lift him from the water. The cruelest blow of all, of course, is when your well-meaning fishing partner knocks a trophy fish off the hook with an awkward blow of a landing net.

In other words, there are factors involved in catching fish other than just presenting your lure to the fish. They include your ability to hook, to hold, and to handle the fish that strikes your lure.

It must be remembered that each species of fish has certain characteristics and fighting styles that call for special tactics by the angler. The environment of some fish and the manner in which they take the lure can cause additional problems. And the limitations and competence of your tackle should be understood also, if you're to land most of the fish you hook. What might seem like bad luck is very often caused by the angler's lack of familiarity with his tackle. Knowledge of your rod's action and the practical amount of striking power of the rod, line, and leader will determine just how much strain can be allowed in playing the fish. Finally, luck enters the picture. Remember that even experts lose good fish, despite the utmost care.

SETTING THE HOOK

Don't hope to land any decent fish unless you've set the hook properly. As a rule of thumb, it's better to wait a little longer than to set the hook too soon. When you're ready to set the hook, retrieve all of the slack line, bring the rod tip down, and point it toward the fish. Then raise the rod rapidly. Chances are you've hooked your fish.

Setting the hook requires a certain knack which comes only with experi-

ence and practice. Some species—those that grab the lure and run—are easy to hook. Others, which suck it in and lie still or nibble nervously, are often a real problem. For example, catfish generally swallow the bait after a few chews. Carp and suckers hold the bait gently in their soft lips; you should let them mouth it for a while. When they have sucked it in, pull the line tight and bring in your fish. Perch, bluegills, sunfish, and other panfish bite nervously at the bait. These nibblers require a lot of patience and self-control. Many anglers can't wait, and as soon as they feel a series of light pecks, strike back. This jerks the hook away from the fish and loses the bait. It's much better to wait until you feel a strong tug or feel the fish move away from your bait. Then a sharp lift of the rod tip will usually set the hook. You'll learn by experience when the tugs are strong enough for you to strike.

The larger the fish and the larger the hook, the stronger the yank needed. And, confusingly enough, speed in striking back is sometimes essential. For instance, if you're fishing surface lures, you should strike back to set the hook just as soon as the fish hits the lure. If you wait—even for a split second—you may lose your fish. Often the fish will hook itself as it strikes, but the added pull you give will set the hook so that it won't come loose. Even with underwater lures—fish generally hook themselves on these, particularly if you're trolling or retrieving fast—it's wise to give the rod a quick, hard yank. But don't attempt to set the hook in a fish's hard mouth with the tip of the rod—that is, with the rod held high up or out sidewise—for that tip is too flexible to do it consistently. Regardless of whether you're using spinning, bait-casting or fly tackle, keep the tip of your rod pointed pretty well toward your lure; you can work the lure with short flips, never getting the rod to an angle of more than about 45 degrees from it; with a fly rod, you do part of the work by jerking the line with your left hand. Thus, a sudden swing sidewise of your rod throws the strain well back on the heavier part toward the butt, to sink the hook in well; also, you have much more room for a swing if, as often happens, the fish strikes coming toward you. But how can you learn to strike fast enough?

In golf, you're always told to "keep your eye on the ball." In surface fishing for bass, for example, the rule you must obey is similar: "Keep your eye on the lure!" If you're watching it, and wide-awake, you can hardly help jerking your rod sidewise at the very beginning of the strike—you're startled into doing something before you can think, and that's about all that you can do.

Remember, however, that some fish always will get away and some days you won't be able to hook any at all. Fishing would be no fun if this were not the case. At the same time, much of the pleasure lies, not only in trying to land every one you hook, but also in attempting to improve your technique so that you can hook more.

PLAYING THE FISH

The longer you play a fish, the more fun you'll have, and the more exhausted the fish will become; you'll have an easier time landing him if you have thoroughly worn him down with the play. A small fish can be brought in rapidly, but never attempt to hurl him from the water with your rod. Applying too much rod pressure is a good way to get a broken leader or line, or to pull out hooks. But don't go to the other extreme and coddle a fish for fear of losing it. Don't let your fish do everything he likes. You should control him at all times.

The application of the above rule depends a great deal on the species of fish. In the case of the muskie, for example, extreme care must be used in handling the fish after once hooking it. More muskies are lost a minute or two after the strike than at any other period of the operation. The major cause of this failure is to handle them *lightly* enough. Invariably, the average fisherman becomes excited after seeing the big fish poke his racy snout through the waters and as a result he "bears down" on the reel handle, causing the rod to strain dangerously under the pressure and the line to become as taut as a piano wire. If the hooks are well set and the fish not too large, he will come skimming over the waters without apparent effort and the tackle will hold. However, should the muskie be a fair-size one, or in the prize class—one never knows what size the fish that strikes may be—the chances are that the line or rod will break, or the hooks will be torn loose, before the fish is moved very far.

In playing a really tough, heavy fish with a bait-casting outfit, place the butt of your rod into your stomach, possibly hooking it under your belt buckle, and pump and reel. Pumping-and-reeling is the most practical method for fighting strong fish, regardless of the tackle used. To pump a fish, lower your rod tip, reeling fast to keep a tight line, then raise the rod tip smoothly. Repeat the procedure until the fish is coming your way. The slow and steady rod lift allows you to exert maximum force without risk of breaking line or leader. Never attempt to handle a good fish by steady reeling; it doesn't fully utilize the rod's action, and reeling alone will wear you down and prolong the battle unnecessarily.

With bait-casting tackle, you can apply drag by pressing on the reel spool with your left thumb as you retrieve with the right hand. However, when the big one hits and extra drag is needed, use the right thumb also. Be sure that you do not apply too great a pressure. Allow the fish some freedom to run, or you may lose him because of line breakage, or a burned thumb. In playing most fish with casting tackle, you hold the rod away from your body. Toward the end of a fight, when you have the fish coming your way, you place the butt against your stomach to reel and pump. If the

fish runs again, you quickly extend your arms so that the rod will take the strain.

Some of the new free-spooling, bait-casting reels are equipped with star drags. These drags let you quickly master such big fresh-water species as walleyes, lake trout, muskies, and northern pike, as well as some salt-water species, without burning your thumb. Full details on the operation of star drags can be found in Chapter 7.

With a spinning or a push-button reel, the drag is usually adjusted at a point just below the breaking strength of the line or leader. The fish is allowed to run against the tension of the reel. The butt of the rod should be placed under your belt, and you should employ both hands to hold the rod when the fish is making his long run. There are times, however, when the drag should be varied while the fish is being played. For example, in the case of a large trout or salmon running strongly in the current, you may wish a minimum of drag. If the fish is in shallow water ready to be pumped, you can bring the drag back to maximum. These adjustments become an automatic reaction on your part after sufficient experience.

A major point to remember about ultra-light spinning tackle, or the use of standard spinning gear on large fish, is that the stretch in the monofilament line and the mechanism of the reel work in harmony to give the utmost in satisfaction and safety with the fish. But any tackle—and this includes the biggest big-game hoists that are used on the world record catches—has its limit. As you go light, your margin of error must also tighten up.

These points will help you to hold on to the fish that you have on your hook. Set your drag light before the fish strikes, especially when using a lure that is moving, remembering that the hit to a moving lure will exert twice as much pressure as it would had the lure been sitting still. When using a bobber or a bubble, however, use a tighter drag, for they will help to absorb the first smash of a big one, and a strong setting pull-back on the rod is generally required to sink the hook. After the first run, release the drag a bit; when you get the feel of the fish or view its size, you can determine your drag setting. Do not forget to ease up on the drag as the fish gets close to the boat. In fighting your fish, control his run by pressing your forefinger against the lip of the spool. By doing this you can prevent him from turning; by relaxing pressure slightly, permit him to turn as slowly as you wish. This allows you to recover line on the pump-up, to give the fish line if he suddenly asks for it. As a matter of fact, your forefinger is a more sensitive, reliable brake than any mechanical device yet invented. If you use it as such, you can set your brake as lightly as you wish, and thus give yourself an extra margin of safety against sudden, heavy strikes or unexpected snags that could part your line with a hard-set mechanical drag.

Once the fish is hooked, let your rod do the work. A rod works best—

flexing forward under pressure, recovering when the pressure weakens—when it is held nearly vertical. Never point your rod at a fish to play him, but rather keep your rod tip high during most of the tussle. This is especially important when playing a strong, fast fish in shallow water where there are obstructions. Holding the rod high helps to raise the line and keep it free of snags. A fish should not be given anything solid to pull against. When your rod is held nearly vertical, it bucks and bends under the pull and takes most of the strain. But if you reel a fish too close to your rod tip, he'll get a more direct pull and may break away.

When possible, stop a fish from running out too much line. The shorter the line on which the fish is being played, the more truly will you feel the pressure on the terminal. And the shorter the line, the more easily the pressure may be controlled. But there is less cushioning of the sudden shocks; a long line, with its elasticity, takes up the shock of sudden movements much as the resilient rod does. The drag that may fool you as to the strain at the fish's end of your gear can be a factor in your favor if it's understood and used. When a fish is fresh and wild, we like to play him at a little distance and use the cushioning of a moderate amount of line. After he's lost that first edge, we like to keep him in as close as possible. Of course, when you tie into a big northern pike or muskie, there's not much you can do about the amount of line you pay out. Some big fellows take the fight right out of your hands—the only thing you can do is to hang on and hope. In other words, it is necessary to avoid leading a fish like a muskie if he is to be successfully landed. Play him easily and carefully. Permit him to run if he desires, but always hold a fairly taut line and when the fish commences to roll and display the white of his underside, then reel him to the side of the canoe and lift him quickly from the waters with a gaff hook inserted through the gill cover. However, don't let the old warrior fool you. There are times when the fish will play 'possum and permit the angler to reel him without much effort alongside the canoe, then when an attempt is made to insert the gaff into his gills, he suddenly comes to life and causes plenty of trouble and concern before he is finally whipped and landed. Many fine muskies are lost at this point of the game. Purely a display of wits on the part of the fish and a trick which makes one believe that the lunge possesses far greater intelligence—or whatever you might wish to term it—than most fishermen wish to bestow upon him. The more one fishes for muskellunge, the more one realizes that it is very necessary to practice patience and care, reserving plenty of thought for the unexpected antics that always come as surprises during moments when one thinks the lunge has given up the ghost.

A fish that's hooked correctly won't necessarily escape if you give him a little slack line, but it's usually wise to keep it taut. However, slack is some-

times given deliberately when a fish jumps, to prevent him from breaking the line. Lower your rod to an almost horizontal position quickly. This gives the leaping fish less chance to snap your line by falling on it. As soon as he is back in the water, take up the slack by raising your rod tip again to its high position.

In hazard fishing among the obstructions, reel in your fish as fast as possible to prevent it from going deep and snarling up in the pads, reeds, and flags. Once the fish is wound around the pad stems, or submerged in the draggly moss, your chance of taking him out is pretty slim. The ease with which a fish shakes off, when thus getting slack line to work on, is something amazing. For this reason, keep your rod high and reel in fast. Keep the head of the fish so close to the surface, if possible, that you can see the head or jaws. If you thus take the lead away from the fish and reel fast, he will not be able to get into action before it's too late. You take him completely by surprise.

Despite your efforts, a fish will sometimes get into a weed bed or drop down to the bottom and sulk. If you try to haul him in, the line will break and you'll lose your fish. You must sweat it out by slacking off your line to let the fish think he is free. In a few minutes he will move, and you can start battling him again. Or you can try rapping the rod butt, at the same time moving the rod from side to side. This may disturb him enough to provoke more fight.

The sight of your boat may frighten your fish into a last-ditch run, so be ready for it. Let him run again, rather than try to drag him in. He may even dive under the boat—his last-minute attempt for freedom. Should this occur, thrust the rod tip deep into the water and work the line around the end of the boat. Then, with one hand placed beyond the rod grip, lift up on the fish. The straight-up lift will usually bring him to the top. Most boat tangles can be avoided by standing up and reaching around corners with the rod.

And while we're on the subject of boat tangles, let us caution you against allowing aboard anything that may catch your line. Don't permit ropes to drag in the water. If you hook a good fish and are anchored, haul in the anchor immediately if possible. Your fish may run afoul the anchor rope and give you some added problems. Remember that no one plays every fish perfectly. A certain percentage are due to escape.

LANDING THE FISH

Once you've tired your fish, he can be led up to the boat or to shore and landed with a net, by hand, or by gaffing. Use of a net has long been standard for landing trout. It provides the surest method, but it's easy to lose a

good fish, even with a net, if it is used improperly. A wild sweep at a big fish is preliminary to many a story about the one that got away. Actually, the technique of netting a fish is the same, whether you're wading a trout stream or landing a muskie or a king salmon from a boat. Only the size of the net is different. The first step, always, is to play your catch until it's tired. If you keep it working until it begins to tip over on its side occasionally, it won't break your tackle with a last-minute burst of energy. When it's good and tired, submerge your net and lead the fish over it—in other words, bring the fish to the net, not the net to the fish. Hold your fly rod at arm's length over your shoulder so that you won't put such an acute bend in the tip. Or, if you're fishing from a boat, stay back from the scene of operations and let your partner handle the net. The instant your fish is over it, drop the rod tip. This will let its head go down. At the same time, raise the net. The fish will go into it headfirst and be powerless to help itself.

A landing net isn't needed for many fresh-water fish. For example, both largemouth and smallmouth bass have heavy lower lips that serve as built-in landing gear. Put your thumb in the bass's mouth, press down, and lift him out of the water. This lower-jaw hold seems to paralyze the fish—enough so that you can use the grip to unhook the fish without danger of his thrashing a hook into your hand.

All members of the pike family, as well as walleyes, can be handled best by the eye-socket grip. Bring the tired victim alongside the boat and lower your hand gently over its forehead as though you were going to caress it. When you feel the rims of its eye sockets with your thumb and forefinger, pinch them in like the points of ice tongs. This sounds cruel, but it's a very brief cruelty since you will want to kill the fish anyway as soon as it is in the boat. Also, fish have a very elementary nervous system, incapable of feeling pain in those areas. Pressure here is most disheartening to a pike. It will lie still while you remove the hooks—with pliers! Then it's a good idea to tap it on the back of the head with your billy before you lay it down. Otherwise it's likely to do a pretty thorough job of stirring whatever is lying on the bottom of the boat.

The gaff is useful mainly for the largest of fresh-water fish and for most salt-water species. Instead of striking or jabbing at the fish, push the gaff hook into the water under the fish and jerk up sharply against his soft belly, continuing the upward motion with enough force to lift the fish out of water. But, when you gaff a fish, it's the same as dead and you can't release it. Furthermore, even if you intend to keep it, the gaff means an ugly scar and blood all over everything. Nevertheless there are times when one is justified.

To release a fish, follow the steps detailed on page 124.

The fly rod and lake fishing

Many of our so-called stream trout—brown, brook, rainbow, cutthroat, and Dolly Varden—prefer their homes in lakes. This is especially so in our Western lakes. In addition, fly tackle is employed in the taking of lake trout and landlocked salmon.

While trolling is usually quite productive, nymph fishing is the favorite method of taking trout from lakes and ponds. The nymph is cast along the shoreline and along the edges of deep channels, allowed to sink almost to the bottom, then retrieved slowly in long jerks as you strip in line. Fish the nymph right up to the boat, since often a trout will follow the fly until it comes to the top, ready to be lifted clear of the water. If the trout are rising freely, the nymph should be cast over the feeding fish and stripped in quite quickly in short jerks, never sinking far below the surface. Dry and wet flies and natural baits are also employed by anglers seeking stream trout in lakes.

A good spot for trout in a lake is always right where a stream pours its supply of fresh, often cool, water into the larger body. Outlet streams are frequently good places for big trout in the early part of the season, probably because the moving water carries food to the fish, saving them the effort of roving the pond or lake.

Many mountain lakes can be fished from the shore if they're shallow enough to permit you to wade out far enough to get back-cast room. The drop-off is sometimes too abrupt and the banks are usually lined with trees or brush which defeat your casting efforts. However, the two-man rubber raft is a good deal for working the small lakes and you'll find many fine trout ponds that you simply can't fish from shore. You can carry the rubber boat, deflated, in its pack into any spot you can walk to, and fish waters that can't be reached in any other way. This craft is just as valuable to the Western mountain lake angler as the canoe is to the Canadian squaretail fisherman.

For landlocked salmon, the most productive method is trolling, but early morning and evening fly casting at the mouths of incoming streams is usually good. Anchor your boat or canoe within easy casting distance and drop the fly across the flow of current, right where it hits deep water. If there are smelt working upstream, you can cover the following salmon by making repeated casts over the same spot. So long as the salmon are on the move there's no need for you to change position, for the fish will come to you, pass you by, and work upstream. Any good pattern of streamer fly will work under these conditions. Those imitating the smelt are, of course, most generally effective in attracting and taking the landlocked.

Fly fishing for lake trout is similar to fishing for landlocked salmon. The

two fish are near the surface at the same time in the spring and they hit the same flies fished in the same way. Occasionally, however, you will find a concentration of lake trout along a bar or around the mouth of a cold stream, and to the best of our knowledge, concentrations of landlocked salmon never occur except on the spawning runs.

The streamer fly should be given a darting, minnowlike action, but it can be fished more slowly than for salmon. Make your cast and let the fly sink to the required depth. Use 3 or 4 inches of wrap-around sinker on your leader if necessary to take it down. Then raise the rod from 30 to 60 degrees in a deliberate sweep. Lower it at once, and draw in the slack with your left hand. This sweep-pull action usually should be quite slow—from seven to ten cycles per minute. Sometimes it can be done even more slowly with better results. If the slow retrieve doesn't take fish, however, speed it up. If that doesn't work, try the various movements described in the chapter on streamer and bucktail fishing for trout. They all work for lakers at times.

Fly tackle can also be used on bass and panfish. Time was when the purist looked upon fly fishing for these fish as sheer slumming. To use fine trout tackle for such purposes bordered on heresy, in the purist's opinion. Only a few of us, forced by circumstances to resort to consolation angling, took the sport seriously. As we explored its possibilities, we realized we had discovered a Golconda of our own invention. Our words of praise fell, at first, on deaf and hostile ears. Those of us who became ardent addicts literally lengthened the fly season from mid-April until the first snow. We had an abundance of prime sport, too. Here is sound advice on the subject from Harry Botsford.

Some bass fly fishermen firmly believe in a heavier rod, one which will go as much as 6 ounces, and is capable of handling spinners and wind-resistant bass bugs. They have a right to their opinions. Yet their creels are no heavier than those of fishermen who cling to the lightest tackle. The man with the lighter rod obviously has more sport.

Bass-fishing techniques vary somewhat from those used in trout fishing. There are times when bass take a lot of coaxing! Like trout fishing, fly fishing for bass is frequently a matter of trial and error. Bass have their moods, their sulky days when it takes a lot of fly changing to strike the golden formula. Sometimes you can't find the answer. But once you find what bass are taking, you will be able to continue the color and size of fly successfully until the light changes, for they are steady and dependable. This quality serves to endear bass to the fly fisherman who takes them seriously. Trout, as we all know, change their minds and readjust their appetites every quarter of an hour.

Trout are acknowledged aristocrats. Bass are not. This fact, however, is

no excuse for an indifferent casting technique. Above all, bass are smart. If you want good sport, cast as accurately for bass as you would for the wiliest trout. Remember, the bass is just as cunning as any trout. Never underestimate his sagacity. Largemouth fishing, usually on a lake or pond, is best from a boat or canoe. Row quietly; the bass may appear to be bold and careless, but his native shyness is equal to that of the trout. Cast toward and close to weed beds, old stumps, and round lily pads. These are favorite feeding places.

Mr. Bigmouth has some quaint characteristics that are likely to come into sharp focus when you least expect them. His surface smash at a dry fly in quiet water is almost terrifying. The water literally explodes and sometimes the entire gleaming length of the bass is out of water. You must harden yourself, and be ready to strike swiftly, a maneuver that requires a nice sense of timing. He can eject a fly in a split second.

Not infrequently you will find a bass that will, apparently, strike a half-dozen times. Yet, when your wrist flexes in the instinctive rod strike, you don't feel your fish even momentarily. It makes you feel pretty silly and the experience has been known to generate some memorable profanity. Your bass isn't really striking; he is merely trying to drown the fly. If this should happen to you, refrain from striking when the bass jumps and splashes. After he hits the water, raise the tip of your rod and pull the fly under. You will be pleased at how often the bass will move in for the kill. The second you feel that undersurface strike, do your stuff. Delay an instant and you have lost your bass. He's a tricky beggar, the bigmouth. His favorite trick, after being snagged, is to rush the boat and swing under it, hell-bent. To avoid disaster, you will have to move swiftly when the bass adopts this tactic.

He can jump, too, with a spectacular leap, as thrilling as that of a rainbow. Watch out for tricks. This fish has weight, strong fins, and a cunning brain. He is given to sounding, going straight to the bottom, standing squarely on his blunt head and then kicking the devil out of the delicate leader with powerful wallops of his tail. Give line easily when this happens. If you don't, the leader will break, or the vicious tail strokes will tear the fly from the mouth of the bass. We've lost many bass in this manner.

While it's true that bass occasionally can be caught on dry flies, the vast majority are taken on wet flies, streamers, and bugs. The latter, in recent years, have become increasingly popular. These cork, feather, and hair creations made to represent insects, frogs, or mice are deadly attractors when properly employed. Some bugs are designed to make popping sounds as they are twitched through the water but most depend entirely upon the fisherman to impart action to them. This is easily done by manipulation of

the rod tip and the more commotion you make, the greater usually will be your success.

There are two good periods of bug fishing on practically every lake. The first starts when the water warms up enough for the fish to move inshore in the spring, and lasts until the weather gets too hot for their comfort in the summer. The second good period begins when the weather first cools off in the autumn and continues until cold weather. These dates obviously must vary with the latitude, but across the Northern half of the country you ordinarily have the best bug fishing from the first of June to July 10, and again from Labor Day until the middle of October. At night, bug fishing is good throughout the season.

Bass bugging is a sort of cross between dry-fly and plug fishing. To keep from spooking those big and antisocial bass, the idea is to make as *long* a cast as possible to a "fishy"-looking spot. After letting your bug sit tight on the surface a few seconds, you start giving it a quick, short, jerking motion to make it pop and even splash a bit in the water. Then you let it rest once more, twitch it again, and keep right on repeating the cycle. It's amazing how the old mossbacks will pounce on such a lure. They probably see it as a wounded "meal ticket" limping toward the haven of a lily pad or dry land.

Stream fishing for smallmouth is almost precisely like trout fishing. Streams may be larger, but the water will be just as fast. The hazards and obstacles are often larger than encountered in trout fishing. If you think there is no possible comparison between a brook trout and a bass, wait until you snag a 2- or 3-pound smallmouth in fast water. He has agility and strength. Like the trout, he knows how to make that swift current work for him and against you. He knows every hidden snag and how best to take advantage of it. His tenacity, his will to live, will be found to equal that of any trout. He isn't yours until he is netted and safely in the creel.

The deep pools of a fast-water stream are usually paralleled by submerged rocky ledges. Underneath these underwater cliffs are found havens for smallmouth black bass. When the experienced angler spies shoreline rock that rises precipitously from the stream's edge he knows that it is a good place for bronze backs. The small caverns or pockets worn in the sides of the underwater ledges are excellent locations for the bass to station himself, for there he can rest and keep an eagle eye on guard for particles of food that are washed downstream. Small insect larvae, minute crustacea and water bugs float into the pockets, to be snapped up immediately by the waiting bass. The fish leaves his abode on occasions when he sees something of interest floating along a few feet from the pocket. Out he darts, gobbles the morsel, and then swims back to his original stand.

In angling such spots the fisherman should use a wet fly and spinner or any of the small underwater lures. Permit the lure to float naturally down-

stream a foot or two out from the ledge. If the bass sees the lure, it's a ten-to-one shot that you will experience a quick, vicious strike. The fish always swims back to its hiding place after catching a mouthful of natural food. But the prick of the hook may cause him to perform otherwise. Rarely do they swim into the fast water of midstream. The trout seems better equipped to battle the white waters of a fast-flowing stream than the black bass. The latter stays in his rock pocket home of the ledge or in the waters along the shore and in the pools, or at the edge of the fast water—but never directly in the flow of the stream.

Among the artificial lures we prefer for stream fishing are the smallest and lightest bait-casting wobblers. We have found the coal-black plugs ideal for the river bass, and have also taken many on the natural-scale-finished baits, so as to color combination we cannot recommend any particular lure. Perhaps the bronze back is satisfied with the action of the lure and pays no particular attention to the colors. The lure the fisherman is always safe in using when fishing the deep waters along the ledges is a spinner and fly, or spinner and pork strip.

The black bass of the river is not always the smallmouth species, even when taken from the flowing rivers of the North. Streams that have muddy bottoms and weed beds and rushes along the shores are quite likely to produce largemouth black bass. The sluggish streams of the South are typical largemouth bass waters. There are, as we know, many stream fishermen who know how to take bass in the various locations of a stream, but we still feel that many more have still to master this phase of angling in order to be able to catch bass under all conditions and to be able to recognize the most likely-looking locations. The taking of lake bass is perhaps more simple than the catching of river fish, but either place is thrilling enough provided the angler uses lightweight tackle and angles according to the better ethics of the sport.

In almost every area it's easy to find so-called "fished-out" lakes, ponds, and streams—stretches of water that live-bait, plug, and spinner fishermen swear are barren of bass. Don't take their word for it. Purely as an experiment, give these waters a good workout. Some of the biggest creels we have ever taken have resulted from working such water. If bass have once inhabited a certain piece of water, some of them are bound to be left, provided the water isn't contaminated. Many of them will be old pioneers, big, crafty, and cautious. Because there are so few of them to an acre of water they grow fat on the abundant natural food. Go after them with all of the casting skill at your command. Cast carefully. Don't give up. You'll get plenty of action if you are patient and thorough. Bass taken in such waters are usually much larger than those you will take in average, well-fished lakes and streams. You may find some waters where you will be unable to

get a single rise or strike. That doesn't mean there are no bass. You may simply be fishing at the wrong time of day, with the wrong flies and improper technique. Possibly the weather is against you. When you try again, your patience may be richly rewarded.

Bass are not the only fish you can take with a fly rod. Don't overlook the panfish family—including sunfish, bluegills, perch, horned dace, crappie, and even the lowly bullhead. They are called panfish for a good reason. Properly cleaned and intelligently cooked, they are fine table fish—sweet, full of flavor, fit for an epicure.

It's grand sport catching them, too. Early in the morning, late in the afternoon, even in midday, these small chaps are hungry, eager to smack at your flies. For bluegills, sunnies, crappie, and rock bass, use your smallest trout flies. If you have an extra-light rod, the kind the British call a "wand," a fragile affair of about 3 ounces, use it for panfish, by all means. As a rule, your best panfishing will be found in ponds and lakes. If the bait fishermen tell you the waters are barren of panfish, pay scant attention to them. The chances are they'll prove plentiful, if you go after them properly. Watch for the telltale circles that inform you of a feeding fish. Cast toward that dimple in the water, letting the fly light as carefully as if a 5-pound bass were lurking there. Then watch out for a spectacular strike. These fat, hungry fish come all the way out of the water to seize your fly. And they put on a good show. Remember these fellows have tender mouths. Strike gently and bring them into the net with delicate skill. The rewards will be great if you happen to strike a school. This is really consolation fishing at its best, because you can almost count on having a strike with every cast. Incidentally, you should always use a barbless hook on your flies and release the fish you are not keeping.

If the panfish won't take a fly, try a small bass bug, using a dark pattern for bright days and white and colored patterns for dark days. A half-pound sunnie or bluegill will give your rod a fine workout, especially when he turns his broad body sideways and scoots through the water.

Perch? There's plenty of fight in these beautifully marked, plump fish, once you know how to get 'em. We have our best luck on dark days, using a wet fly and a tiny spinner, casting far from shore or from a boat, letting the lure sink deep and bringing it in with short jerks that keep the spinner turning attractively. Perch are seldom surface feeders. You'll have to fish deep for them. But watch out for perch! Once you have a strike, keep your line taut, keep your perch coming toward you. They have an interesting and annoying habit, if you give them the chance, of burying themselves deep in a tangle of bottom weeds and lily roots. Getting them up is a devil of a job and a heavy strain on a light rod. They come in outsizes once in a while, and when they do, reeling them in is a once-in-a-lifetime thrill.

"Don't be so stubborn, dear, let go!"

7

Fishing the ocean's grab bag

Fringing the beaches, sheltered bays, and inlets of the ocean shoreline, or milling about the surface and depths of the far offshore expanses, a great variety and abundance of food and game fishes, large and small, search for their spawning grounds. These hungry hordes offer smashing action on outfits, and in many cases rank high from the epicure's standpoint. Annually tens of thousands of people in North, Central, and South America get their most rousing thrills from matching strength and skill against the power and cunning of the sea's fin-guided population. Along the Atlantic, Pacific, and Gulf of Mexico coastlines you'll see boat- and land-based fishermen of every description plying baits and lures throughout the year.

Part of the fun of fishing is the element of surprise; in salt water nearly anything can happen. You may be fishing for weakfish, expecting fish of around a pound or two, and a 25-pound channel bass may decide to take your bait. Snook of around 5 to 10 pounds are great sport on light tackle, and it takes all the skill you possess to handle them; but when a tarpon of 60 to 70 pounds decides it likes the same lure—brother, you've got thrills, and plenty of them.

Aside from the variety of fish to be caught, one of the outstanding reasons for the popularity of salt-water angling is that it affords you the opportunity of seeking these intrepid fighters during the entire year—day or night. At many places along our rocky and sandy coastlines there are innumerable fish ready to seize your bait or lure regardless of season or tide.

The angler who seeks his sport on the ocean, or on the more placid waters of the bays and inlets of our coasts, has such an unlimited variety of fishing offered him that he always can fit his sport to his pocketbook, to his inclination, and to the time which he has at his disposal. He can spend many weeks and impressive amounts of money in pursuit of marlin, giant tuna, and other big game of the sea; at more moderate expense in money and time he can enjoy the high-powered thrills of sailfish or tarpon fishing; he can spend an off day and an odd dollar or two on fishing for weakfish or stripers. Or he can cast from a sandy beach out into the lashing surf. There is a kind of salt-water angling to suit every mood and pocketbook, and there is good sport in each.

Finding salt-water fish

Ocean tides and currents have a major influence on the outcome of your inshore still fishing, bait and surf casting, fly fishing, and trolling. Not only do they change the depth of beach-line water and the level of river inlet, but they also often alter the contour of the sandy shallows, thus determining the presence and position of the fish and their natural foods. Consequently, there are periods when results will be much more favorable than others, and you must heed time, tides, and bottom conditions to meet with good fortune.

The incoming tide is known as high tide when it is at its crest, and the outgoing becomes low tide when it reaches its maximum retreating level. Each tide runs its course for approximately six hours, so in a full day there are normally two high and two low tides. These are affected more strongly by the moon than by the sun, but there is a reaction to the "pull" of both combined. The lunar or tidal day lasts about fifty minutes longer than the solar day, causing the tides to change later each day. Some days, then, do not have four complete tides. This situation must be considered if you are to be on hand at the particular times when the tides are at their most advantageous, and the fish in their best moods, for your success. Time and tide, you know, wait for no man!

These times may be learned by reading the daily tide tables published in leading newspapers along the seaboard and in almanacs. These are valuable aids, but are not guarantees, of course, that you will make a catch. Temperature, weather, and other elements enter into the problem. You'll find,

for instance, that the trend of the barometer is a deciding factor. Fish stay near bottom and will not respond readily during a falling barometer, but on a rising or high barometer they react in the opposite way. The oxygen content in the water also has much to do with the activity of fish.

Water that is either too cold or too warm will put the quarry in a torpid state. Temperature also governs the depth at which some fish will feed, and instigates their daily travels to and from shore, as well as their seasonal coastwise migrations.

Winds also play a part in the situation. Observations along the northern portion of the Atlantic Coast have revealed that waters of cold temperature may be driven inshore by a persistent southerly wind, sending weakfish, croakers, cod, kingfish, and others into deeper areas. A northeast wind may bring warmer waters close in, while a long siege of stiff west wind usually forces the warm surface water out to sea and lets cold undercurrents wash the bars.

Coincident with the rise and fall of tides are the ocean's currents. These have a strong bearing on the location of fish, and on your ability to "chum" gainfully—dropping over enough ground-up pieces of bait to entice the fish upcurrent to within striking distance of your hook. A tidal current having its origin in the swell and push of the water landward is called the "flood" tide, and the movement of the water outward is the "ebb" tide. When there is no current one way or the other, the water is at "slack" tide.

As you mingle with veteran anglers you also learn that the direction in which the current flows is termed the "set," while the speed at which it moves is the "drift." Where two currents collide, the water boils up into ripples and strong eddies, and this is known as a "tide rip." A sharp change in the depth of water may also cause a tide rip. Your angling efforts at such a place should be well rewarded, for the rips stir up food and generally hold it where the currents are fighting each other, bringing many fish to the banquet.

On a flood tide the fish usually swim inshore on a hunt for eats. Often, then, the most interesting action occurs from about an hour before full flood tide to the turning point, and for an hour after high tide. When the tide is on the ebb, the fish retreat to deeper water at the outer rims of bars, or to channels that furrow the bays. When a tide reverses itself, the change in the flow of water disturbs tiny plant and animal life on the bottom, sets the bait fish moving, and encourages game species to crowd in and reap an ample harvest. You should be on deck then, for the sport is fast and furious.

Like their sweet-water cousins, salt-seasoned fish have a preference for types of bottom over which to settle—coral, sandy, rocky, muddy, weedy, almost anything except slimy. This means that your catches will be improved by learning where these stretches exist, and at what depths. There

are mud and sand flats which are completely out of water during low tide, but which are excellent market places in high tide. You need to know thoroughly the sections you will try, or hire a guide.

A good plan is to get hold of a standard U.S. Coast and Geodetic Survey Chart of each region you expect to visit. This may be obtained from the Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. These charts show not only the types of ground, but also the depths and positions of shoals, holes, and banks.

Generally, success comes from fishing just beyond the edge of a shoal or bank. Knowledge of these formations is especially useful when you angle for the many bottom-feeding species.

While prospecting the shallows, take careful note of the underwater vegetation. Plant life provides succulent "chow" for the finsters, and variations in feed mean differences in the game fish to be taken. Rockweed, for instance, is one of the most prevalent of all seaweeds infesting the Atlantic and Pacific shorelines, and its thick growth is a rich haven for all manner of tiny aquatic animals. This attracts famished schools of pollack, common cod, and cunners to feast in these beds.

Kelp will be found along sandy bottoms, or attached to rocks. Countless small fish seek refuge in kelp, but tautog, striped bass, and others ferret them out. The same applies to eelgrass, for any luscious morsel that attempts to hide among the clumps is snatched by prowling bluefish, flounders, striped bass, or tautog. Among seaweeds lurk the choice tidbits of inshore game fish, so it pays not to overlook this lucrative source when still fishing, trolling, or casting.

Salt-water still fishing

As in fresh-water fishing, most salt-water anglers caught their first fish by bottom fishing, and the majority of these anglers continue to do that type of fishing. They probably outnumber all the other salt-water anglers combined.

Bottom fishermen are lucky; they can practice their sport almost anywhere. Along both coasts and the Gulf of Mexico, many open-party boats leave daily from various ports for bottom-fishing trips. They usually charge from $3 to $10 per person, often with bait supplied as part of the fare. Some of the boats rent you tackle, sell soft drinks, coffee, and sandwiches. No reservations are required. You just walk on board and find a spot. Some of these boats can also be rented for the day by groups or organizations.

Most bottom fishermen go out in rowboats or skiffs, either their own or those rented from one of the many boat stations dotting our bays and inlets. Many of these stations handle bait, tackle, and refreshments, and some even rent outboard motors.

Piers, docks, and bulkheads are favorite locations for bottom fishing. Some of these extend into the ocean while others are situated in bays and inlets. Many piers offer free fishing, but others charge you anywhere from 25 cents to $2 for fishing privileges. Tackle can be bought or rented, and on many of these piers you can find such added attractions as good food, music, dancing, TV, swimming, etc. Docks, piers, and bulkheads are wonderful spots for your family fishing trip; they are safe, dry, and comfortable —and generally productive.

The tackle you use in bottom fishing varies, and includes anything from hand lines, bait-casting and spinning gear to elaborate and expensive big-game tackle. The majority of the bottom anglers fishing for smaller fish in shallow waters use the so-called bay, weakfish, or flounder rods. These have a one-piece tip section and a short detachable butt. The over-all length usually runs 5 to 7 feet, but they are lighter and more limber than the boat rods. The so-called boat rods usually come in two sections, but can be had in one piece. They range, as a rule, from 5 feet, 2 inches to 6 feet, 6 inches in over-all length and most are made of tubular glass fiber. Boat rods are good for general all-round bottom fishing in deep water, and can be used in bays and similar inshore locations. The heavier trolling or big-game rods are also used occasionally in bottom fishing for big fish such as amber jack, jewfish, rays, and sharks.

The reels used with the boat or bay rods just mentioned run anywhere from 100- to 300-yard size. A free-spool, star-drag model is easier to handle than a single-action reel. Of course, with the trolling or big-game rods, you use the larger salt-water reels which match the rod and the fishing. The star drag and nonreversing crank (most good salt-water reels have these features) let you become the master of a fighting fish quickly without barking your knuckles on the revolving crank or burning your thumb on the spool. The drag gradually slows down the run of a big fish and prevents the line from overrunning on the spool. You simply set the star drag so that a light tension is applied as a fish takes out line. The tension used is usually set considerably below the breaking load of the line. Turning the drag toward you (counterclockwise when the reel is held in a fishing position) lessens the tension; turning it toward the fish, or away from you, increases the tension.

Most experienced salt-water anglers adjust the star drag to the medium position. In this way, they are always in position to start winding in line, and to increase or decrease tension according to the pull of the fish, by simply turning the drag. It's a good idea to make gradual tension changes; a sudden change is likely to result in a broken line—and a lost fish. When a fish insists on more line, give it to him, keeping your line taut at all times.

As the fish begins to tire, you'll find that by "pumping" on your rod you can gradually pick up the slack line.

A 12-to-20-pound test nylon line is sufficient for average conditions, but 25-to-30-pound test is in order for the heavier, hard-fighting, salt-water fish. Monofilament lines of 12-to-30-pound test are also popular on reels designed for this type of line. Where heavier lines are desired, the squidding type may be employed. These lines come in pound test ranging from 12 to 108. Actually, the size you employ depends mostly on the size of the fish you're after, the weight sinkers used, the depth of water, and the obstructions you are likely to encounter.

Many types of sinkers are used in bottom fishing. Each shape and size is suited for a particular kind of fishing and certain conditions. The lightest sinkers are split-shot and clincher types which you squeeze on anywhere along your line or leader. They are good when used with floats or bobbers to keep the bait down in a tide or current. The egg-, oval-, or almond-shaped sinkers which have a hole running through the center are good for wary fish. The line or leader slides through this hole when a fish bites and you can feel the lightest nibble.

One of the most popular sinkers for bottom fishing is the "bank" type. Depending on its size, it can be used in shallow or deep water. Another type commonly used is the pyramid sinker, which is used in surf fishing on sandy bottoms.

The type and weight of the sinker you use will depend on the strength of the tide or current, the thickness of your line, depth of water, and the kind of bottom being fished. It is a good idea to carry various sizes and shapes, especially when you're fishing in new territory.

Probably your most important item of tackle in bottom fishing is the hook. Although you can catch a wide variety of salt-water fish on one kind of hook, each design is best suited for certain species. Check with your local bait dealer as to which is best or use the chart on page 203.

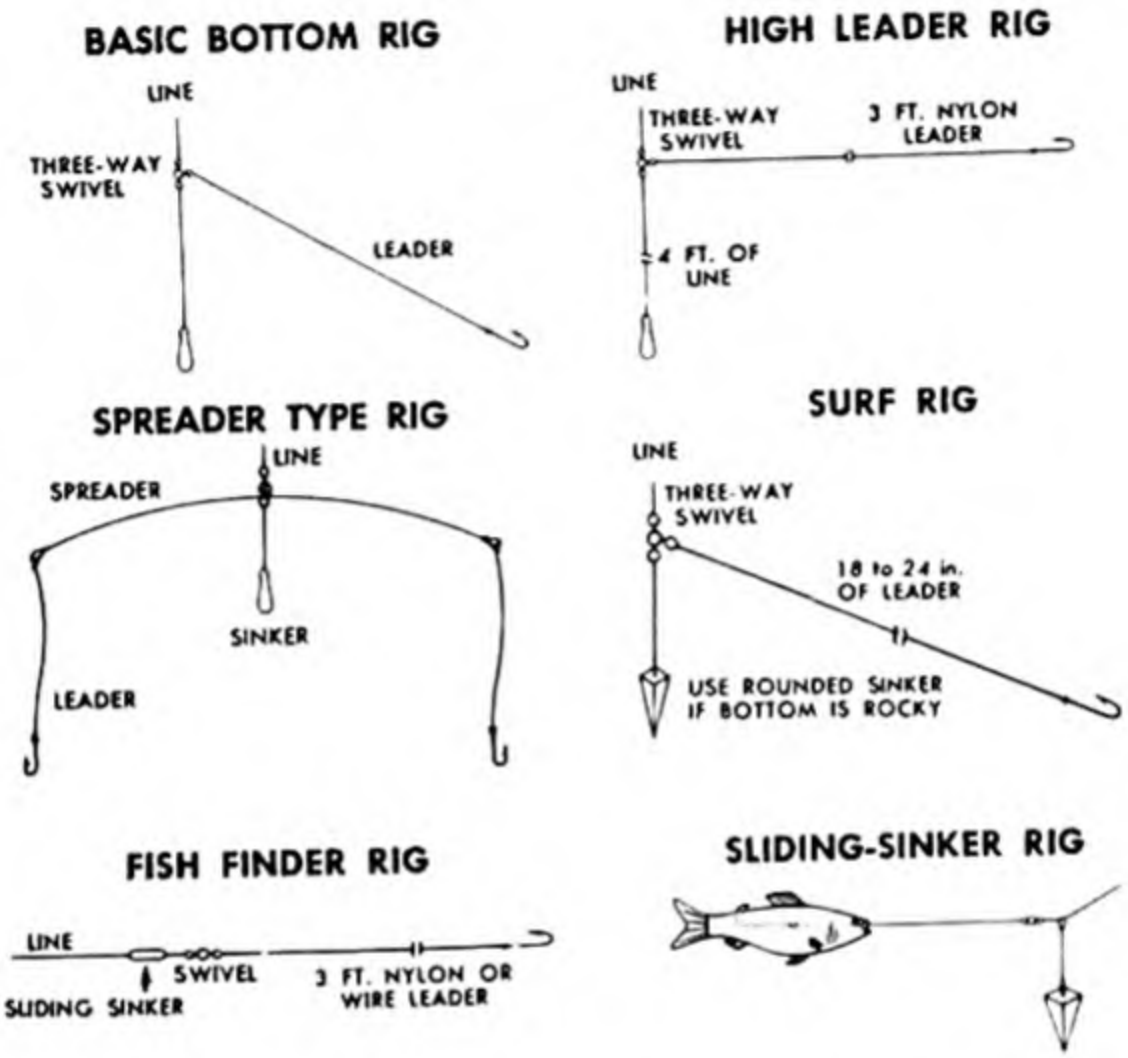
The bottom rig that's usually used is a simple affair, consisting of a three-way swivel, to which a short length of line is attached with the sinker. One of the other loops is attached to the leader and hook, and the third is attached to the main line. Often a pair of three-way swivels is attached to the main line, and two hooks are used.

For bottom feeders such as flounders, tautog, or blackfish, porgies and similar fish, the leaders or snells are short and are tied just above the sinker. For game fish and other species which often feed off the bottom, such as weakfish, bluefish, and stripers, a longer 3- or 4-foot leader is used, and this can be tied 2 or 3 feet from the sinker.

For flounders, a spreader is often used. The spreader holds two hooks which lie on the bottom. In the surf, a fish-finder is a popular rig. It per-

mits your line to slide through a ring when a fish bites, and enables you to feel the pull directly without dragging the sinker. There are many other variations of the rigs above, and some are illustrated here.

In bottom fishing, natural baits such as sea worms, clams, squid, sand eels, menhaden, killifish, minnows, crabs, and shrimp are used. Obviously, then, the wise angler is one who knows his natural baits, how they are caught or obtained, how they are hooked and rigged, and how they are presented and "worked."



Most coastal tackle stores and boat liveries carry bait. The kind chosen will depend mostly on the fish sought and the bait which produces best in that area. (General information on this can be found on pages 203 to 206.) It is always a good idea to find out which bait did the business yesterday. If in doubt, take along several kinds.

Bottom fish are fairly easy to find once you know the type of bottom, depth of water, and food they prefer. Unlike the high-speed, wandering game fish, bottom fish usually tend to stay put in one area for long periods of time. And unlike game fish, which usually chase bait fish, the bottom fish feed mostly on crabs, clams, sea worms, shrimp, and similar slow-moving sea creatures which tend to congregate or hide in a small area.

Naturally, if you go fishing on an open-party boat, or with experienced friends, you will depend on their knowledge to put you over fish. But if you are on your own, you have to become familiar with the area. One of the quickest ways to do this, as previously stated, is to buy a U.S. Coast and Geodetic Survey Chart of the area you plan to fish.

Bottom fish usually congregate around wrecks, rocks, beds of oysters, mussels or clams, reefs, banks, wharves, and pilings. Most of these are shown on the government charts just mentioned. You can often pinpoint these spots by sounding or drifting with the wind and current with a baited line overboard. When you start getting bites, you can anchor and fish that area. Along our coasts it's usually a simple matter to locate the best bottom-fishing spots during the height of the season. You'll see boats of all sizes and shapes anchored over the best spots. Go ahead and anchor nearby as long as you don't crowd or interfere with the other boats.

There is much more to still fishing than just casting or dangling your line overboard and waiting for a strike. While fishing for many inshore species around rocks, pilings, and other obstructions there are times when you want your bait to stay put in one place. But after dropping your baited hook overboard, bounce your sinker by raising your line or pole every once in a while to make sure that it is right on the bottom where it should be. If the current moves it away or lifts it from the bottom, add a little more lead. Check your bait occasionally, too, just to be certain that some bait thief or crab has not stolen it and left you with a naked hook. Needless to say, bare hooks do not catch fish. Do not be impatient. The prime virtue of any angler is patience. But if after a reasonable time you have had no promising bites, pull up anchor and move to another spot a few hundred feet away. On a pier, dock, or bridge, moving a few feet from your original location may change your luck. Fish are unpredictable creatures; sometimes you have to offer them their food right at their doorstep. Some days you can make a good catch without moving from one spot; other times you may have to shift your location several times.

A fairly strong tide or current is helpful in moving your bait around. For example, when you let your line down, wait until you feel it strike bottom, and let it lie there for a short while. Then raise your rod tip and lower it, letting out some line. The tide should carry your bait and sinker farther away from your location. Then, after allowing the bait to remain still a few minutes, raise and lower your rod tip again, letting out more line. Repeat this procedure until your bait and sinker have been taken a good distance off. Then reel in, check your bait, and do the same thing over again. For best results, use the lightest sinker that will hold bottom. Should the tide start to run faster and you cannot hold the bottom, change to a heavier sinker. But if the tide slackens, change back to a lighter one. The advantages in making your bait move with the tide are that it makes the bait appear alive and prevents crabs from getting it. Besides, this way you cover more territory.

Setting the hook in a bottom fish requires a certain knack which comes only with experience and practice. Some species—those that grab the bait,

swallow it, and run—are easy to hook. Others, which suck it in and lie still or nibble nervously, are often a problem. The sucking fish, such as flounders, require lifting the rod tip at regular intervals to find out if they have taken the bait. The nibblers require a lot of patience and self-control. Many anglers cannot wait, and as soon as they feel a series of light pecks, they strike back. This jerks the hook away from the fish and loses the bait. It is much better to wait until you feel a strong tug or feel the fish move away with your bait. Then a sharp lift of the rod tip will usually set the hook. A good rule to follow when the fish takes your bait is not to try to set the hook until he attempts to run with it. Give him his head, but keep the line taut.

Inshore anglers are often troubled by bait-stealers such as blowfish, burgalls, sea robins, oyster crackers, small sharks, and rays. These are small fish which nibble at the bait and usually succeed in cleaning the hooks. It does not pay to strike and try to hook these bait thieves. One possible exception is the blowfish, ugly-looking but considered a delicacy and sold under such names as fish fingers, sea squab, chicken leg, and the like. But catching blowfish endlessly is no fun when you are bottom fishing.

To stop bait stealing, use bigger baits so that it takes longer to clean the hook, or use tougher baits which are not stolen so readily. Baits such as conches, crabs, sea snails, and whelks are tough and stay on the hook longer. Another trick is to use the softer and more attractive baits in combination with the tougher ones. Thus, if the softer bait is stolen, you still have some bait left on the hook and will not have to reel in your line quite so often.

The method of playing and landing salt-water fish in still fishing is very much the same as playing and landing fresh-water lake species (see Chapter 6).

Salt-water trolling

If a check were made on the method used in catching the world's record salt-water fish, probably a majority would be found to be victims of trolling. And there's good reason for the efficiency of trolling. A trolled lure works full time. There are no pauses while the lure is cast, or reeled through shallow or unproductive water, as in surf fishing. Also, the action is continuous. Many fish are apt to follow a lure a long distance before striking. A cast lure is likely to be plucked from the water just as the fish decides to hit. Not so with the trolled lure.

In the main, your trolling will be done past the offshore banks and the rims of inshore bars, or along the inlets and tidal rivers. These are the pantry places where fish congregate. Such pelagic or open-ocean species as tuna, pollack, marlin, and amberjack may be taken from the banks, while

mackerel, weakfish, bluefish, striped bass, tarpon, and others provide sport nearer land.

It's evident, then, that you need to know the whereabouts of the deep drop-offs, bars, channels, holes, rock piles, coral reefs, and similar formations, together with the habits of the fish you seek, in order to meet with consistent success. Such groundwork is just as important in salt- as in freshwater fishing.

In your search for game, you'll often be guided to the right spots by seeing schools of fish breaking water, or by observing the movements of sea gulls. These gulls are one of the best and most reliable sources of locating fish, inasmuch as they hover over large schools, cry excitedly, and swoop down to snatch up fin-propelled meals. They'll tip you off every time. But when feeding fish are sighted, you must avoid trolling right through a group, or you will frighten them into the depths. Your best plan of attack is to circle and work your line through the edges. This will give you the longest period of action.

Ocean trolling offers an excellent chance to experiment with a mixture of lures, varying speeds, lengths of line, and different levels. You soon learn that velocity strongly affects your results. Some fish will dart after a fast-moving lure while others accept only a slow-traveling one. The type of attractor used also influences the trolling rate. Your aim, at all events, should be to make the artificial bait appear as natural and lifelike as possible. When you have tested your skill catching bluefish and school tuna (the smaller specimens of the huge bluefin tuna), you'll find that, with a feather jig at least, a fast pace is ordinarily the best. Striped bass are more susceptible to a lure trolled very slowly, especially if you are trailing a spinner and sea-worm combination. Pollack are inclined to be somewhat unpredictable. One day they may be ravenous for a spinner and pork-rind strip worked along in leisurely manner, and another time they may notice only a metal squid that moves briskly.

Trials have shown that sometimes mackerel are fond of a small jig trolled at a definite speed—perhaps only 5 miles per hour—which is arrived at by slight variations of the rate until the best results are obtained. Just as in trolling for lake trout or landlocked salmon, the speed at which the boat moves governs the position of the lure, and in this way you find the level where the fish are feeding. Frequently, when trolling in shallow water, you'll need to pay out a longer line (around 100 or 150 feet) than when covering deep water offshore. This depends upon the kind of fish, of course, since some are more wary than others, or customarily stay at or far below the surface. School tuna, for instance, will occasionally come right up into the propeller wash of the boat, within a dozen feet, to nab a feather jig.

Most fish will hook themselves securely when they strike on a trolling

outfit, since they have to seize the bait quickly. But when angling for billfish—marlin, sailfish, swordfish—you have to give powerful jerks two or three times to drive the hook home.

When you've connected with a fish, it may be necessary to slow the boat, or even stop, while fighting your opponent. But that is a matter for the captain to watch, if you are on a charter boat. This need is greatest when employing light tackle, for the principal object is to get as much action and sport out of the tussle as you can. If possible, never let a fish get under or ahead of the boat.

While waiting for a strike, your rod should be held with the tip extending slightly upward and pointing toward the stern of the boat; never at right angles. If you wish to rest, and place your rod in the boat's rod holder, tighten the star drag on the reel just enough so that if a fish grabs hold, the hook will pierce his jaws. In most cases, all you have to do is clamp your thumb down on the leather thumbstall for a few moments, and the hook will become imbedded. Be careful, though, not to screw the brake drag too tightly, or you will either cause the line to break when a fish hits suddenly or force the hook out of his mouth. Some of these gamesters are leaping, head-shaking giants, and the added tension on the line will serve to twist out the hook or pull it clean through a fish's jaw.

If you're a novice, in your excitement after the hook is set you are apt to "freeze up" on the reel and not give the fish sufficient line to run his full course. This is a risky practice. Your victim should be given plenty of line with which to work off his steam on that first, long, violent rush, and you should not hurry him toward the boat. An exception to this is when you troll in shallow water near rocks, or over coral reefs, and your fish fights along the bottom. Here you must exert enough strain to prevent him from wrapping the line around a rock, or from darting into a cavern in the coral.

Wear your catchee to gentle submission before bringing him too close, and be sure to keep your rod tip elevated while playing him. Do not point the tip directly toward the fish; the rod must carry its share of the burden. Above almost everything else, do your best *never to allow the line to go slack*. If you do, in most cases you're sunk—or at least the fish sinks and you are left holding the empty hook. Sometimes a thrashing, buckling warrior decoys his mates into the field of battle, prompting them to attack the lines of your anxious companions. It's a good idea, then, to delay reeling too soon after one strikes, so as to give your partners a better chance to get a crack at the fun. When no action occurs for anyone, it is advisable to inspect your hook occasionally to make sure there is no grass or seaweed clinging to it.

The most practical system for retrieving line, when the heavy boys are attached, is to "pump" it in. After a fish has made his first two or three

strenuous runs, and is apparently weakening or has gone to the depths to sulk, you raise the rod tip to just past the perpendicular, then quickly lower it and reel madly at the same instant in order not to let the line slack. Then you strain upward on the rod again, and go through the same performance, keeping up this pumping process until your fish is near or speeds away on another rampage.

If you want your captives to be given proper credit in fishing contests or "rodeos," or to compete for world records, you must manage the fish yourself, unaided by anyone touching the rod or line, until he is close enough that the captain or his mate or your fishing partner can reach the leader and bring him aboard. And you have to use regulation tackle only (see Chapter 8).

At any event, if you attempt to haul in a fish yourself, always be wary of a last-moment plunge and staff race, and lift the quarry over the stern, or near it, by means of a net or gaff. Don't ever try to raise one by the line. If the fish is heavy and hooked solidly, your partner can pull it over the side by the leader.

When you have received a strike, or have hauled in a fish, it is advisable to troll again past that spot in the same direction as you were going when the fish made himself known. The chances are that other specimens are nearby, and they will be headed in the direction in which the smaller bait fish are moving—the way your lure was traveling when the game fish struck. It is important to troll in the same direction, and at the same depth, each time when you have come upon a school of hungry foragers.

In salt-water trolling, then, some of your main considerations are to be familiar with the physical features of the bottom, to watch the sea gulls for signs of feeding fish, adapt your outfits to the depth of water and species sought, and let your fish run and fight until completely spent. You should also guard against slack line, keep your line moving, impart lifelike action to the bait, skirt the edges of surfacing fish, and hit for the shore when high winds, strong currents, or lashing waves make your course too dangerous for reasonable safety.

Drifting techniques

Casting lures from a drifting boat can provide some of the fastest, most thrilling action in salt-water fishing. You not only can have a lot of fun, but you often catch more fish than by trolling or angling at anchor. This is especially true when fish are feeding on the surface in flat, calm water. But a boat drifting quietly with the tide can sneak up on them without disturbance. Another big advantage of drift fishing in the ocean is that more area is covered than when fishing at anchor. As the boat moves over new fishing

grounds, you are continually presenting lures to new fish. By covering more territory, you're more likely to run into a school of hungry fish.

In Southern waters such as Florida's, there is a wide variety of saltwater species which can be taken by drift casting. Spotted weakfish or sea trout, for example, can be found almost everywhere in this area—in the open ocean, in the Gulf of Mexico, or along the surf, inlets, and tidal rivers. But the best places for drift casting are the shallow flats with underwater grass beds where shrimp are plentiful. Here you can drift and cast such lures as bucktail jigs, small spoons, and popping plugs.

Another popular Florida fish which can be caught by drift casting, according to Hart Stilwell, is the snook. Snook hit a lure with a jolt and often splash around on the surface. Since these fish like to lie under mangrove tree roots near shore, drifting and casting into such spots may produce a strike.

Still another Southern fish made to order for the drift fisherman is the celebrated tarpon. These silvery leapers can be seen rolling on the surface of the water in the inlets or passes, along the beaches, in bays and rivers. When tarpon are spotted, your boat should be brought within casting distance and allowed to drift. Try to cast your lure a few feet ahead of the nearest tarpon you see. Tarpon are not usually feeding at such times and often refuse to hit a lure. But persistence often pays off. If you keep casting with different lures, the fish may grab one of them. Even if a tarpon does take the lure, there's little guarantee that you'll have him for long. Because they have tough jaws and mouths, hooks rarely stay in very long. Still, it's a thrill even to lose a big tarpon after he makes a jump or two. And at times, tarpon have been hooked and boated on such lures as plugs, spoons, and jigs.

For more fast, exciting fishing in Southern waters, try your luck on Spanish mackerel, jack crevallé and blue runners. These fish often chase small bait fish on the surface and create quite a commotion. At such times, race your boat to the scene and make a wide circle upwind above the feeding fish. Then cut your motor. The boat will drift toward the fish and you can cast small spoons and jigs into the school. You have to work fast with these fish. They move quickly and if they go down and reappear in another spot, you have to start your motor again and race to the new area.

In North Atlantic waters, there are other fish which can be caught by the drift caster. Included is the ever popular striped bass which is often seen breaking the surface in the surf, inlets, bays, and rivers. Here you can cast into them with surface popping plugs, underwater plugs, spoons, metal squids, and jigs. When the fish aren't showing, try drifting in front of rock jetties and casting toward the rocks. The same thing can be done along rocky shores, where you can cast into coves, toward rocky points, and around partly submerged boulders.

Another fish which provides top sport for the drift caster is the bluefish. They often come up and chase smaller fish to the surface. At such times, popping plugs, spoons, and small metal squids will often take them. Together with the blues, you will often find bonito feeding on the bait fish. They go for bucktail jigs which are cast and reeled very fast. The bluefish, bonito, and the false albacore can also be caught by chumming along with ground menhaden while drifting. This attracts the fish up to the boat, where they can usually be caught on artificial lures or natural baits such as chunks of butterfish.

Although most drift casting is for game fish feeding on or near the surface, you can also take many so-called "bottom" fish by drifting. Instead of actually sighting the fish and casting into them, you fish more or less blindly. The best lures for this work are diamond jigs and bucktail jigs. These are cast out about 50 or 100 feet from the boat and allowed to sink. When you feel the lure hit bottom, you raise the rod tip sharply and then let it fall back again.

A variation of this technique is to simply let your jig sink to the bottom under the boat and then bounce it up and down on the bottom. When it stops or seems to get caught, you either are hung up on the bottom or have hooked a fish. If it's a fish, you'll soon feel the pulsating surges on your rod. Naturally you lose many lures in this manner of drift fishing, so bring along plenty of diamond or bucktail jigs. Jigging like this in a drifting boat can account for such fish as porgies, snappers, groupers, sea bass, grunt, fluke or summer flounder, and many others.

Jigging is also a time-honored method of fishing for such game as weakfish, mackerel, striped bass, and bluefish. As a matter of fact, jigging for blues in fast rips is one of the most productive forms of bluefishing. In this method, regardless of the game species, the quarry is located by drifting the boat over deep holes and channels. In inlets and shallow water, small metal jigs—1 ounce or less—with a high shine are baited with worms or a strip of squid, or are left bare. In deeper waters, a heavy diamond jig is required. The line is stripped off the reel until the lure reaches the bottom. Then, with the boat drifting, the lure is "jigged" so that it bounces or dances through the water in a skipping motion a few feet off the bottom. This is accomplished by raising and lowering your rod's tip. If you get no strikes at this level, repeat the procedure, but this time do the jigging a few feet higher; continue moving upward in the water until you connect. You will ultimately locate your quarry at whatever level they are feeding. Mark the spot where the first fish hits, and remember how much line was out. Return to the spot and anchor (this is a good idea whenever you are drifting), jig at the same depth, and the chances are you will be working in a school. Where there is one fish there are usually plenty more.

The main requirement when drift fishing is that there be some tide or current or a moderate wind to move the boat along. If the tide is too slack or there is little or no wind, drift fishing usually doesn't produce results. On the other hand, too strong a tide or current or wind is not very favorable for drift casting. Under such conditions, you'll be better off if you anchor and fish in one spot. Sometimes you can find a spot with a slower current or less wind, as on the lee side of an island.

Surf fishing

You plant your booted feet firmly in the white sand and watch the surf breaking out ahead, suddenly lashing in and boiling white around you; then the long cast, the strike, and the exciting play. If your luck is in, you'll probably come walking back out of the surf foam with the fine spray in your nostrils and a striped bass, a channel bass, a red drum, a pompano, or a weakfish in your hand.

Surf fishing, like all other types used in salt water, is grab-bag fishing. You never know what is coming out of the sea. It could be any of a dozen fighting, excellent-tasting fish, or it could be something deadly and dangerous, like a sting ray. But for the fisherman who finds still fishing, trolling, and boat fishing too tame and too slow, surf fishing is the answer. Action is the constant keynote. Naturally enough, the old fisherman's standard piece of equipment, luck, is needed, but just as necessary are method and manner.

SURF-CASTING TACKLE

We would say the most important part of your surf-casting equipment is your reel. Here you'll have a choice of two types: conventional, revolving-spool, multiplying reel; and open-faced spinning reel.

For the real dyed-in-the-wool surf fisherman the former is the only choice. Don't buy, however, a hunk of junk. Put your money in a good reel, or forget the whole thing. The poorly constructed reel that you may buy for a few dollars will take all the fun out of surf fishing and will cause trouble in backlashes and grotesquely tangled lines. In our minds the best surf reels should contain such features as ball bearings, star drag, free spool for casting, wide spool, multiplying ratio of *less* than three to one, and a convenient take-apart design which will enable you to clean your reel easily. Some also have reel clamps, which enable you to secure your reel better to the rod.

With present-day surfmen it's a toss-up between braided nylon and monofilament lines. (Many old-timers still prefer the linen cuttyhunk lines.) Both perform admirably with a conventional reel, and sizes ranging from 27-to-45-pound test are popular, with 36-pound test being accepted average

for all-round work. Most conventional surf reels will hold approximately 200 to 250 yards of 36-pound test line.

Many newcomers to surf casting find that they can become proficient casters a great deal quicker with a spinning reel than with the conventional type. In selecting an opened-face surf spinning reel there are several things you should look for. It should have a line capacity from 300 to 350 yards of 15-pound test monofilament line. Although you'll never use this much, even on the biggest fish you might encounter, a reel of this size will have a larger spool, which permits you to make longer casts with less effort. The large spool, with its wide diameter, also enables you to retrieve faster. This is often helpful when retrieving various lures. The reel should be a powerful, smooth-working drag that is easily adjusted. Another must is a strong bail, with a long-wearing guideline. A comfortable handle helps, and the anti-reverse control should be conveniently located.

As to line, monofilament fills the bill nicely, since it's smooth and long-wearing. When selecting a line, purchase brands which are known to have as little stretch as possible. Although some surfmen use 12-pound test monofilament, we'd suggest 15-pound line, as it will comfortably handle most fish. Above 20-pound test, mono is difficult to cast due to its thicker diameter and stiffer nature.

Surf rods usually average 9 to 11 feet. This length serves a twofold purpose: it gives you power to cast, and enables you to hold your line high in the air, above the crashing breakers. Most surf rods are equipped with butts (handles) that range from 26 to 30 inches in length. To determine just what length butt suits you best, we'd suggest mounting a reel on the reel seat of the rod, and then grasping the outfit as though you were going to cast. With one hand on the lower portion of the butt, and the other in position near the reel, you should be able to tell readily if the rod feels comfortable in your hands. If you seem to be stretching, the butt's too long. Likewise, if you feel you need more distance between your hands, you should select a longer butt. As to tip length, select a tip that fits your frame. While many surfmen use extremely long rods, it doesn't necessarily mean that they're using the rod best suited to them. A short, lightly built individual just can't handle an 11- or 12-foot rod, and something about 9 feet over-all would prove much easier to handle. By the same token, a fellow with a 6-foot frame, and weighing about 180, could handle an 11-foot rod with little difficulty. You'll find little difference between conventional surf rods and spinning surf rods, except that conventional rods usually come with but two or three ring guides, whereas surf spinning sticks sport from five to eight graduated spinning guides.

In order to gain the greatest sport and success from surf fishing, there are certain other articles of equipment and special items of tackle you should

possess. For instance, if you want to keep the skin on your thumb when using a conventional reel, get yourself a tough cloth thumb cot and a harness to hold it to your wrist. With the cloth cot you can thumb the line more gently, save wear and tear on your thumb, and prolong the life of your line.

Next comes the belt—one that will hold the butt of your rod at the point where the reel is midway between your waist and your breastbone. Make certain that this is correct. If the position of the belt is incorrect, the effort of reeling will tire your back and arms. If it's right, the belt should fit properly, to protect you from chafing and possible injury. The belt should also have an open top and be slung high enough so that it can't work down and hang between your legs.

You'll find it convenient to pick up a good sturdy creel or leather bag in which to carry a few necessary items. A thermos filled with cold water to wet down a hot July tongue, a fitted case for your metal sinkers, squids, swivels, steel and nylon leaders, hooks, fish finders, extra line, and a filled pork-rind bottle are a few particulars to bring along when you get ready to stand in the surf.

Clothing is a matter of choice. You can wear a shirt and shorts and wade right in, or you can get boots and a light surf outfit that will dry quickly. You might as well make up your mind that you're going to get wet; but it's July and it's hot and the constant cooling spray is one of the real pleasures of this type of summer fishing. When the days are frosty, you'll want to wear waterproof surf pants outside the boots, together with a waterproof, loose-fitting parka jacket. A sou'wester oilskin hat may be worn when it rains.

Live baits and artificial lures for the surf should be chosen judiciously. For example, weakfish take such natural baits as squids, shedder crabs, shrimps, cut mullet, chubs (minnows), and sea worms; flounders like sea worms, clam necks, crabs, and chubs; striped bass want herring, cut squids, menhaden, shrimps, sand eels, and sea worms; and channel bass are partial to menhaden, shedder crabs, clams, squids, and cut mullet.

In the artificial lure division the "drail" or metal squid is an old stand-by for the surf caster and is especially appealing to weakfish, striped bass, and bluefish. Big wooden plugs are also good, particularly for striped bass and weakfish, and generally they need a fast retrieve. A swiftly-moving attractor arouses the interest of bluefish and stripers, but you should vary the speed of reeling, and create an irregular motion. An eelskin lure is another top winner for weaks, blues, and stripers. Some fish, especially striped bass, are selective, and often you'll find that a constant changing of lures is necessary until you hit the right combination.

Don't lay that rod in the sand. Always avoid getting sand grit in your reel. Stick the butt firmly in the sand, or place it in a sand spike. (The latter

is a device in the form of a hollow pipe that is pointed at one end so it may be jammed into the sand on an incline and hold the rod.) Then pull the line through your rod tip, and tie a slipknot about 8 or 9 feet from the end. Before you pull this knot tight, take the end of your line, place it through the loop of the knot, and tie the end around the line above the first knot with a sliding knot; then yank both knots tightly together. This will give you about 4 feet of double line, with a convenient loop at the end and a knot that can't break. This is the focal point—the spot where you need most strength. Next get the squid and put the looped line through the hole in the squid head, pull down, and send the squid through the loop. Then pull the line over the squid until it is tight directly over the head. If you're going to use a rolling bait, a spoon, or a spinner, then you'll need a swivel. Otherwise it is not good practice to use a swivel—the swivel forms air bubbles before the squid, notifying the fish that this is artificial bait.

CASTING WITH THE CONVENTIONAL REEL

There are a few suggestions on the mechanics of surf casting, and on the "action" phases of the sport itself, that deserve attention in paving the way to making your journeys to the beach as eventful as possible. If you're a novice, then the following tips may be of service:

We'll suppose that you have the conventional surf outfit just recommended and are standing where the waves reach in to lick your feet. You are rigged up, and have set the star drag so that you can strip line off with the reel even though it is in mesh. Tension comes with practice; but, set up like this, it is possible to let a fish run on a strong strike without snapping it.

Now you're all ready to dunk your line in the surf and sample a new fishing thrill. Assuming a posture that is natural and comfortable, but with your legs apart for poise and driving power, you throw off the free spool lever, clutch the lower end of the rod butt with one hand, and press the thumb of your other hand against the reel spool and wrap your remaining fingers around the rod under the reel—just as in fresh-water bait casting. If you have placed your upper hand properly, you'll be able at all times to regulate the spool or put pressure on the thumbstall. Now relax your thumb just enough to let the weight of your sinker pull out 3 or 4 feet of line, which, with the wire leader, will give you sufficient length. Swing the rod around so that the tip is to your back, pointing directly away from the spot in the surf where you intend to drop your live or artificial bait. Let the lure and sinker rest on the ground. The hand gripping the rod butt is about at a level with your chin, and your other arm extends back with thumb firmly on the spool. The reel is perpendicular and faces inward. You're all set to begin the cast.

As though released from a spring, you swing the rod tip upward and

over, giving all the thrust you can with your arms and shoulders, yet not forcing the movement in a jerky manner that will kill the cast. A moment before the rod tip is straight overhead, you exert a strong impetus with your wrists to send the sinker leaping outward. You follow through with this swing by leaning forward and taking one step to maintain your balance and be in a position to fight any swiftly striking fish. In the split second that you

are executing this added snap of your wrists, and just *before* the rod reaches the zenith of its arc, you ease off on the spool with your thumb so the lure can start to fly out on a high curve. This is the vital point where perfect timing—therefore practice—counts heavily. If you relax your thumb too quickly, the bait will shoot up straight and not land where you want it to, and if you're too slow at relieving the pressure, then the rod moves too far forward and the lure dives into the water only a few feet from shore. As the line speeds oceanward, your thumb grazes it constantly, for you should never entirely remove that all-important digit from the spool, or you'll end

up by plucking at a snarl. When the sinker has reached its maximum distance outward and is dropping, you bear down on the spool and instantly check its spinning to ward off a backlash.

Placing the rod butt into the cup of your surf belt, you immediately reengage the free spool lever, grasp the rod just below the reel, and with the other hand begin grinding at the reel as the lure ducks into the water. If it is a squid or jig, you continue to reel, but if it is a live bait, you let it rest after having tightened the line. You are content to make a reasonably long cast, and surely have not tried to equal or better the record surf cast of 660 feet, 3 inches.

Always hold the rod tip fairly high, so that the shock of a jolting strike and the strain of a fighting fish are borne by the line and rod together. The spring of the rod also lessens the possibility of the line breaking from a stiff jerk, or of the hook tearing from a hard-pulling specimen.

Smooth, easy casting is the mark of the expert. This won't come immediately. Keep your casts short until you develop a natural swing, then start increasing the distance of the cast. Remember that even the experts backlash occasionally, so don't be dismayed by a few bird's nests. Should a backlash occur, perhaps you forced the cast too much. Straighten out your line and try again with less force. You can cast almost as far with half your total strength. Antibacklash devices (see page 18) are available to help you during the early days of surf casting, but are not recommended after you have the technique mastered because they do generally cut down your distance.

Keep that cot-protected thumb on the line. At the slightest movement on the line, strike fast. Many of the big surf fellows tap your line lightly, so don't hesitate when there's a check. Channel bass are an exception. They mouth the bait gently, then drop it. But their next rush is savage. If you're after these big fellows, don't reel at the first tap.

When linked to a fish, do not retreat onto the beach, but either stay where you are or move along with him if he is an old lunker chugging through the surf parallel to the shore. Strive to keep the line taut every moment, especially since many surf sojourners have a habit of shaking their heads from side to side in attempting to eject the hook. Let your victim go the full length of his initial dash under only nominal restraint. This will help to tire him, because the more line he unwinds and hauls around, the sooner he'll "capitulate," as one New Jersey beach fisherman, Henry Benz, used to say. After this run you may want to tighten the star drag, or bear on the thumbstall a bit, but don't try to hurry matters. You're there for the sport more than the meat. Give your fish a real fighting chance for freedom.

There will be a number of other spirited races over the sandy bottom; then when your striper grows tired, the surf will fling him on his side. This

may be a precarious moment, for you will try to beach him on the next wave and in the meantime the backwash of the receding wave may put a sudden heavy strain on the line, or the fish may give a powerful lunge. If he starts off again, let him go under a tight line and keep the rod tip high. But if the fish makes no further move, reel steadily while the next wave is shoving him toward you.

CASTING WITH SPINNING REEL

With most surf-casting spinning the two-hand method is employed rather than the one-hand way described in Chapter 4. The cork handle or butt on surf spinning rods is longer, in order to accommodate two hands, and may range from 14 to 30 inches in length.

In the two-hand method, you place your right hand above the reel and grasp the end of the butt with your left hand. Release the line from the pick-up and hold it with your right-hand index finger as in the overhead cast. The same motions are used in the two-hand cast as in the one-hand with the exception that the rod is brought lower in front of you, to a spot slightly above the 3 o'clock position. Then bring it back over your head and let it drop behind you to about the 10 o'clock position. Now, as the lure bends the rod, start the forward cast by pushing with your right hand and pulling with your left. This is done with a quick snap. When the rod reaches the 2 o'clock position in front of you, let the line go, and the lure will sail out a great distance. Timing here is just as important as in one-handed casting.

Line control while the lure is in flight is simple. Place the tip of the right index finger on the line or on the edge of the spool. The amount of pressure you use will determine the amount of braking effect. This type of line control is useful when drifting a bait. Instead of picking up the line in the retrieve position, hold the line with your fingertip. It is then easy to pay out as much or as little line as you want. For the method of retrieving line, see Chapter 4.

After a few times of surf fishing, regardless of the method of casting, you'll start learning the best spots to fish and begin developing a method. Work around the edges of shoals, in the white streak of an inshore eddy, the discernible hole of a water boil, in the backwater at an opening where the water moves around a land point, or where the tide starts out from a fissure. Sometimes you can see the fish actually move out of the water or mark a lively spot on the water, which is the telltale sign of a blue or a striper working.

When employing such natural baits as clams and sea worms, it's a good idea to chill them or at least keep them cool before placing them on the hook. Fresh, they are spongy soft, and you'll find that you'll lose most of

them in casting. With this type of bait, you can use the rig previously described, but it is necessary to use a fish-finder and a 5-ounce pyramid sinker. The fish-finder is simply a swivel attached to a short wire with a ring at each end. You place the looped line through the ring in the fish-finder, use a No. 4 snap swivel, pass a flat thong with a hole in each end through the ring of the swivel, then fold the thong over, both holes together. Send the looped line through the holes in the thong over the snap, back up to itself, and pull tight. Attach the nylon leader with hook to the snap, bait the hook with the worm or clam, and you're in business. The virtue of the fish-finder is that it permits the line to move out unhampered by the sinker. When using natural bait with such rig and after casting it, let your bait lie in one spot for five to ten minutes, then reel it in a few feet. Let it lie there for approximately the same amount of time, and then reel in a short distance. Repeat this procedure until the bait is almost on shore. After fishing one spot for about an hour without results, move to another spot a few hundred feet away and try there.

Probably the gamest fish you'll hook while beating the surf will be the bluefish. He's not big, but he's a scrapper. Other fighters who go nicely between knife and fork are the channel bass, red drum, the striped bass, weakfish, snook, pompano, permit, king mackerel or kingfish, pollack, bonefish, and wahoo. There are others that may strike your line, and it's even a possibility that a shark hunting in close, may give you a tussle you'll remember all your life. Once you sink your feet in the sand and watch the lash of the surf, feel the strike of a bluefish, and battle him to shore, you'll recognize the call. You've been hooked as securely as the bluefish. You, my friend, are a surf fisherman. One of the elite.

Fresh-water tackle at sea

Have you ever yearned to have something hit your lure with a smash that would rock your back teeth, strip line from your reel in powerful surges, and put a bend in your rod that would cause the maker of it to shudder? If so, take your tackle where the salt spray will hit it and follow the advice given here by Hart Stilwell.

If you are a fly-caster, leave your light trout-action rod at home, but if you have one suitable for handling bass bugs, take it to the seashore—the fish there will really give it a working over. Not too many years ago, the thought of using such tackle in salt water was considered absurd, but now salt-water bait, spinning, and fly casting have come into their own. They pack the thrill of a lifetime. But remember that when using fresh-water equipment in brackish or salt water it's very important to wash your tackle completely in warm, fresh water at the end of each day's fishing. Then wipe the metal parts with a soft, oily cloth to protect their finish.

Of course, there are certain limitations that control the practicability of using fresh-water gear for salt-water fishing. However, if you keep the terminal tackle within the weight limit that a particular rod was designed to cast, you should not have any trouble. Don't do what a friend of ours did last season. He heard snapper bluefish were fun to catch on a fly rod, so he proceeded to try his light rod trolling for bluefish. It did not take long for him to discover that when a 5- or 6-pound fish is going in the opposite direction from that of a boat traveling four or five knots, something is bound to happen, and it did. The first strike and our friend was left with nothing but the handle of his rod. This was certainly misplaced confidence in the rod to stand such a terrific strike. Now if he had been chumming for bluefish from an anchored boat, and using a fly rod, his chances would have been more favorable.

BAIT CASTING AT SEA

Comparatively recently we have learned that the *fresh-water* bait-casting outfit, slightly modified, gives ideal sport in salt water. The light rig is just right for channel bass, striped bass, weakfish, and blues.

You hook into, for instance, a 15-pound channel bass. What do you do? Let him run. If you try to stop him short with that outfit, you will break something. Don't agitate that channel bass too much. When he has run 30 to 50 yards, he'll stop and then you start. Pump him in gently. Raise the rod tip slowly, bearing down on the reel spool with your left thumb, then let the tip down rapidly as you reel in slack. It's about the only way to move a large fish with light tackle. In fishing with such equipment, never put much pressure on the reel cranks. Use your thumb on the spool.

The rod for use down South is only slightly different. There you will go for tarpon and maybe big snook and bull reds—which are big channel bass. This rod was originally developed for king mackerel casting in the Gulf and is known as the "kingfish popping rod." It is built on the same lines as your fresh-water bass rod but it will be about a foot longer and a little sturdier. On the reel you want 100 yards of 24-pound test nylon.

Different lures will be needed because this larger outfit won't cast a ⅝-ounce play. Pick out a couple of lures made for king mackerel, a couple more of the kind designed for great northern pike, and top these off with a shrimp plug. You may also take along a metal spoon. The plugs weigh around an ounce and a quarter.

From the ground, or from a pier or jetty, or from a boat, you can throw that plug a mile. You can watch for tarpon and cast at them when they strike or roll at the surface. Hooked on this tackle the big fish really go to town, for you haven't a rig so heavy that you can slap him down flat and knock the fight out of him the first time he comes up out of the water.

For the most part, the diving and deep-running underwater plugs of solid construction are more effective than surface plugs. These must be given action, a spurty movement that simulates the darting behavior of a minnow. You twitch the rod tip, reel in the slack, then jerk again; and continue this until the pick-up is made for another cast. The clothespin style of lure is a favorite in Florida and along the Gulf Coast, for it is a deep traveler that appeals to many kinds of fish. This does not mean, though, that top-water artificials should be ignored, for some of these can be jumped and popped in a manner to make any hungry fellow strike. The modes of retrieving are similar to those tried in fresh water, and the response to your efforts will often be more than gratifying. Actually, one of the most popular methods of this sport is to use artificial surface lure. Because the technique of playing a surface lure varies somewhat with the fish, experience alone teaches which retrieve to use for what fish at what time and even then you can often count on the double-cross. In general, a slowly played lure pays off, especially in quiet water. But when hits are few and far between, it's best to try new bug behavior. Make the lure walk across the top, make it swish just under the surface for a foot. Impart a saucy, sideways flip to the tail. Make the action so enticing that if there's a fish around he just has to come out and swat it.

The procedure to awaken a drowsy fish in the salt is the same as used on largemouth black bass anywhere. You pick a spot where you think there is a fish, start with a fairly slow retrieve just in case a wide-awake fish happens to be there. Play the lure very slowly, let it sit quietly for half a minute, then give it a slight twitch by lifting the rod tip, then let it lie doggo again. After about six hitless casts, start increasing the speed of the retrieve and the loudness of the pops. Sometimes you get a strike on the fifteenth cast and sometimes it takes forty. But, providing the fish is there, you'll almost certainly get eventual action. Even when fish are hanging out in the shade, resting and waiting for the coolness of dusk before thinking about food, you can use a popper to make them mad enough to hit.

The snook is one salt-water fish that is driven to shelter by heat. They are willing night hitters, good daytime strikers if the weather is not too warm. But extreme heat puts them down or sends them back to sit it out under a protective mantle of mangroves. Surface lures are made to order for much of the water they seek out at such a time.

While the warm water of the midday heat will put some salt-water fish down, it is cold water that really does the damage and sometimes sends them out of reach of a surface plug or fly-rod popper. We were given a vivid example of this once when we were fishing the Gulf of Mexico out of Flamingo for sea trout. That day those fish were hitting popping bugs as if they were gold-plated shrimp. But the very next morning, in the colder

Atlantic waters off Melbourne, Florida, we found that while the trout willingly took an underwater trout fly, they wouldn't rise to the surface fooler. Numerous other salt-water fish go deep, too, when the water cools off. Generally fish do not come in on the Southern flats and shallows where they can be reached with surface lures until the water temperature is above 68 degrees, and 70 degrees is still better for top-water fishing. Some salt-water anglers even go so far as to carry a thermometer along, like their fresh-water brothers (see page 141).

It's difficult to name a water depth that could be called "best" or even "right" for using surface lures. Tarpon cruise just under the surface, seldom more than 4 feet down. Jack crevallé in schools are right on top, striking and swimming, but a solitary jack will rest along the drop-off of a channel in 3 or 4 feet of water. Stripers often lurk near the bottom in 6 feet of water, yet a big striper weighing 25 pounds will lie in 2 or 3 feet of water. Snook seldom are deeper than 4 feet and ladyfish run at about the same level. All these fish can rise with a single flip of a fin to a surface fooler.

Some fish which will flush from a popper on the shallow flats are willing takers when you offer them a surface lure in slightly deeper water. Channel bass, called redfish in Florida, are very scary when they feed on the shallow bonefish flats. But with 3 or 4 feet of water over the grassy beds they like, they will hit a popper without hesitation and actually are easier to take with a noisemaker than with a silent lure. Redfish are as blind as bats and when fishing a streamer it is necessary to drop it no more than a foot in front of them or they will not see it. A popper can be dropped a little farther away and retrieved very slowly, and the fish will be attracted by the noise it makes and hunt it down.

The sea trout likes a good loud pop, too. Commercial fishermen who cane-pole for trout use a popping cork to which is tied a short length of leader, then the baited hook. The loud pop of the cork on the surface attracts the trout and when they swim up to investigate, they see and smell the shrimp and take it, including the hook. Sometimes those hungry trout will even try to engulf the big popping cork. We have heard of one commercial fisherman who had made a popping cork out of lignum vitae wood. It must have had a special voice for those Florida sea trout because every time he used it the trout would rise up and swat the popper instead of eating the shrimp that dangled below it.

Since all fish do not attack a surface lure in the same manner, different techniques apply on the strike. For instance, a big tarpon sucks in a lure while a barracuda clamps down on it with slotted teeth. If a fish slurps the lure bellyward, the strike must be delayed until the lure has gone well down inside, or at least until the fish has turned, so you will not pull the lure out. Wait till he starts down and then you have a chance of hooking him. You

have to wait like that before striking groupers, snappers, channel bass, and bigger tarpon as well. On the other hand, cruising fish, like blues, mackerel, and jacks, don't stop to swallow. They hit on the run and the strike must be instantaneous.

School fish like to chase a fast-moving lure. A plug dropped in front of them should move faster than the fish are traveling or they will pass it, thinking it is just something floating on the surface. And the lure should be dropped right in line with their path so that they don't have to move to the right or the left to grab it.

Striped bass are great takers of surface lures, and usually the bigger the better. Those that go over 15 pounds can't be bothered with tidbits. They want a full-course dinner and most light-tackle lures are too small to even tempt a striper that size, but the angler can overcome some of that disadvantage by the noise and commotion he can stir up with a popping bug or other surface lure. The hit of a huge striper to a surface lure is a hair-raising thing. And while a fast, steady retrieve will pick up the school stripers, these big boys are more temperamental. They like their bug retrievers mixed up. Some days they go all out for a fast-moving lure. Other days they want them slow, like largemouth—slow, with plenty of stops, for half a minute at a time. It is generally best to start the retrieve for big stripers with a single loud pop; let the bug rest a few seconds, then retrieve it by a combined action of raising the rod tip and pulling back on the line with the left hand so you get a 3- or 4-foot strip. Such a maneuver gives enough power to pull the bug just under the surface, and it stirs up a terrific fuss. Bubbles will fly all over and the gurgling noises will be heard for a long way. Then at the end of this stunt, when the bug rises to the surface, give it another loud pop and let it sit still again. If that doesn't gather in all the nearby stripers, nothing will.

With the strictly underwater bait, start the retrieve instantly when fishing shallow waters, but if the water is deep, allow to sink a second or two, depending upon the depth of the water. Point the rod directly at the lure and give it a sharp jerk. The slack line resulting from the jerk is then reeled in and the rod jerked again, the slack again reeled in and so on—jerk, reel—jerk, reel—jerk, reel—until the lure is almost completely retrieved. The cadence of these jerks and the speed of reeling has to be varied according to the depth of the water—fast in shallow water to keep the bait from striking bottom, and slower in deep water. Generally, more fish will be taken on a slow retrieve.

All these remarks in reference to bait manipulation apply to fresh- as well as salt-water fishing. Very few fresh-water fishermen "work" their baits and can easily borrow a page from their salty brothers' technique, for it produces results.

FRESH-WATER SPINNING TACKLE AT SEA

The development of glass fiber for rods and the general use of spinning equipment have done a great deal for salt-water, light-tackle enthusiasts. Today many anglers feel that if you cannot land the average-sized fish that is found along the coastal bays and inlets on spinning gear, then you are missing a lot of real enjoyment.

There are certain techniques which may be used to great advantage in salt-water spinning. Merely casting out and reeling in does not produce more than a small fraction of the strikes that can be had by proper manipulation of the lure. On the whole, as previously stated, salt-water fish are more manipulation-conscious than their fresh-water cousins, and it really pays to know how to work a lure for them.

The number one technique in salt-water spinning is that of bouncing the lure along the bottom. This is the secret of taking numerous species of fish which are not considered to be strikers of artificial lures. The best lure for bottom bouncing is a small, weighted bucktail or nylon jig. The technique of bouncing a jig along the bottom is utterly simple. It's nothing more than casting, allowing the lure to sink to the bottom, then retrieving in jerks, permitting the lure to settle to the bottom on a slack line between each jerk. Strikes usually come during the pause between whips of the rod.

In a fast tide, spinning jigs and bucktails also work very well when fished "dead," as nymphs and wet flies are sometimes fished for trout. The cast is made across the tide, and the lure is allowed to be swept in an arc until it is straight downtide from the angler. Then it is retrieved slowly, with a darting action imparted by the rod. The lighter bucktails in the ⅛-ounce class are in order for this fishing, but in deep water heavier lures may be needed. This is an especially killing technique for snapper, and produces well with stripers and weakfish.

Most salt-water fish like a straight, darting action rather than the wiggles and wobbles preferred by the fresh-water species. For this reason, no other lures are so consistently successful in salt water as jigs and bucktails. Bucktail or nylon jigs are adaptable to a number of fishing techniques, the simplest of which involves no more than casting out and retrieving with a whipping rod motion. The speed of the retrieve is easily varied, and the rod whips may be short or long, making possible almost infinite diversity. Because of the great number of ways spinning bucktails may be worked, these lures will nearly always take fish if anything will.

Although not as consistent as bucktails and jigs, most of the standard fresh-water spinning lures will take salt-water fish, and at times they produce even better than lures designed for salt water. The miniature plugs in ⅛- to ½-ounce sizes are readily accepted by weakfish, bluefish, stripers,

snook, and some of the other more common salt-water species. Generally speaking, the surface types, like the darters, injured minnows, and plunkers, are more valuable in salt water than the underwater plugs with metal lips to make them wiggle. When subsurface lures are called for, bucktails and spoons are likely to produce much better than plugs. Be that as it may, salt-water fish are unpredictable, and there are times when the tiny underwater plugs work wonders.

Spinning plugs are retrieved in exactly the same manner as their casting-size counterparts, but any plug works best in salt water when moved more rapidly than it would be in fresh water. At times it pays to fairly skitter a top-water lure across the surface, keeping the rod tip whipping all the while. Follow the techniques previously given for bait-cast lures (page 195).

A large assortment of lures is not necessary to salt-water spinning success. Learning how to use the few basic types we have mentioned is much more sensible than collecting all the colors and styles you can find. A few yellow, white, and red-and-white jigs and plugs, and a silver or copper spoon in spinning sizes will give you about as versatile an inventory of lures as you can handle.

FLY TACKLE AT SEA

While the fly rod was designed for a clear, fast-running trout or salmon stream, many light-tackle addicts have discovered recently that remarkable catches and unmatched sport may be their fortune when whipping the salty seas with a fly rod and appropriate lures. This is a method which is certain to gain thousands of enthusiastic fans each season, as news spreads of its phenomenal success in the ocean. It affords another means for everyone to make greater use of his fresh-water fly rod and reel, widening the scope of his angling vacations.

Many shore-trailing fish along the Gulf, around Florida, and up the Atlantic Coast will rise for fly-rod lures at one time or another. Among these are such skill-testers as tarpon, bonefish, striped bass, barracuda, bluefish, snook, ladyfish, channel bass, pompano, snapper, weakfish, grouper, and mackerel. Around islands, up the rivers, along the lagoons, and in the inlets you won't lack for action. And, of course, the favorite light-tackle method of taking king and silver salmon in Pacific waters is with the fly rod and a hair fly imitating a candlefish.

In the Chesapeake Bay region, fine luck has been had with a yellow streamer fly linked to a chrominum-plated spinner. This has been especially appetizing to striped bass, and these fish have also taken bright fly-and-spinner rigs and bass bug floats. You will find that stripers in these waters are caught by casting in sheltered coves and along tidal rivers. When not feeding at the surface, they may be chummed up to the field of battle.

With a surface lure, make as long a cast as possible (unless you're aiming

at a rising fish), and let the lure sit for fifteen or twenty seconds before retrieving. The retrieve should be made in short, halting steps, giving the fish plenty of time to get off the bottom and look the lure over. Many anglers are inclined to work too fast. Often the slightest disturbance will put the big ones down. The subsurface lure should be fished in much the same manner, the only difference being that a longer time should be allowed before starting the retrieve so as to get the lure down to the depth desired.

Snook like lures that splash and hop along the top, and have been partial to yellow-bodied bass bugs whose hooks are hidden in white or yellow feathers or bristles. The closer you can lay your fly or bug to their hangouts —snook prefer the dark holes and shadows under the mangroves—the greater are your chances of hooking fish. Getting a lure into these places often presents quite a problem. It is extremely important that you be well acquainted with your rod before attempting to fish the back-country canals. As it is almost axiomatic that the back cast be kept high, you must learn to throw a tight bow from the overhead or three-quarter position. Attempting to cast sidearm will net you any number of bushes and assorted trees, but very few fish. Once having placed your lure correctly, the problem of what to do with it arises. Most snook anglers are of the opinion that the longer their lure remains in the first *six* feet of their retrieve, the greater are their chances of taking a fish. It is possible to play a fly or bug slowly and still impart quite a bit of action to it. Play your lure with the rod well up, twitching it with the *tip* only to make it jump and skitter. If you fish slowly and cover the water thoroughly, your percentage of large fish raised and hooked will go up. Many times a big fish will explode on the third or fourth cast into a fishy-looking pocket.

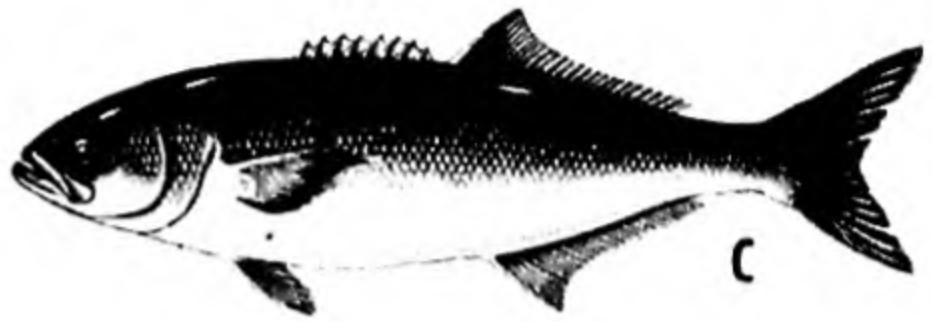
The gill covers of a snook are exceptionally sharp, as keen as any knife. Careless handling of a landed fish will leave you with a hand neatly sliced open. These same gill covers will cut a leader instantly on contact. Bearing this in mind, keep your rod high and hold the leader well away from the gills. Discourage a jumping fish by upsetting him as he leaves the water. Should he land on your leader, you are very liable to be out one lure and the fish to boot.

Tarpon are really nerve-tinglers on the fly rod. When hooked they spend as much time in the air as in the water until they're ready to quit. Some fly fishermen use a heavier rod with a detachable butt in fly fishing for tarpon and that's a prime idea if the fish run 50 pounds or more. You'll use the same lures as with snook. Covering the fish by casting is easy when you locate a feeding school and the silver kings gulp the flies readily. Here you'll want to keep the hooks needle-sharp for tarpon have jaws as tough as any you'll find in salt-water fish.

A big pompano, or permit, is a hard fellow to tame on a fly rod, for he will go scooting in among the coral formations, sponges, and weeds where

A

B

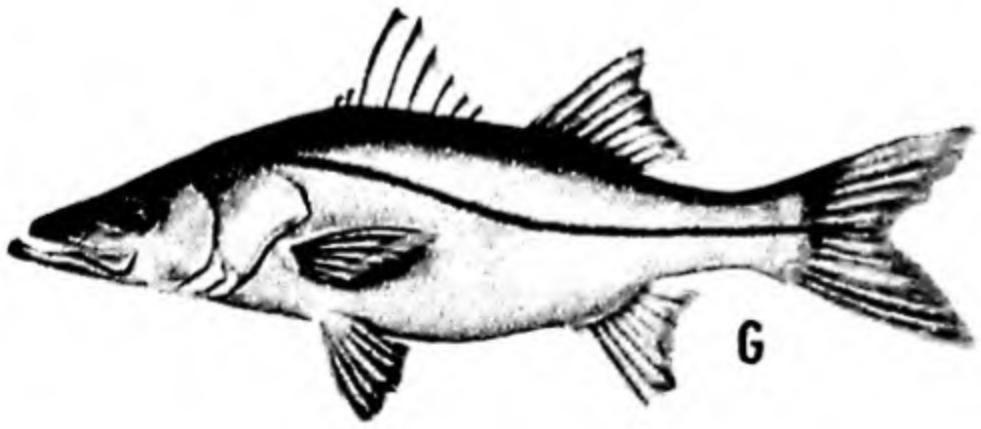


C

D

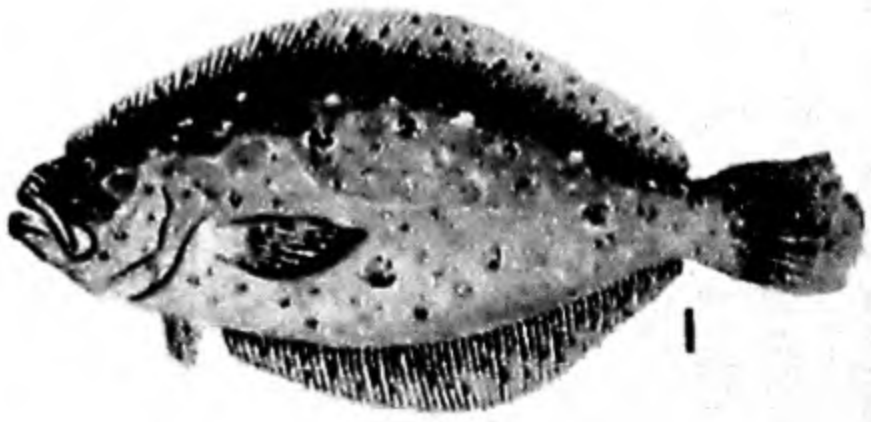
E

F

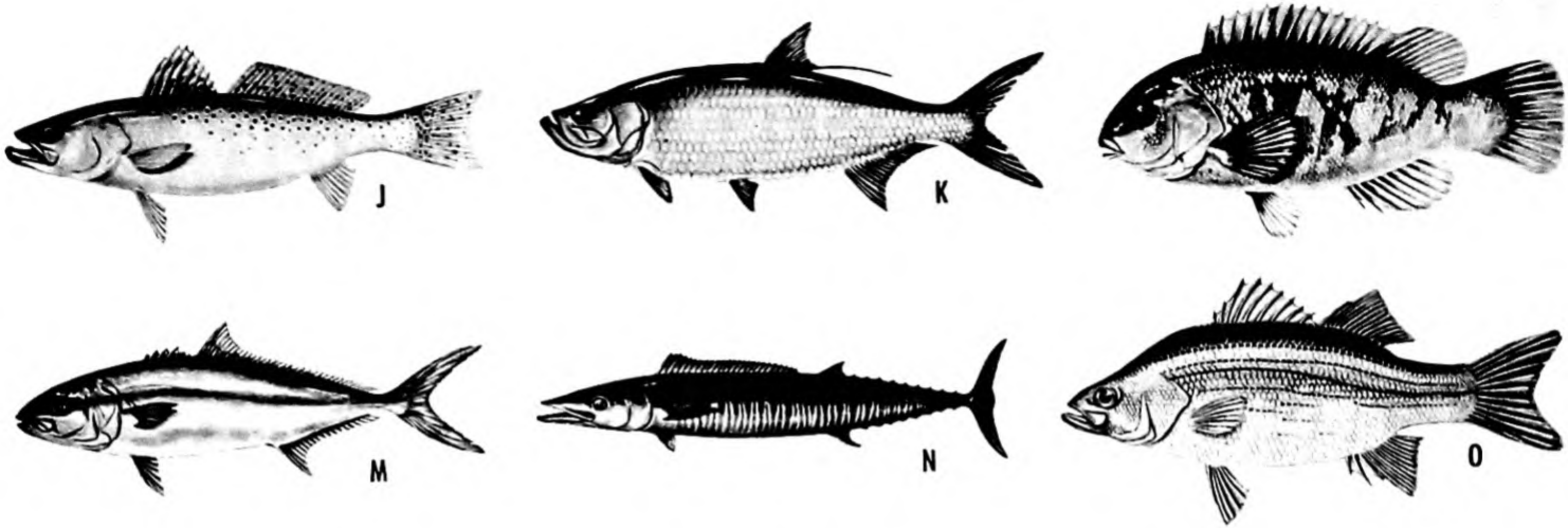


G

H



I



OCEAN FISH

A. Amberjack. *B*. Barracuda. *C*. Bluefish. *D*. Channel Bass. *E*. Dolphin. *F*. King Mackerel. *G*. Snook. *H*. Striped Bass. *I*. Summer Flounder. *J*. Spotted Weakfish. *K*. Tarpon. *L*. Tautog. *M*. Yellowtail (*Calif*.). *N*. Wahoo. *O*. White Bass.

he chafes the line and may soon rend it apart. He has a disconcerting habit of swimming at right angles to your line, then after going the limit of his run turning quickly and swimming broadside again. You have probably noticed this same trait when hooked to some of the spirited panfish of lake and pond, for certain ones waggle themselves along in this manner while attempting to turn and swim in the opposite direction—with the strain on the line preventing them from succeeding. With a pompano, you just have to apply pressure until he is fagged out and ready for the net.

Right here is a good time to tell you a little trick in handling a hard-running fish on a fly reel which has no brake or star drag. Since the reel is under the rod with the handle on the right-hand side, you will be holding the rod in your right hand as the fish fights; you can exert pressure as you wish on the inside of the spinning reel spool. If you don't, your line may overrun and backlash. Watch out for your knuckles on that whirling reel handle.

Fishing with a fly rod for bonefish along the flats of our Southern waters very closely approaches the methods for trout and salmon fly fishing in fresh water. Much of it is done by wading and casting over the fish or by poling a light skiff through the shallows to reach a feeding school. In either case, the lure is a small hair fly from 1½ inches to 3 inches long, usually a bright one of red and white, red and yellow, or some other readily visible combination. The best bet for fly fishing for bones is to hire a guide and a skiff. He knows where and when the fish will be feeding.

When you spot the bonefish feeding along the sand, you edge up close enough to cast your fly so it drops right smack before their eyes—almost tickling their snouts—or if they are on the move, drop your fly to cross their path. Long casts are generally necessary to reach out at a safe distance from where you stand, and a long, fine leader must be tied on. You can vary your retrieve by manipulating the rod tip in different ways. Some days they like a slow, fairly steady movement to the fly. On others they want plenty of action. You won't know until you try them. In any case, be prepared for a lightninglike rush when the fish gulps the fly and you set the hook. He'll rip 60, 80, or 100 yards of line from your reel almost before you can catch your breath. If you can handle that first rush, however, get back some of your line and keep out the slack. You'll most likely land him. The sport you'll have on the fly rod, though, when hitched to a racy bonefish is out of this world.

Fly fishing for Pacific salmon has just put on its long pants; the days are not too far back when all salmon were caught on fresh bait and tackle that would have subdued Jonah's whale. It has taken years of education to make light gear and artificial lures popular; the coho fly, a bushy streamer of polar bear hair and feathers, only now is coming into its own. The flies are

trolled (not cast) fast on the surface with perhaps a half-ounce of lead to steady them; the boat is zigzagged 90 degrees to port and starboard to slack the line and sink the fly, then bring it up again sharply.

At any rate, if you're an angler who can't be content until delving into the potentialities of every method and type of lure, you will surely make fly-rod fishing in salt water one of your most frequent pursuits. This is a comparatively new phase of seaside angling that opens an exciting way for much real pioneer exploration.

Salt-water species for fishermen

From Alaska down the Pacific Coast to Mexico, around the Gulf of Mexico shoreline, and up the Atlantic Coast to Maine, the distance is approximately 5,500 miles. Allowing for bays, coves, estuaries, and harbors, there are roughly 8,000 miles of surf available to the salt-water angler who likes to stay close to or on the shore. But, because of the large number of species which abound along our shores, it is impossible to give a complete description of each species. Instead, we are including the following; it lists all of the major inshore and bottom fish throughout both the Pacific and Atlantic coastal waters as well as those of the Gulf of Mexico. It offers suggestions regarding hook sizes, bait, and methods of catching these fish. Tackle dealers will fill you in on the best approach for local conditions.

Species	Hook	Bait	Method*
Albacore	7/0 O'Shaughnessy	Feather lure in various colors	T
Amber jack	6/0 to 9/0 O'Shaughnessy	Feathers, spoons, plugs, cut strip bait	T, C
Angelfish	No. 4 to No. 6	Bits of shrimp and crab	S
Barracuda	1/0 to 8/0 O'Shaughnessy	Plugs, feathers, spoons, bait fish	T, C
Bass, Calif. kelp	No. 1 to 1/0	Sardines, anchovies, clams, mussels, sea worms, shrimp	T, C, S
Bass, channel	6/0 to 10/0 O'Shaughnessy	Feathers, spoons, plugs, natural baits such as mullet, bunker, crab	T, C, S
Bass, giant sea	12/0 to 14/0	Whole or cut barracuda, mullet, sardine, mackerel	T, S
Bass, sea	1/0 to 5/0 Sproat	Squid, clams, sea worms, crabs, killies	T, S

Species	Hook	Bait	Method*
Bass, striped	2/0 to 8/0 O'Shaughnessy	Plugs, spinners, worm baits, metal squids, spoons, bucktails	T, S, C, D
Bluefish	3/0 to 8/0 O'Shaughnessy	Feathers, spoons, plugs, rigged eel, piece of menhaden or butterfish	T, C, D
Bocaccio	1/0 to 4/0 O'Shaughnessy	Cut baits, mainly sardines, and silvery metal lures	T, S, D
Bonefish	1/0 to 4/0	Flies, plugs, feathers, spoons	T, C, D
Bonito	4/0 to 6/0 O'Shaughnessy	Feather lures	T
Catfish, gaff-topsail	No. 4 to 2/0	Mullet, shrimp, jigs, plugs, spoons	T, S, D, C
Cod	7/0 to 9/0 Sproat	Clams, conch, crabs, cut fish	S
Croaker	4/0 to 6/0 for big fish; No. 1 to No. 10 for smaller ones	Sand bugs, mussels, clams, sardines, anchovies, sea worms	T, S, C
Cultus	4/0 to 5/0 O'Shaughnessy	Squids and crustaceans	S
Dolphin	2/0 to 4/0	Streamer flies, plugs, spoons, natural bait	T, C, S
Eel	No. 6 to 1/0 Carlisle	Killies, clams, crabs, sea worms, spearing	S, D, C
Flounder, starry	1/0 to 3/0 O'Shaughnessy	Killies, spearing, shrimp, sea worms	S, C
Flounder, summer	4/0 to 6/0 Carlisle and Sproat	Killies, sea worms, clams	S, C, D
Flounder, winter	Long shank Chestertown No. 7 to No. 12	Bloodworms, clams, mussels	S
Greenling	No. 4 to 2/0	Clams, mussels, shrimp, sea worms	T, S, D
Grouper	4/0 to 12/0	Squids, mullet, sardines, balao, shrimp, crabs; plugs and spoons	T, S
Grunt	No. 3 to 1/0	Shrimp, crabs, sea worms	S

Species	Hook	Bait	Method*
Haddock	1/0 to 4/0	Clams, conch, crabs, cut fish	S
Hake, Calif.	2/0 to 6/0	Clams, conch, crabs, cut fish	S
Halibut, Calif.	1/0 to 3/0	Killies, crabs, sea worms, shrimp, squids	S
Halibut, Pacific	3/0 to 10/0	Killies, crabs, sea worms, shrimp, squids	S
Jack crevallé	1/0 to 5/0	Feathers, metal squids, plugs, spoons; live bait such as shrimp, cut bait	T, S, C, D
Jewfish	10/0 to 12/0 Shark	Mullet, small bait fish	T, S
Ladyfish	1/0 to 5/0	Killies, shrimp, plugs, flies, spoons	T, S, C, D
Leatherjack	No. 6 to No. 1	Sardines, sea worms, spoons, plugs	T, S
Ling	No. 4 to 2/0 Sproat	Clams, conch, crabs, cut fish	S
Mackerel, Atlantic	No. 3 to No. 7 Carlisle	Shiny jigs, spinners, spoons, with or without bait fish	T, S
Perch, barred	No. 1 to No. 2 (hollow)	Pileworms, clams, mussels, pieces of minnow	S, C
Perch, white	No. 2 to No. 6 Sproat	Sea worms, shrimp, spearing, flies, spoons	S, C
Pollack	6/0 to 9/0 Sproat	Feathers for trolling, clam or strip of squid in still fishing	T, S
Pompano	No. 1 to No. 4	Sand bugs, flies, bucktail jigs and plugs	T, S, C, D
Porgy	No. 4 to 1/0 Sproat, Virginia, O'Shaughnessy	Squid, clams, sea worms, crabs, mussels, shrimp	S
Rockfish, Pacific	1/0 to 8/0	Herring, sardine, mussels, squid, clams, shrimp	S, D
Sailor's Choice	No. 1 to No. 9	Shrimp and all types of cut bait	S
Sculpin	No. 1 to 3/0	Clams, cut bait	S, D

Species	Hook	Bait	Method*
Shad	No. 4 to No. 6	Flies, spoons, spinners, live bait	C, S
Snapper, mangrove	1/0 to 6/0	Cut bait, shrimp	T, S, D
Snapper, red	6/0 to 10/0	Shrimp, mullet, crabs	T, S, D
Snapper, yellowtail	No. 4 to 1/0	Shrimp, mullet, crabs	T, S
Snapper blues (baby bluefish)	No. 1 to No. 4 Carlisle	Spearing, killies, spoons	S, T, C, D
Snook	2/0 to 4/0	Feathers, spoons, spinners, plugs, crabs, shrimp, small fish	T, C, D
Sole, lemon	No. 4 to No. 6 Snelled	Clams, sea worms	S
Spot	No. 8 to No. 10 Carlisle and Sproat	Clams, sea worms, crabs	S
Tarpon	4/0 to 10/0 O'Shaughnessy	Feathers, spoons, spinners, plugs, cut mullet, bait fish	T, C, S, D
Tautog (blackfish)	No. 6 to No. 8 Virginia	Sea worms, clams, shrimp	S
Tomcod	No. 6 to No. 8 Carlisle and Sproat	Clams, mussels, shrimp	S
Tripletail	No. 1 to 4/0	Squids and crustaceans	T, S
Wahoo	4/0 to 8/0	Feathered jigs, spoons, plugs, small bait fish	T, C
Weakfish	No. 1 to 4/0 Sproat, Eagle, Claw, Carlisle, O'Shaughnessy	Shrimp, squids, sea worms	T, S, C, D
Whitefish	3/0 to 6/0	Crabs, sea worms, clams	S
Whiting, northern	No. 4 to 1/0 Sproat and O'Shaughnessy	Sea worms, clams	T, S, C, D
Yellowtail	4/0 to 6/0	Spoons, metal squids, feathers, herring, sardines, and smelts	T, C, S

* T—trolling; S—still fishing; C—casting; and D—drifting.

"Boy—that last bite felt like a whale!"

8

Deep-sea fishing for the big fellows

The IGFA story

The ultimate in sporting fishing is the thrill of taking one of the big monsters of the sea—a swordfish, marlin, sailfish or a tuna. But before going into the techniques of how to fulfill almost every fisherman's dream, let's first take a look at the IGFA, the world umpire of game fish, as told by Philip Wylie.

A friend invites you, let's imagine, to go out in the Gulf Stream off Miami or Palm Beach for a day's trolling. You are, let us presume, an ace on the golf links, no slouch with a tennis racket, and haven't read the first seven chapters of this book, but your angling experience is limited to hauling up a few catfish from the muddy bottom of the Mississippi River. Your friend can run a boat, but he's no angler either.

But out you two go, in your friend's brand-new and snappy motor cruiser, with some fishing tackle he "picked up" at a store in Miami and some bait bought at a public dock—mullet, let's say. Your host has had a quick lesson in "rigging" these baits and, after some failures, he finally manages to get one of them trolling smoothly. It has a hook in it, and a leader attached to the hook and a line running to the rod and reel—which *you* hold.

Now to your intense surprise, out of the sea, in pursuit of your bait, there suddenly roars a broad-headed hammer-bill. (Note: There's no such animal —this is an *illustrative* tale.) The broad-headed hammer-bill grabs your mullet and you, in turn, hook the giant. You battle him all afternoon, and at long last—the friend forgot to buy a gaff—you and he get the fish on board by using a lasso and main strength. Proudly you steam to shore. Bystanders at the dock—old fishing hands—allow this to be "the biggest dog-gone broad-headed hammer-bill" they ever heard of—a world record for the breed. They talk mournfully about "beginner's luck." Who wouldn't like to hold a world record for *something*?

Time was, however, when you'd have been out of luck on your record. Various institutions and publications used to keep what they called "world-record charts" of game fishes taken in the seven seas. But they were hazy lists. Some of the entries were fish that had been harpooned and shot—not fairly caught on rod and reel. Some were fish that had been dragged to boatside after sharks had torn away half of their flesh, and the weights given were imaginative guesses about what the scales might have registered if the sharks hadn't been so hungry.

Certain clubs—notably in California, Florida, Australia, and Great Britain —had exacting rules for sea fishing. Those old standards were often rigorous, and anglers still look with awe at the perfectionist Californians. Standing in open boats, wearing business suits, using 24-thread line (which broke at a strain of 72 pounds), with reel handles which *spun backward* whenever a hooked fish ran and no more "drag" than could be exerted by thumb pressure on a leather tab against the line spool, these sportsmen caught tuna, marlin, broadbill swordfish, and other rugged giants of the blue waters. They came home with bloodied hands, busted knuckles, broken fingers—they always had a surgeon on duty at the club—and only occasionally with a fish. They were the purest sportsmen the world had ever seen, but there weren't many like them. The others made their own rules, with changes when changes were convenient. It was pretty unsatisfactory.

In 1939, when he was in Australia as head of an expedition for the American Museum of Natural History, Mike Lerner, one of the top sports fishermen of the world, debated these matters with the late Clive Firth, a noted Australian angler. Firth suggested that Americans should devise and administer rules. He had noticed that the British colonies and the mother country quarreled about everything—even fishing—and he thought that England, along with her colonies and dominions, would accept American judgment as sporting impartial—and without starting another Revolutionary War. He thought all other nations would accept the lead of the U.S.A. and Britain.

Mike talked over Firth's proposal with other members of the expedition,

then got in touch with leading anglers and prominent fishing clubs the world over. They were enthusiastic. Everybody wanted to be in the game, but nobody wanted to umpire.

A bit reluctantly, Mike selected a group of deep-sea fishermen known for their skill and fairness, a number of ichthyologists and other scientists, and a few fishermen like Van Campen Heilner and the late Ernest Hemingway who had fished about everywhere and written on the subject. Later on, this writer (who has wet an occasional line but is still a tyro next to Van and Ernest and Mike and a thousand others) also became an officer of the world-umpiring society now known everywhere as the International Game Fish Association or, for short, the IGFA.

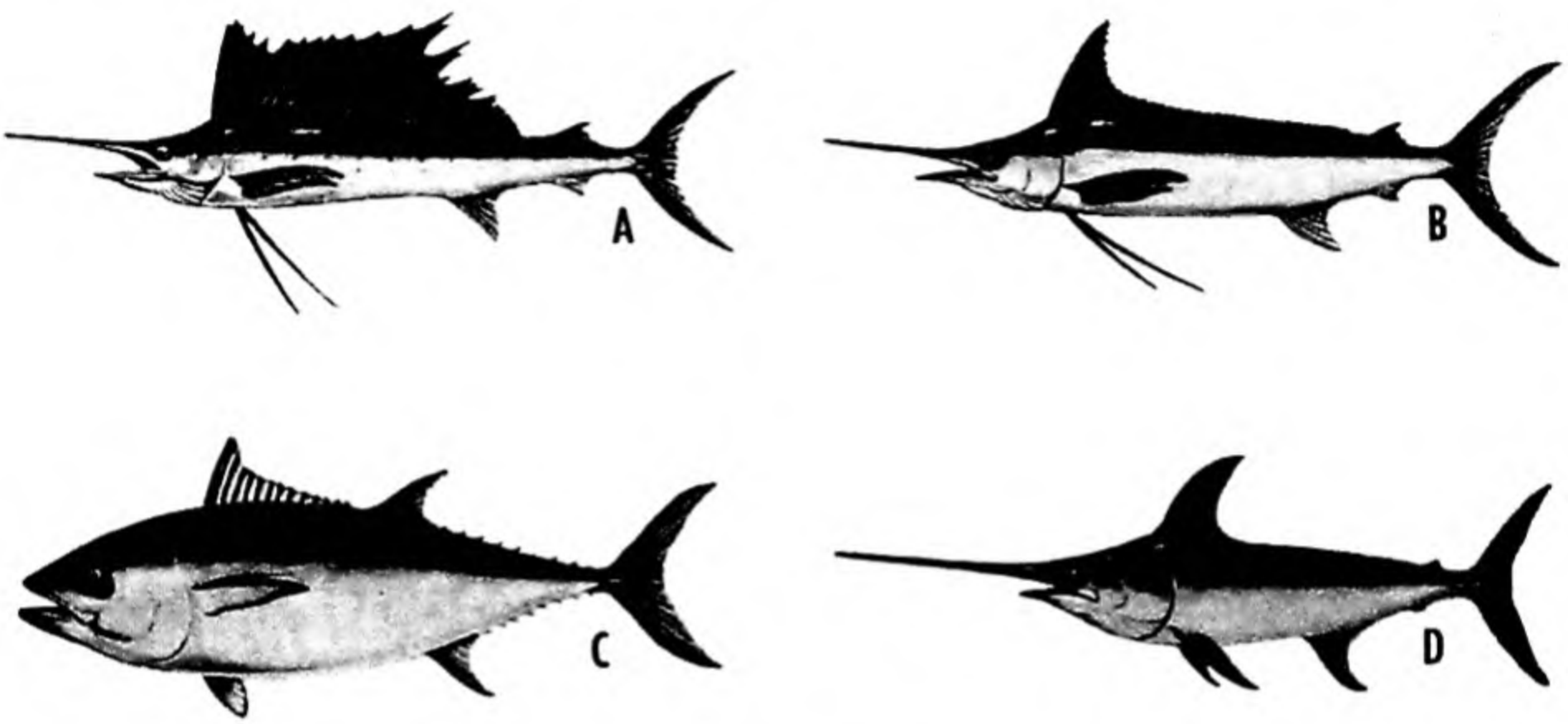
Let us get back now to that gigantic "broad-headed hammer-bill" we imagined you caught while trolling with a friend. Twenty-five years ago, you would probably have weighed him. You might have measured his length. A local fishing editor might have published these details, along with a photograph—which you were almost sure to take. If you didn't, somebody on the dock would. News of the fact that a 486-pound broad-headed hammer-bill had been "brought in" off Palm Beach—or Miami—*might* have reached one of the institutions or the top-notch sports magazines that tried, haphazardly, to keep "world records" for marine angling. And, since the largest "broad-head" hitherto "reported" would have been a 308-pounder that had washed up on the beach at Cape May, you would hold the world record. Nothing official about it. Nothing formal. A week later a guy might hook a bigger "broad-head," shoot him full of holes with a rifle, harpoon him three times, boat him with a windlass and a steel cable, and take that record away from you—most unfairly. The IGFA stopped all that.

Today the IGFA supplies, on request from anybody, printed rules for standard tackle and "fair" fishing methods. It also supplies forms to be filled in by anybody claiming a world record—forms which demand exact data on the kind of line used, the type of rod, the reel, the number of hooks (no more than two are allowed), and so on. A snapshot of the fish and the tackle is required. So is a sample of the line actually used in making the catch; and that sample, in every case, is checked by a professional testing company. "World records" are kept for lines of various strengths. There is a set of world records for fish taken on line that breaks at a strain of 12 pounds (or "12-pound test"), on 20-pound test, 30, 50, 80, and "All Tackle" class, which lists the biggest fish caught fairly on any size tackle.

The IGFA has been in existence for more than a decade, and its reports are recognized everywhere except in Soviet Russia. Any established fishing club (the IGFA has no individual members) will be admitted upon application after an examination to make sure the club is bona fide and its members are genuine sports fishermen. There are several hundred such "member

clubs." In the angling centers of all civilized nations (and many that would be considered highly uncivilized) the IGFA has a "representative" who serves for the honor of the post and the love of the sport. He is available to give anybody and everybody IGFA information and to investigate any question about a record claim that may come up.

The IGFA itself is housed in the Alfred I. du Pont Building in Miami 32, Florida. All officers, representatives, and so on serve without pay. There are no dues for member clubs and no charge for publications. The "okay" of at least the President, a Vice-President, and the Secretary is necessary for a



A. Sailfish (*Atlantic*). *B.* Blue Marlin. *C.* Tuna Bluefin.
D. Broadbill Swordfish.

claim to be accepted as a new record. Wherever the information about a catch is insufficient or confusing, the Secretary asks for clarification. If it doesn't clear up, a local representative is instructed to make an on-the-scene investigation.

So, frequently, men in Cape Town and Queensland, in Tahiti and Chile, take trains and planes to some remote spot where a gigantic fish—or a fish spectacularly large for the type of tackle used—has been caught. If the "local" man fails to solve a questionable situation (Was the line really 12-pound test? Did the fish actually weigh 76¼ pounds? Are the scales that said the marlin went over a *thousand* accurate? Was the fish gaffed according to IGFA rules, or is there something to the rumor it was harpooned?), an official from the home office may start a long trek to check in person.

People cheat, occasionally—but damn rarely. The IGFA relies on the integrity of the angler. It has to. It cannot have an inspector in every boat and on every dock and beach where anybody is fishing, the world over. So you

might be able to pull a fraud—send in far lighter tackle than you actually used or get a dockmaster and a weighmaster to swear that your fish was bigger than he really was, and get away with it.

But we at IGFA believe there are no violations of even the most trifling parts of the rules among the catches listed as world records. For one thing, anglers—contrary to the legend about them—tend to be more scrupulously honest than the general run of Homo sapiens. For another, the eyes that scan the photographs and read the affidavits are very expert—the eyes of trained scientists, veteran anglers. For a third, the angler who cheats raises the hackles of *all other anglers*, and the rumor of a faked entry gets around. Somebody—some indignant angler—writes the IGFA. Investigation gets under way. And presently the malefactor is trapped or persuaded into admitting his dishonest attempt. (Information on record fresh-water fish, how they are certified, and similar data may be obtained from *Field & Stream Magazine*, 383 Madison Avenue, New York 17, New York.)

Anglers are funny people, and the IGFA, as a sort of world crossroads for anglers, is an unusual and interesting place. People drop in at IGFA for advice on where to take a vacation or on what tackle to carry to the Celebes or Patagonia. Then they drop in again on their return with marvelous tales of fish, seen, hooked, lost—and caught, mounted, and ensconced above the mantel at home. Cablegrams come in from every quarter of the globe, asking for every imaginable sort of fishing information, telling every conceivable kind of tale about fishes seen or apparently seen or reported by somebody to somebody else.

It is evidently a law of human nature that the sea hunter will become the observer and the observer the amateur naturalist, or more. Indeed, many anglers, like many hunters, have put aside their killing equipment and replaced it with the gear of observation and study. So the IGFA hopes and expects that in the years to come it will be increasingly an organization for gathering marine data as well as a sports society.

The "tab" for these many enterprises is picked up by one man: Michael —or, as we've called him here, Mike—Lerner. (Pretty nearly everybody who knows him—and that includes potentates and porters in every segment of the round world's map—calls him Mike anyhow. We might as well.) Clive Firth assumed that fishing clubs would share the large cost of IGFA. Mike decided otherwise. In middle life Mike was already a world-famous angler, among the world's foremost big-game hunters and a leading collector of museum specimens. He was also one of the founders of the Lerner Stores (if that doesn't ring a bell in your head, ask your wife). He decided he owed a debt to his favorite sport of ocean fishing, a debt he hadn't managed to repay by contributing many huge specimens of fishes, and in some cases whole rooms of specimens, to half a dozen of the world's leading museums.

When he founded the IGFA, he arranged to pay all expenses himself. The IGFA, Mike decided, wasn't going to cost any angler a dime. It didn't, it doesn't, and he has made provision so that it probably never will. But Mike didn't want the IGFA to be a "patriarchal" organization, a Mike-bossed affair. So it is the member clubs which make, by majority vote, all decisions on matters of principle and rules; on other matters the officers decide. Among the officers Mike has one vote; so does everybody else. He's made sure that IGFA doesn't become a foundation to build Mike-prestige: Mike has no press agent, and nobody has ever been hired to do "publicity" for the IGFA. The news it sends out (new records of a spectacular sort, rule changes or comment anent arguments amongst anglers) is dispatched by IGFA headquarters.

Following that law of human nature we set down earlier, Mike finally went into science. On the island of Bimini, in the Bahamas, he built the American Museum of Natural History, a "field station" for research. There, in a magnificent laboratory—and a commodious adjoining residence—scientists can study the twenty or more different "sea-terrains" that meet at Bimini. Because of the value of primitive sea life in studying basic cell structure, it has become a cancer research center. Hundreds of individuals, dozens of institutions, have now contributed to that center. Bookfuls of scientific papers are pouring from the laboratory. And for every scientist who comes to the Lerner Marine Laboratory, everything from lab space to laundry is free.

That's the story of IGFA. Its worth to human relations the world over cannot be exaggerated. Its value as an umpire in a great sport is deeply appreciated by many and should be understood by all. Those who serve as its officers love fishing—and they love people, too. An Australian dreamed it up. An American made it a fact, surpassing the dream. And everybody who wets a line in salt water—whatever his nationality, his bait, or the fish he hopes to hang—has reason to rejoice in the result.

Big-game fishing

The pursuit of big-game fish, like the pursuit of happiness, says George Wiswell, is often beset by frustrations, quarrels, and expense. It's common for guides and anglers to spend hours, days, and weeks rocking and pitching about in sun-blistered cruisers on the Gulf Stream without sighting a blue marlin. They may grow bone-numb with cold in the spray and wind in the rips off Nova Scotia waiting for a tuna to take the bait, then hook one, only to lose him several weary hours later because the line breaks or is cut by another fish or submerged impediments, or the hook pulls out or straightens

under the strain, or the reel freezes, or any one of a thousand inadvertent errors is committed.

Once one of the monsters is boated, it many times turns out that the guide's and/or angler's fight has just begun. For in the rarefied atmosphere of big-game fishing, the size and weight of the catch are almost secondary factors compared to the strength of tackle used, the method of taking the fish (after a stern set of rules set forth by the International Game Fish Association), and the time consumed. In their homes and offices, big-game fishermen are apt to be reasonable and generous. But on the water and around the docks they are just as apt to resemble a gaggle of prima donnas, jealous of their records and reputations, suspicious of each other's claims, belligerent in defense of their own techniques, scornful of others. At least two marriages we know of have foundered as the direct result of a wife outfishing her husband, and scores of friendships have been ruptured or seriously strained.

As for the expense of the sport, it is incalculable. Charter boats cost from $40 to $150 a day, but in the Bimini–Cat Cay–Montauk–Wedgeport–Cabo Blanco circles, where men fish for records or tournament prizes, the charter fee is of negligible concern. Most of them have their own tackle—upwards of a thousand dollars' worth—a good part of which may be irreparably damaged in one long fight with a broadbill, or lost (faster than you can lose it at the races) in one rod-breaking instant in a struggle with a marlin. Angler Thomas Shevlin of Palm Beach, who says he has caught 117 blue marlin, figures that they cost him approximately $1,000 apiece (his tunas—$750; white marlins—$500; and sailfish—$250), including boat, time, tackle, and tips, but not counting away-from-home living expenses. These figures may be the exaggerations or "extras" of a man who can afford them. Nevertheless no honest, persevering, seagoing fisherman will ever describe his sport as cheap.

Despite these obstacles, it is estimated that about 25,000 persons wet a line in the Gulf Stream often enough to qualify as practitioners, and there is a small and elite core of devotees—perhaps two hundred—who continue to spend fortunes in time, patience, and money developing the techniques, tackle, and boats used in this most specialized of sports.

The reason for this heroic effort in the face of such disheartening odds—it is alleged some four hundred fruitless hours are fished for every big one boated—seems to be simply that in its fleeting moments of glory the pastime provides surprise, adventure, and beauty of an order unsurpassed by any other. According to those who know, the smashing attack of a blue marlin or the swift, rocketing run of a tuna or even the leaps of the relatively light-weight sailfish are thrills more potent than any you can get stalking lions

in Africa, schussing the Headwall at Tuckerman Ravine, or sitting ringside at a championship fight. The late Ernest Hemingway, who presumably experienced most of the fleshly and emotional excitements the twentieth century has to offer, always ranked big-game fishing above all the rest. Some years ago, in a piece for *Esquire* magazine, he wrote as follows: "It [the excitement] comes from the fact they are strange and wild things of unbelievable speed and power and a beauty, in the water and leaping, that is indescribable, which you would never see if you did not fish for them, and to which you are suddenly harnessed so that you feel their speed, their force and their savage power."

Fishing for these big-game fighters is a job for the heaviest sort of tackle. You need hundreds of yards of rugged line, certainly nothing less than 24-thread stuff; a big, star-drag windlass for a reel; and a heavy stick of hickory or glass fiber to take the severe beating that the big fish hand out when they're performing on the surface. Most part-time fishermen rent rather than own their tackle for this phase of angling. But if you purchase your own, be sure that it meets with IGFA requirements just in case you land a record fish. Also be sure that your rig meets IGFA requirements. For instance, the leader and the double line on all weights of tackle up to and including the 50-pound line class (or "15-thread") must be limited to 15 feet of double line and 15 feet of leader. For heavier tackle, the line must not be double at the trace (leader) end for more than 30 feet and the trace must not exceed 30 feet. This doubling of line is "standard operating procedure" when dealing with all big-game species, particularly when trolling —the method generally used to take them. Make sure that the connecting hitch made to the eye of the leader swivel cannot slip. In attaching your line to the swivel, avoid tying a knot, for this will weaken the power of the line. The end of the line should be wrapped around the swivel ring three or four times, looped around the main stem of the line several turns, and then passed back through the loops and drawn tight.

Double line at the end not only adds necessary strength, but also lets the angler and guide know when the fish is close and about ready for the gaff. It's always a thrill to see that double end come speeding to the rod tip, and a relief to feel that the long, exhausting conflict is over. That is, it's over unless the fish, frightened at sight of the boat, shows a sudden spurt of life and plunges for the depths again. In which event you would like to heave the whole outfit into the ocean!

To fight a big-game fish, you will need some type of rod harness. This device is worn in order to transmit more muscular power to the rod and to absorb strain. And unless he is wearing a harness, an angler cannot let go of the rod or reel, even momentarily. The rod harness allows the angler to

rest his arms when tired. It is made of canvas or leather and has adjustable straps with snaps that can be fastened to the rod or reel.

There are two acceptable kinds of harness used by most big-game anglers, the shoulder and the kidney types. The former resembles a vest and enables the angler to use his back and shoulders to better advantage when pumping a fish. The shoulder harness pulls from a point about 2 feet above the fishing chair. It is suitable for the smaller types of big-game fish. The kidney harness is roughly oval-shaped, approximately 3 feet long and 10 to 15 inches wide at the back, and is usually padded with sponge rubber. It fits against the small of the back and is worn like a belt. The kidney harness absorbs the strain at a point about halfway between the shoulders and the chair. While this type may not be so helpful to the angler in pumping a fish, it is less tiring to his shoulders and upper back muscles, and holds the rod and reel in position in the chair gimbal equally as well as a shoulder harness. The kidney type is often recommended for anglers below average weight, for women, and for those using tackle heavier than 39-thread line.

When fishing for smaller game fish, many anglers wear a girdle gimbal or rod belt in place of a harness. This device has a rod butt gimbal mounted in a sponge-rubber-padded belt-type waist harness and allows the angler to move around the cockpit of the boat, rather than remain seated in the fishing chair, when fighting a fish. It is extensively used by light-tackle enthusiasts when fishing for game fish.

Most boats equipped to do big-game fishing have a "fighting" chair. This chair is generally used only after a fish is hooked, the anglers sitting in ordinary yacht chairs at the sides and forward end of the boat's cockpit until they receive a strike. When a big fish is hooked, the angler takes the chair, wearing his harness, and places the rod in the chair's gimbal or rod holder. All other anglers take in their lines so that the captain can devote his complete attention and boat-handling skill to the man in the fighting chair. This chair should be as comfortable as possible and be equipped with a solid foot brace. To avoid chair cramping, the chair should be so designed that the rod gimbal turns on or over the same center as the chair. The rod holder, in other words, should be directly above the center of the chair post. The chair post, in turn, should be mounted along the center line of the boat with sufficient room behind so the crew can help you land a big fish safely.

When battling any big-game fish, it is advisable to wear a pair of heavy cotton workman's gloves for protection against friction from handling the rod for hours. The gloves are also necessary in "bulldogging" a big fish. In this technique, you hold the fish not only by means of the star drag, but also by gripping the line with one gloved hand and pulling it outward between

the reel and the first butt guide. This stunt is often done by big-game anglers when wrestling with huge bluefin tuna, marlin, or swordfish. Do not let your victim rest when doing any big-game fishing (actually this is true for any angling), but keep him on the prod. And get him thoroughly tired out before reeling him close enough to be boated.

There are not many species of big-game fish, but the few with which the sport fisherman does big business are the very best of what the world's marine heavyweight class has to offer. Descriptions of them, and the most popular methods of fishing them, follow:

Swordfish ahead!

There is fishing and fishing; there are fish and fish. All are stout fellows, but some are stouter than others. Some are greathearted, and some are wily. Some are gifted with supreme endurance, some are not. In the sea, among big-game fish, are tuna (horse mackerel to you of the Atlantic seaboard and tunny in European and English waters), marlin swordfish, and broadbill swordfish. Now, there is no braver-hearted gentleman in the sea than the tuna; but a moderately capable angler will bring an average-sized fish to gaff inside of twenty minutes. The marlin is a crazy, spectacular fighter, frenzied in his mad gyrations. He leaps and lunges, walks on his tail, beats the water white, sounds and sulks, is here, there and everywhere; but he, too, if not too large, can be taken within a comparatively brief length of time. This is not because he lacks for courage but rather because his own mad efforts do as much as anything toward bringing about his ultimate downfall. But the broadbill swordfish—that is another matter entirely! Truly there is no harder fish to take. He may be led up to gaff within a very few minutes or, again, he may keep one out there battling for twenty hours and more. The following account, on the hardest fish in the world to catch, is by Edward J. Mathews and Ralph Bandini.

About the time the mackerel schools start moving up the New England coast and southerly airs have warmed the surface water off Montauk and Block Island, the broadbill swordfish begin to move in from offshore. Fishermen see the sickle-shaped dorsals and flukes on the long swells, pack away their nets and "bottom" gear, break out harpoons and kegs, check the steering lines from the masthead and start for the broadbill grounds twenty miles out. Lobstermen, trawlers, big diesel-engined schooners, built for the business, charter boats and mahogany cruisers for rod and reel fishing whose slender outriggers sway as they meet the seas—you can see them setting forth in the glittering calm and the mists of summer mornings.

"First run's gone by"—"Three fish yesterday off Noman's"—"Fish are east the Vineyard"—"Dressed four-fifty," and always: "Biggest goddamn s'a'dfish

I ever see"—you can hear the same scraps of "Down East" that must have been exchanged in these waters for a hundred years.

As the shoreline drops out of sight, the boats disperse. The mastheads clustered with lookout men and the tall outriggers drop over the horizon or vanish in the mist. If you, too, are out for broadbill, you will probably be aloft by this time, on the flying bridge of a cruiser, or swinging dizzily in the crow's-nest of a commercial boat, straining your eyes across a mottled and shimmering ocean for the two distant specks that will bring a yell of "F-iiiiiiii-sh!"

Every game fish has, in the angler's mind, a unique quality. The sailfish has a special gallant grace. The big marlins give one an almost terrifying sense of sheer bulk. The impression *Xiphias gladius*, the broadbill swordfish, creates, even hanging from the boom of a market boat, is one of concentrated and efficient power. "He's built," in the unromantic words of a Montauker, "like a brick outhouse." He may not be so big as your marlin or so delicately formed or brilliantly colored as your sailfish. Nature has avoided the rococo in his design, but she has cut his fins and tail flukes in the vigorous lines of speed and made his body compact with muscular evidence of power. She has streamlined his enormous eye into a great birdlike head which terminates in a weapon that would make Excalibur look like a papercutter. This severe functionalism prevails even in his coloring. Only when he strikes does the businesslike gray-bronze of his back give way to a deep purple iridescence. His vertebrae are few in number and very large; in the front of his head he carries a bony shock absorber, and his whole skeleton is obviously designed as a framework for delivering tremendous blows and withstanding heavy impact. Seen as he lies just below the surface, he is as formidable as a lurking submarine.

The apex of achievement for a big-game fisherman is to take Xiphias on rod and reel. Probably not more than two hundred or so anglers have boated a broadbill. At the Montauk Yacht Club not more than seven or eight rod-and-reel fish are taken in the course of an average summer, although eight or ten charter boats fish for swordfish from the club every possible day during the season—say, about seventy days per boat per year.

Unlike any other kind of fishing, the pursuit of Xiphias is entirely visual. You don't troll for him; you look for him. When you see him "finning" or cruising just below the surface, you move up quietly and present for his inspection a previously prepared bait, usually a squid in our waters. If he goes down on sighting the bait, you brace your feet, get a good grip on the heavy rod, and pray. Nine times out of ten nothing happens. If this is your lucky day, he will pick up the bait in his toothless mouth and run with it. This is the moment when skill and judgment count, because you will have to gauge the amount of time necessary to let him get the bait

squarely between his narrow jaws. Once the solid run of the line suggests that the fish has it, you throw the drag on the reel, let the line come taut, and strike with all your strength, because Xiphias' jaws are bony. The hook once set, you sit down to a fight that may end in twenty minutes if the fish is hooked deep and bleeding, or may last all night and into the next day. You may or may not see your fish again before he comes to gaff or breaks off, as Xiphias does not jump as much as the marlins. He may take long runs on the surface or fight deep, in which case you will have a sore back next morning. The critical moments of the fight are the seconds that follow the strike and the process of gaffing the fish at the end of the struggle. Many an angler has brought his fish alongside and in the moment of triumph has seen his freed fish sink slowly into the depths with a hole in its jaw from which the hook has fallen. The difficulty of finding the fish and, especially, persuading him to take the bait remain the primary reasons why so few anglers have succeeded in taking Xiphias.

As a predator, Xiphias fully sustains the ferocity of his appearance. He will smash into a school of mackerel with his broadsword swinging and will leave behind him a trail of stunned and mangled victims to be swallowed at leisure. His reputation for general pugnacity is, however, greatly exaggerated. Reputed collaboration by swordfish with the thresher shark in attacking whales belongs in the old books along with basilisks, unicorns, and werewolves. Several people have told us that they have been present at these naval engagements, but questioning usually brings out that what they really saw was just a whale and a big splash, and we have yet to meet anyone who actually has observed the swordfish engaged in committing his gratuitous mayhem on the whale.

Attacks on ships appear to be borne out by indisputable evidence. In fact, swordfish have actually been observed in the act of ramming their swords into the sides of vessels. There is one old timber in the British Museum that is transfixed by three swordfish bills. Small vessels have been disabled and sunk by swordfish "attacks." On one occasion when the whaler *Fortune* returned to New Bedford, a sword was found to have penetrated her upper sheathing, an inch of board sheathing, a 3-inch hardwood plank, a 12-inch white oak framing timber, a 2½-inch ceiling plank, and ended up by passing through the head of a cask containing sperm oil, 18½ inches of solid wood not counting the barrel! Even greater penetrations are reported which only serve to emphasize the incontrovertible fact that Xiphias packs a terrible punch.

Any sailfisherman can account for most of the broken swords found in ship's timbers. On several occasions we have seen sailfish, in their struggles when brought to gaff, ram their bills into the sides of fishing boats and break them off. While we have never observed the same occurrence in

bringing a swordfish alongside a boat, we have heard of several instances and are convinced that the great majority of such penetrations are attributable to the blind efforts of fish when brought alongside.

There remain the unquestionable assaults by free, unprovoked fish. They *may* be due to plain orneriness on the part of Xiphias. So long as any other possible solution does exist, however, we refuse to believe that a swordfish will go out of his way to attack an unfamiliar object many times his size. We think such a solution does exist when one considers the impetuosity with which he has been seen to pursue his prey, the limited range of vision fish are known to possess, and the common tendency on the part of schools of small fish to seek the shelter of a ship's hull. However, when Xiphias has been tormented, there isn't any question that he becomes dangerous. We have mentioned his tremendous penetrative power. No corresponding measure of the lateral force of his blow is available, but it is said that he could easily "take a man's head off" with a sweep of his bill, and when we look at his great shoulder muscles we believe this an understatement.

Any market fisherman will tell you of dinghies split and sunk and of men killed or terribly injured by harpooned fish. There is an endless amount of evidence of these attacks, if attacks they are. A struck fish will normally head for the bottom and do his fighting deep down. It has been observed that Xiphias, when struck by the harpoon in certain sections of the spine, will run hog-wild on top of the water. Yet, of the many "wild" fish that are taken during the year, comparatively few strike either the dinghy or parent ship. It is therefore still debatable whether damage to men and dinghies is the result of deliberate attack or of accidental contact with a frenzied fish.

Damage by swordfish has long been included among legitimate sea risks covered by maritime insurance. One could give quotations from ancient, medieval, and later accounts of "attacks" in the Mediterranean and eastern Atlantic. The earliest American report is dated 1638. Among these reports are a number of accounts of attacks by "marlin-spike" fish. As the marlin is not generally regarded as particularly pugnacious, this may serve as partial corroboration of the accidental nature of many so-called attacks by Xiphias.

Our favorite swordfish is the one that came very close to playing an important part in history. In 1571 the fleet of Spanish, Genoese, Venetian, and other vessels that was being assembled for an attack on the Turks had been placed under the command of Don Juan of Austria, bastard son of the Emperor Charles V. As a convenient point of assembly for his warships, Don Juan had designated the Strait of Messina, and it was here that he spent a part of the summer engaged in the organization of the fleet which defeated the Turks at the decisive Battle of Lepanto later in the same year. The strait has long been the center of the Mediterranean swordfishery and it is probable that the Prince-Admiral, while going about his business along

the waterfront of Messina, observed fish being brought in and recognized them as worthy antagonists. History records that Don Juan went to sea with the swordfish fleet, thus becoming the spiritual ancestor of all big-game fishermen. During his sojourn at Messina, he harpooned six fish, and the last of them came very close to changing the history of Europe. He was a wild fish, probably "backboned" through a nerve center, and he turned on the boat and, as the historian records, "not very much resigned to die," proceeded to ram himself through it from side to side. Don Juan and the crew managed to dispatch the fish, and the delighted sportsman sent the sword to his royal father.

Only in comparatively recent years has it become known that the sword brought back by Columbus from his first voyage was that of a broadbill which had been transformed into a weapon. It has been suggested that this may constitute evidence that Xiphias' migration routes in the western Atlantic, unlike those of the marlin and tuna, which pass through the Florida Straits, lie to the eastward of the Bahama Islands. There may be some reason to believe that the swordfish of the western Atlantic, like so many of us, prefers to spend his winters in a warm climate, and that the fish that escapes the harpoon of a Gloucester man may, next winter, fall victim to the hand line of a market fisherman off Cuba.

In the Mediterranean the life cycle of the swordfish has been traced from a floating mass of eggs to adult fish, through larval stages in which the magnificent Xiphias looks like a minute and ridiculous hedgehog. Here the fish range all the way from Gibraltar to the Dardanelles and the Sea of Marmora. Unauthenticated reports have them running in the Black Sea all the way up into the mouth of the Danube.

The Sea of Marmora has always been one of the great swordfish grounds, and a delightful passage survives in which a third-century B.C. Egyptian recommends a tail cut of swordfish to those who journey to Constantinople.

> Take a slice of swordfish when you go
> To fair Byzantium, and take the vertebrae
> Which bends its tail. He is a delicious
> fish.
>
> —*Banquet of the Learned* BY ATHENAEUS OF NAUCRATIS

In recent years a number of broadbills have been taken on rod and reel in these waters.

Don Juan's fishing ground in the Straits of Messina remains the great center of Mediterranean commercial fishing. The lookout stations on the rock of Scylla and elsewhere along the strait, from which watchers direct the swordfish fleet, have been in use since Carthaginian days and have been passed down in the families of their present proprietors for centuries. There

is hardly any difference between the fishing procedure described by Strabo at about the time Christ was born and accounts by recent observers. Strabo says that the same methods had been used "since Ulysses." The Achaean origin of Italian swordfishery is illustrated by the fact that instructions and special charms repeated in attacking a fish have, up to quite recently, been delivered in Greek, although the fishermen claim that this is done so that the fish will not understand them. In Roman and medieval days the small vessels used for this fishing were built to resemble swordfish, with beaked prows and simulated fins. This, says Oppian, deceived the fish into thinking he was among friends, and Oppian gives a moving account of the indignation of a broadbill which has fallen for these "gross deceits" and been harpooned, and "assaults the Boat and stabs the treacherous board," and concludes sanctimoniously by remarking that " 'Tis feigned acquaintance brings the surest doom."

The procedure used in taking fish from these waters seems to be highly formalized, due, we suppose, to the necessity of establishing regulations when a large number of boats are working in a limited area like the Strait of Messina. Each lookout station is manned from dawn to dusk and controls the movements of a group of small boats, which, with the lookout, constitute a single organization which may take fish only within a clearly defined area. If a fish is not struck within this area, and moves on into an adjacent one used by a different group of boats, the boats of the section in which the fish was sighted must withdraw. Even more of a strain on human nature, individual boats of each station must await their turn to move out and attempt to strike the fish, and a boat which has failed to bring home the bacon must queue up and await its turn. We shudder when we think of the amount of invective and the number of bloody heads that must have been incurred through past centuries in the course of imposing this procedure on successive generations of Greek, Sicilian, and Calabrian fishermen. However, there it is, and it seems to work fine; but we're afraid it would make a Block Islander feel a little inhibited.

Besides the Atlantic and Mediterranean, Xiphias also roams the Indian Ocean and the South Pacific, and enormous swordfish have been taken on rod and reel off the Chilean coast. A lovely little pre-Inca wood carving of Xiphias was recently exhibited in the Museum of Modern Art in New York. So you can see that he isn't a New Englander, as many think, but a very cosmopolitan fish indeed, and one with a rather substantial historical background. In their hours of relaxation around the fire, or in the cuddy of a schooner on a gray and wintry sea, Xiphias is always a vital topic among swordfishermen, and no matter what the weather, memories of his strength and beauty and courage will always bring the sun of June to those who know him, and carry them back to days of fishing on summer seas.

Meet the marlin family

Anglers who heed the mysterious call of the deep-blue offshore waters where swim the giant fish will likely agree that the spectacular surface fight of a marlin, with its tail-walking, greyhounding, and head-shaking battles, is one of the most thrilling episodes of salt-water fishing. The strenuous period between the time the marlin feels the cold steel of the barbed hook and the

time it lies ready for the gaff is a back-breaking struggle that is the pinnacle of angling achievement.

THE BLUE MARLIN

These fish, sometimes called the Cuban black marlin, are some of the mightiest game fishes roving the ocean depths. They have become the special target of hardy, adventure-seeking, salt-water anglers. Boats are chartered and taken into the Gulf Stream for the express purpose of hooking and mastering these enormous brutes with their fixed bayonets. They travel from east to west against the current of the Gulf Stream. No one has ever seen them working in the other direction, although the current of the Gulf

Stream isn't so stable; sometimes, just before the new moon, being quite slack and at others running strongly to the westward. But the prevailing wind is the northeast trade and when this blows, the marlin come to the top and cruise with the wind, the scythe tail, a light, steely lavender, cutting the swells as it projects and goes under; the big fish, yellow-looking in the water, swimming 2 or 3 feet under the surface, the huge pectoral fins tucked close to the flanks, the dorsal fin down, the fish looking around, fast-moving log in the water except for the erect curve of that slicing tail. The heavier the current runs to the eastward, the more marlin there are; traveling along the edge of the dark, swirling current from a quarter of a mile to 4 miles offshore; all going in the same direction like cars along a highway.

The blue marlin usually strikes the bait with his bill before grabbing it. Unless slack is offered immediately, he will become suspicious because the bait does not drift freely as though "dead." The experienced fisherman thumbs his reel as the bait is dropped back, and waits for the marlin to turn and pick it up. He does not strike until the marlin swims away with the bait and has had time to "mouth" it. An early strike, while the fish has the bait clamped between the lower mandible and the bill, will be useless. For this reason, fishermen count to ten before striking. Then you clamp on the reel, drag, and sock it to him. A marlin has a hard-cased mouth, so you must put strength behind your jerks, bringing up on him two or three times with all the power your rod and line will stand. Actually, setting the hook is one of the more difficult phases of marlin fishing. For many years, until fishermen learned the trick of hooking marlin, it was thought they could not be caught.

With the hook set, the marlin dives and shoots off on a run that whisks the line from your reel in a twinkling. The reel drag shouldn't be set too tightly at the outset because then the line may break or the hook may pull out. When a marlin decides to go places, don't try to sidetrack him—just let him go. But care must be taken to keep the marlin from getting slack line. Very often they will throw the hook if given a bit of loose line. Also, the boat must be kept as close to the hooked fish as possible. If the blue marlin gets too far away, the resultant "belly," or slack, in the line may let the fish get away.

When a blue marlin sounds for the depths, you should race away from him a few hundred yards so that the line forms an angle with the water instead of going straight down. It is important to raise the fish to the surface as quickly as possible, because he may sound until the pressure becomes too great and he will die. If this should occur, it is difficult or impossible to raise him to the surface. (The only possible way is to pump and reel, pump and reel to bring up a dead weight!)

You fight the fish until finally he grows weary (you have passed that condition ages before). The sooner you get your fish over the gunwale, the surer you will be of having a whole specimen. Sharks populate the waters where marlins live, especially on the east side of the Gulf Stream, and when a marlin is struggling for freedom, the sharks follow and bite off huge chunks at the slightest opportunity. Some anglers have hauled in merely the head and skeleton of a marlin.

The average marlin sags the scales anywhere from 200 to 400 pounds, with a top weight exceeding 700 pounds. This fish rates high from the food market standpoint, as well as with all sportsmen who have gone forth to meet the marlin on the open sea in a duel to the finish.

Generally the blue marlin is a lone voyager that likes the warm waters. He feeds both at the surface and in the depths, and during June and July many of his number are hooked while trolling in the region of Cuba, Bimini, and Miami. Along Florida he is mainly encountered from Fort Pierce to Key Largo, and is fairly common from Bimini to Cay Sal Bank in the Bahamas. The best season is from May through July, although good catches are made in the winter months. Occasionally blue marlin go as far north as Montauk Point, and they are taken to some extent off Texas, well out in the Gulf. Some are conquered in the vicinity of Port Isabel, and in this region white marlin are also present.

In order to create the skipping movement necessary to gain the desired attention, and to insure the proper drop-back of the bait before setting the hook, outriggers are standard equipment on charter boats. This system also allows from two to four anglers to troll at the same time, with a minimum chance of getting the lines entangled. In some cases the boat captains trail mackerel, mullets, or bonefish in the wake of the launches to lend additional attraction as teasers. Often marlin will be frolicking on the surface, but a troller tempter helps to bring them up from the depths or closer to the baited hook.

The boat captain, of course, will prepare your bait, and will also rent a trolling outfit. Marlin like any smaller fish, and good natural baits are mullets, dolphins, barracudas, and mackerel, with bonefish being the best by far.

THE WHITE MARLIN

These fish are somewhat smaller than blue marlin, averaging around 60 pounds with a top size of about 160 pounds. But their fight is fast and strong, punctuated with jumps and scudding leaps called "greyhounding." Few fish, if any, can greyhound so effortlessly or fast as the white marlin. Actually, the captain's handling of his boat has as much to do with the capture of a marlin as an angler's ability to "pump and reel."

White marlin travel singly, in pairs, and in groups; they are caught in great abundance from the West Indies and Florida up the Atlantic Coast to Cape Cod. Many are taken in summer from Martha's Vineyard to the Carolinas. Usually white marlin are reported to be especially plentiful in the Ocean City, Maryland, area during July and August, and fine catches of these great leapers are made on light tackle. From around Vero Beach, Florida, down to the Keys, and at Bimini and Cat Cay, these marlin battle furiously from January to July, with March and April being the best months.

You should curb the impulse to strike too quickly in setting the hook on a white marlin; but as soon as the line straightens out after being pulled from the outrigger, you can give a stiff jerk. If your fish has missed the bait, skip it along the surface toward the boat and keep your rod tip raised slightly. Have your reel on free spool so that if the marlin makes another attack and taps your bait, you can let it drop back for a few seconds. If the line begins to leave the reel swiftly, engage the gear and strike hard. It may take three or four drop-backs of the bait before the marlin is hooked, especially if you have failed to wait long enough each time for the fish to grab hold firmly. On each occasion as you skip the bait ahead, the marlin thinks it has recovered from being stunned and is trying to escape, so once more he attacks. If the bait is skipped crudely, though, the marlin may become suspicious after the first or second attempt and vanish. Sometimes three, four, or a few dozen white marlins may come to the baits at once.

Soon after being hooked a marlin will spring from the surface in a spectacular leap, then race along the top with amazing speed, fairly ripping the line from your reel. At times he may make several high jumps at the same spot, twisting and shaking savagely, or he may "walk" on his tail for some distance over the water. And when he gets the notion to go touring, just ease off on the drag and let him speed away. Otherwise you'll be wondering how the line could break so suddenly.

White marlin feed on mullets, mackerel, menhaden, flying fish, squids, and similar baits, and when working along the surface they are easily detected by both anglers and sea gulls. Then is the time to circle a group, skipping a strip bait, and troll across the front of their advance. Although you follow the same procedure in hooking and playing a white marlin as for his blue cousin, the tackle is somewhat different (in the Northern range, at least, where few sharks are encountered) because of the lighter fish.

THE STRIPED MARLIN

These marlin are the most common of all the five species and have been caught in many places thousands of miles apart in the Pacific Ocean. They range from Japan to California, as far north as Balboa and Avalon, and southward to Chile. The season usually extends from June to December

off Southern California, with the best action occurring in August and September. In Mexican waters, vast schools of striped marlin invade the Gulf of California in March and migrate northward. By the first of May they are plentiful off Guaymas, Mexico, and until October or November they afford marvelous opportunities to the many sportsmen who visit these famous grounds to exercise their skill on marlin. Another popular site is Guadeloupe Island, and excellent fish are caught in this vicinity as they move offshore along the coast toward Point Conception, California. Blue marlin hooked in the Atlantic may have some of the color traits of the striped marlin, which misleads a few anglers into believing striped marlin inhabit the Atlantic. They don't. Striped marlin average 250 pounds, but occasionally run as high as 400 pounds.

The great thing about striped marlin is they can be caught by almost any angler since they do not fight so hard nor so long as the blue, black, and silver species. These fish are easier to take than their cousins because they jump a great deal more, which tends to tire them out faster. They are fast swimmers, but not so fast as the other varieties. Most of the time striped marlin rove the blue waters solitarily, but when breeding they may be seen in pairs or schools. Even when not battling to break loose from a hook, they occasionally spring and plunge.

Striped marlin respond to the same fishing techniques used for all marlins and spearfish. The favorite marlin trolling baits—a flying fish, Sierra mackerel, or the belly strip from a bonito—may be employed. The flying fish is usually chosen because it lasts a long time before getting soft, and it trolls well. Often two baits are let out, one about 60 feet astern and the other about 75 feet, and this system works admirably. You can take your choice, then, on whether speed or sport is to be desired, except in those places where sharks are apt to bite large chunks out of your victims. Then is when speed in getting the marlin to the gaff is essential, particularly if you're out to make a record.

THE BLACK MARLIN

This Pacific marlin, a close relative of the white and the blue species, is the world's largest game fish, excluding sharks. Black marlin have been taken weighing up to 1,600 pounds. While native fishermen from Cuba believe that blue marlin grow to at least this size, none as large as the black has, at this writing, been taken on rod and reel. But black marlin, in their efforts to escape the angler, resort to every trick known to marlins anywhere in the world. The majority of them hit a bait with lightning speed. There is no dillydallying. They know what they want, and when they spot it they go in to kill and take it. Run after run follows the strike, interspersed with frenzied leaping. Jumping, tail-walking, greyhounding, and surface-rushing

are just a few of the exercises performed by these giants of the sea—and if the angler is not on the alert, they will sound when their surface leaping is over.

These fish have tremendous bills, as big around as a baseball bat. They taper down to a sharp point and are much broader and slightly shorter than the bills of other varieties of marlin. Once you have seen a black marlin bill, you will never mistake it for the bill of any other marlin. In relation to its great girth, the head and shoulders of a black marlin are shorter and blunter, and the dorsal fins shorter, than those of the blue, white, and striped varieties. When hooked, most black marlin show a deep blue on their backs, with a gorgeous light silver on their bellies; but as they die, the top half turns a very dark and dirty blue. They have no stripes at any time. There is one sure way to distinguish a black marlin: its pectoral fins cannot be folded or pushed back flush with its sides and flanks, as can those of the other marlin. Instead, the fins project rigidly outward like a pair of stabilizers—and quite obviously that is just what they are.

Black marlin are found from the west coast of Mexico near Guaymas to Australia, and especially off Peru, Tahiti, New Zealand, and Panama. There are probably as many black marlin off Panama in the summer months as anywhere in the world. Most of the fishing there is done over weekends and there are not many boats available to the angler. Ecuador and northern Peru have also yielded many large black marlin, especially off Cabo Blanco; a few have been taken off Tocopilla, Chile; and several a year are also taken in Acapulco, Mexico, waters. Off Mexico the season for these fish is January to November.

The proper black marlin tackle is the same as the heavy outfit recommended for the blue species. Whole-fish bait should be used, such as dolphin, barracuda, albacore, or bonito. Slabs or strips taken from the bellies of tunas are also excellent bait. The most successful anglers fishing off Panama always say, "The bigger the bait, the better." A 15-pound fish is common when trolling for black marlin.

THE SILVER MARLIN

These fish are the principal marlin caught in the Hawaiian Islands and they appear to be the most common marlin in the central Pacific—at least more silver marlin are caught in those waters than any other kind. Probably these were the kind of marlin commonly taken by members of the armed forces in the Caroline, Mariana, Marshall, the Gilbert Islands during the war. They are also the marlin found around Tahiti. Most of the silver marlin caught off the Hawaiian Islands by rod-and-reel fishermen run between 150 and 300 pounds, although they have been taken over 1,600 pounds by commercial fisherman with flag lines.

The silver marlin is the Pacific counterpart of the blue marlin. Actually, some experts believe the silver marlin is the same fish as the blue marlin. In some specimens the dorsal of the silver marlin may be a trifle lower and the bill a trifle longer and more rugged. It may look more silvery than the blue marlin, but the real difference, if there is any, lies in the number of spines in the dorsal fins. The fighting quality of the blue and the silver, however, is the same. Both are marvelous fish and both rank right after the black marlin as the greatest prize to be caught among marlin.

Sailfish are showmen

Sometimes called the spikefish, sailfish are members of the spearfish family, as are the swordfish and the marlin. There are two varieties of this species—the Atlantic sailfish and the Pacific sailfish. Both varieties have approximately the same color: dark blue on the back and silvery on the sides and belly. The sail of the sailfish is really a dorsal fin. The sailfish can fold it down into a groove along its back, or extend it—which he does when he jumps. The sail extends about three-quarters of the length of the body. The spear is about a foot long in the larger specimens.

Like the old kingpin, the broadbill swordfish, and the marlin, the sailfish have no teeth; they try to strike with their swords in order to maim their prey. Then they rush in and swallow it. So, when you feel a light tap on your line, you must quickly release the reel brake and let the line play out easily while you count to ten. Set the brake; strike. The sailfish will leap and try to throw the hook. Although you can't map the fight tactics of the sailfish into patterns, many of them will leap into the air several times, then start a fast 500-foot run. Then the sailfish may jump some more; or he may sound and go deep. But if your sailfish remains hooked after his frenzied leaps, then it really is only a matter of time and patient pumping until the battle wearies him. The sailfish will fight until absolutely exhausted. They have been known to fight so hard that they have been lifted into the boat dead. Hardly ever is it necessary to use a gaff to boat them. Nearly all sportsmen release the sailfish after the fight, unless they want them as trophies.

THE ATLANTIC SAILFISH

Far offshore, in the Gulf Stream, your strip of mullet skips along the surface a few yards behind the power boat. Your trolling line runs from the rod to a clip holding it at the tip of an outrigger, and from there it trails in the wake where your bait is given an animated motion. Of a sudden there comes a severe jar as a long-billed fish taps your mullet and jerks the line from the clip. At once you throw the reel on free spool and let 50 or 60

yards of line slip into the ocean, giving the fish a chance to seize and swallow the bait. When you think enough time has elapsed—a few seconds in all—you re-engage the drag, wait an instant for the moving boat to take up the slack, then heave upward and backward as hard as your line and rod will stand. And quickly you strike a second time to make doubly sure the hook has gripped its target. From the water there bursts a huge sailfish with his wide dorsal fin or "sail" unfurled to the wind, his mouth open, and his head wagging furiously. Down he plunges, off he goes on a long run, then up into the air once more. He is putting on a great show, and his performance is highlighted by an act in which he "walks" over the surface on his tail for some distance. Time and again he gives terrific jumps, and flings himself in every direction to work the hook loose. If there is a moment's slack line, he is apt to succeed.

It's a spine-tingling, spectacular, high-rearing combat, like that waged by a big tarpon. You cling to the rod with all your might, letting the shoulder harness take much of the strain from your arms and wrists. The rod tip is held high so the rod and line together will share the pressure, and you crank away at the reel whenever there is the slightest chance. Gradually the tail walking and head-shaking leaps cease, and his runs become short and less vigorous. But you must wear him out completely before leading him close, for when he sees the boat he may spurt off on another wild charge. At length his energies are spent, and you reel him in so the captain or mate can grab the leader. At that instant you ease up on the reel drag a trifle, to prevent damage to your rod tip if the fish should give a sudden lurch. But shortly the big blue and silver fellow is over the side, and you have won a Silver Sailfish Button—a coveted token of your accomplishment.

Atlantic sailfish inhabit the tropical seas. They are most plentiful among the Keys and along the east coast of Florida—for example, near Stuart, Palm Beach, and Miami—but they also cruise about the Gulf of Mexico and the West Indies. In the spring and much of the summer, they are caught from Port Aransas, Freeport, Sabine Pass, and other Texas ports, sometimes as close as 3 miles offshore and other times from 20 to 30 miles out. They range along the entire coast of Florida, but on the Gulf side they are usually found some distance out. They are ready to fight at any time during the year in this region, but the most active season is generally from late December until about midsummer. Following the edge of the Gulf Stream, they may roam as far north as North Carolina in pairs or in schools spreading out for miles, but they are seldom taken above Florida. It is somewhat difficult to predict just when and where these fish will appear. The average size is close to 40 pounds, with top weights usually around 75 pounds.

These spike-billed creatures sometimes seize feather jigs, but they go more for natural baits like flying fish, sand perch, blue runner, bonito,

balao, kingfish, mackerel, mullet, and other small fish. You slit the belly of your bait fish, imbed the hook, run the leader out through the mouth and sew up the stomach. Some anglers use a piece of bonito belly or slice of king mackerel, trolling at a fast pace to try and make the bait skip over the surface. It is also effective to use a long and wide strip of barracuda, but you must keep the hook concealed and fastened so that neither the skipping motions of the bait nor the sailfish's tap will tear the hook free. The bait should trail in such a way that it won't twirl and untwist your line. Most outrigger baits are trolled 40 to 60 feet astern. Some captains prefer to fish one bait 5 or 10 feet back of the other, while other captains believe they should be trolled evenly.

Florida Keys captains generally prefer live bait, and one of the best offerings is an 8- to 10-inch blue runner, small enough so a sailfish can get the bait in its mouth and swallow it. Sand perch are high on the list of favorite live baits, and occasionally grunts are used. Mullet are thought by many to be the only live bait better than blue runners. Live mullet are hard to catch, but most of the other bait fish can readily be taken by trolling small spoons over the reefs.

Live bait is usually fished from the outriggers. The bait fish swims unconcernedly along 6 or 8 feet beneath the surface—unconcernedly, that is, until it spots an approaching sailfish. Then all tranquillity vanishes. The bait fish dashes frantically about, seeking to escape, and often dashes for the boat and tries to hide under it. Occasionally, if this keeps up but the sailfish does not strike, the captain will advise yanking the line free from the outrigger clothespin. This allows the bait fish to swim more freely and may tease the spike-bill into taking. Offshore trolling is the only practical method of capturing sailfish, and at the same time you are quite likely to snag a king mackerel, a bonito, a barracuda, a wahoo, or a dolphin. This makes for a thrill-filled day!

THE PACIFIC SAILFISH

Setting a hook into one of the Pacific's sailfish is like cutting a line that releases a tautly held and very strong spring. You have only one course of action open until the first leaping impulse subsides—to hold on and pray. Pacific sails are big—almost 100 pounds bigger on the average than their Atlantic counterpart. What's more, they are numerous. In Panama Bay, if you tie onto the first fish, you can make money betting the rods will respond to half a dozen more that day. Also, in these waters you are likely to bump heads with silver marlin, tuna, bonito, and bull dolphin. Take tackle to handle them, and also take along some spare gear. You may need it.

Pacific sailfish are sometimes to be seen as far north as Monterey Bay, but the great bulk of these dark blue and bright silver long-speared leapers

concentrates around Cape San Lucas and up into the Gulf of California. The grounds off Guaymas, Mexico, are very famous for marvelous catches of sailfish from May until late fall. Sailfish are also found off Balboa, Canal Zone, off Cabo Blanco, Peru, and near the Perlas Islands and other Pacific islands. Mystery shrouds the sailfish's life span, spawning habits, and other particulars. Although schools of young Atlantic sails turn up occasionally, Pacific sails of less than 50 pounds rarely appear. This may indicate that the Pacific variety spawn much farther from land than does the Atlantic species.

For bait, there is a choice of whole mackerel, mullet, sardines, or flying fish, or the belly strip from a mackerel or bonito. These should be prepared as described for the Atlantic species. When trolling for Pacific sailfish, as with the other billfish previously mentioned, it should be remembered that they have the habit of first striking their prey to stun or kill it before they swallow the bait. Therefore you should never try to set the hook when you feel the initial tap; instead, release the reel drag and let several yards of line coast backward. This will cause the sailfish to think that your bait has been crippled by his blow and will give him time to snatch the lure. Then, as he starts off, slam it to him—hard! Give two or three stiff jerks to be certain the hook will cling. Keep the rod tip elevated and the line taut, and you'll have one of the pluckiest, most sensational encounters with a surface-beating fish that you've ever lived through.

Sailfish seldom go for artificial lures, but now and then they may be taken on feather jigs. These jigs seem to be most attractive when the sailfish are idly moving along the surface. When there comes the rap of a bill on your feather jig, the best plan is to lower the rod tip and then strike at once; do not let any line drift back, as you do when using natural baits. This will prevent the fish from getting wise to the deception by feeling the metal—if he did, he'd quickly toss out the jig. Two or three sharp jerks are needed, though, to make a solid connection.

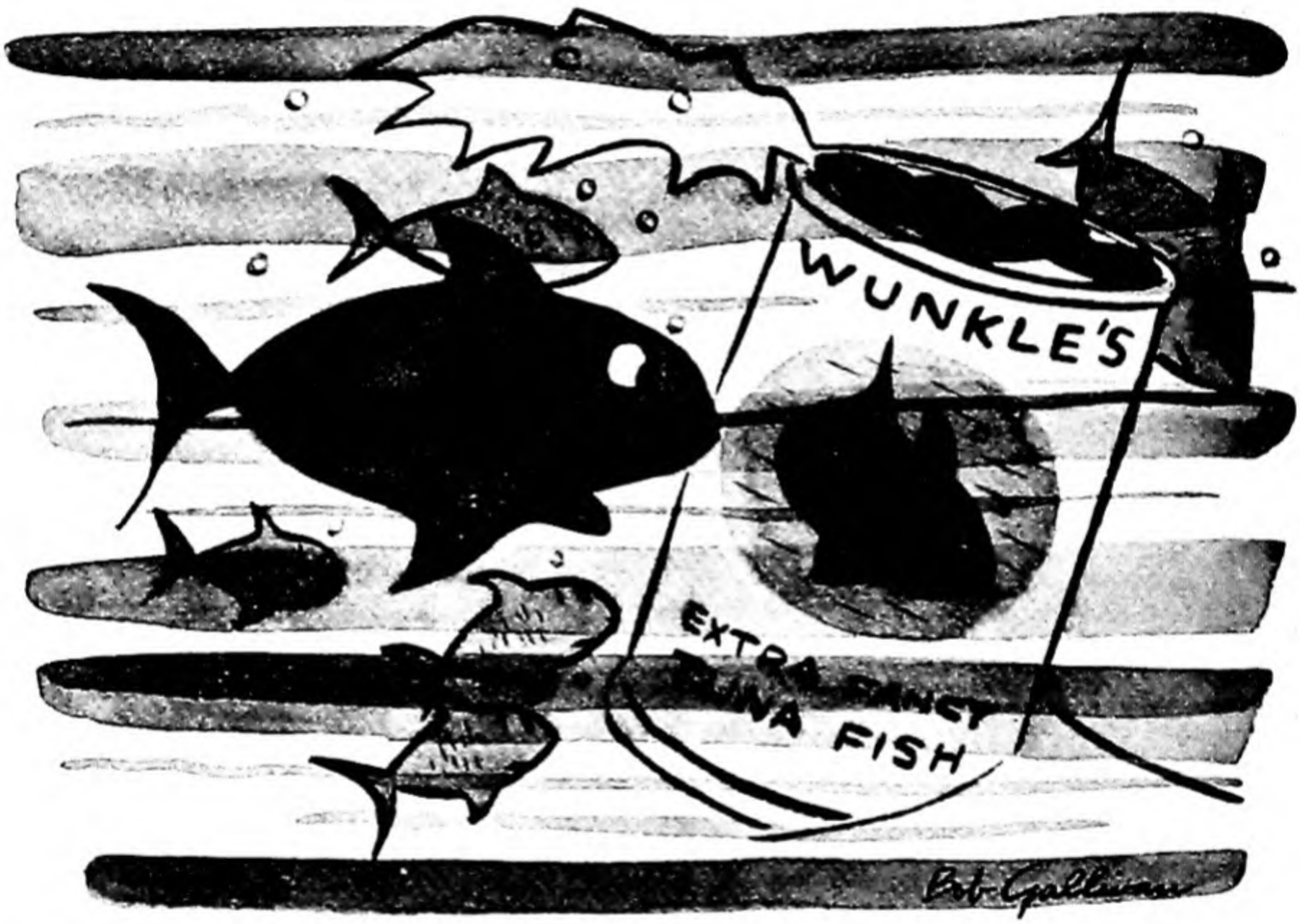
To repeat, every sailfish should be released unless it is a record-making fish, or is wanted for mounting. If he isn't too badly injured, a fish will live to produce thousands more of his kind. Care should be taken in bringing a sailfish aboard, so that he may be released uninjured.

Tuna—giants of the sea

The tuna is the back-breaker of all the game fishes. He does all his fighting in submarine fashion. There is none of the thrill and spectacular skittering and tail-walking of the sailfish, nor do you get the heart-pounding broach of the marlin. The bluefin tuna is terrifically strong and heavy. He is all head and girth and his body stops abruptly at the tail so that he is one

huge chunk without any gradual tapering. But he is definitely not a chunk in the "clumsy" sense of the word. His body, like all those of the mackerel family, is utterly streamlined and he is capable of tremendous runs and rushes. His strength is amazing. It often outlasts that of the weary fisherman, who begins to wonder why the hell he ever got the damned thing on his line in the first place. In other words, when you troll for tuna don't be a glutton. Catch one at a time and forget the rest. This is the sage advice given by Richard Sale in the following account.

The giant bluefin, from 300 to 1,000 pounds, knifes through the water like a blue torpedo chasing your bait. When he strikes, you have no



"Your Uncle Herbert, children, may his soul rest in peace."

choice but to let him go, and pray you can recoup enough line so that water pressure doesn't pop it. The tuna is like a bulldog. After you have socked the hook into his mouth, he will make a run, long or short, you've no way of telling. Following this, he dives to the bottom and stands on his head, sulking there. It takes dexterity and muscle to bring his head up. You do it by short, sharp pumps the moment you can and they say it takes the heart out of him. Someone once told me a tuna rests two minutes for every one you do, and there's sense in it. You have to keep him coming all the time or he'll stay out there forever. After you finally pump him in close to the boat the first time, he instantly breaks your heart by running out hard

again, and you have to do it all over a second time. He hasn't seen the boat before and when he does see it, it scares him and he's gone like the wind.

The bluefin, known also as "horse mackerel" and great albacore, is the largest member of the mackerel family, and moves in big schools. Generally they leave the vicinity of Bimini, West Indies, late in the spring and migrate to Labrador if the water temperature is warm enough. These fish are caught most frequently during the summer and early fall from New Jersey to Nova Scotia on the East Coast. On the West Coast, between Guadalupe Island, off Mexico, and northern Oregon, schools of bluefin tuna follow the packs of bait fish on their annual migrations. In the California region, particularly around the Catalina Islands, bluefins are one of the most famous and popular of the big-game species. These fish are taken most frequently during June, July, and August, with an over-all season lasting from May to December.

Though giant tuna generally prefer meat, they can be sometimes taken on artificial lures. Feather jigs seem to be best for these large fish, with cedar and metal squids also scoring. The location of the tuna determines the kind of fresh bait to offer, since the species of small fish vary at different places and times of the season. Along the New England coast good luck is had by using mackerel, whiting, whole bunkers, or hake for bait, and trolling deep. Off Long Island, New Jersey, and the West Coast, the system is to pour over a stream of ground chum and use a whole herring or menhaden for the tempter. The big fish often come right up to the stern in the chum and look many times their actual size as they grab the chunks.

A big tuna usually takes the bait gently and swims off a bit before making the big swallow. When he has clamped his jaws over the bait, you lean back, brace your feet, and throw all the force you can muster against the fish, striking hard several times to imbed the hook solidly. You will, of course, be wearing a leather shoulder harness for leverage. Don't tighten the drag on your reel too much at first, or the hook may pull out. Give the tuna a chance to make his first run. After that he will sound deeply, unless you are lucky enough to prevent it. It's important not to let him get directly beneath the boat, or he'll rest and you can't readily bring him surfaceward. Keep to one side of him, and let out 100 yards or more of line. Then apply all the pressure necessary with the reel drag.

Your next problem will be to begin the long performance of pumping and reeling, pumping and reeling, until at length your catch is at the top where you can really gain some headway at breaking down his resistance. When he reaches the surface, he'll probably shoot off on another long race, so you must crank in as much line as you can while pumping him from the depths. You have to keep him coming constantly toward the boat and do not give him an opportunity to rest, or you'll spend extra hours tussling with the big

brute—unless, that is, your own endurance collapses first. Whenever he wants to "take off," let him! The more line he pulls out, the heavier is the burden he must buck against.

Boating a giant bluefin is a tricky art calling for a flying gaff, a tail loop, and a lot of running around the cockpit. When this exciting process starts (just as soon as the mate's gloved hand gets hold of the leader), loosen your drag so a surprise lunge by the fish doesn't shatter your expensive rod against the gunwale. Be prepared for the unexpected! You can always tighten up and pump the fish back, but the reverse process will not work. Plan your actions in advance and you are more likely to emerge the winner.

Getting the big fish into the boat is another difficult job, but here, under IGFA rules, the captain and his crew can help you. Because of their boat's design, some captains and crews just haul a big bluefin over the side. This is the method generally used off Wedgeport, Nova Scotia. On both Atlantic and Pacific coasts, the gin pole is popular. This device is a stout, short mast fitted with a block and tackle at the upper end and is used to "derrick" the fish aboard. In Southern waters, a roller on the side or stern, or an open-door arrangement in the boat's transom, is generally used to bring big fellows aboard.

Before you start still fishing or trolling, you should pay out about 50 yards of line to wet it thoroughly so it may be controlled better if a strike comes shortly after the bait or lure has been put overboard. You'll soon learn how much strain you can safely put on your rod and line, and how to regulate the drag of your reel to best advantage. This is a knack that each angler must acquire for himself through actual experience. It is always the object of anglers to use light tackle for the high sport it gives and to let the fish have an even break for freedom, but you have to become accustomed to the "feel" of both the rod and the lunging fish in order to handle the lighter equipment successfully.

Although still fishing accounts for some fine bluefins, the favorite method throughout the realm of the tuna is trolling. Because of the movement of a trolled bait, the big fellow has no time to inspect the bait, and thus he must take it immediately rather than toying with it as he prefers. When trolled, the hook is often set right away. But two or three stiff jerks should be used to set the hook solidly. While trolling, keep the bait close to the boat—perhaps only 50 feet away—so that when a bluefin starts on his first run, and then sounds, you have plenty of line to give him.

Tuna are particularly fond of flying fish, so any bait or lure that skips over the water like a frightened flying fish gets attention. Therefore outriggers are often employed to make the baited hook act like a flying fish. An outrigger is of course a metal or bamboo pole, ordinarily extending outward 12 or 15 feet from the side of the boat, to keep the bait free from the

wake of the boat and to make it jump and skip along the surface of the waves.

The yellowfin tuna likes warm seas and does not go into lower-temperature waters as much as the bluefin. Within its range along the Atlantic Coast, from Maryland to Florida, the yellowfin is not a common fish. It is taken off the east coast of Florida and in the West Indies in winter and early spring, and some are taken at Bermuda. It is much more abundant in the Pacific, especially from Point Conception southward. While the tasty yellowfin may be caught all year in the warm waters off Lower California, the best season for boats putting out from the Los Angeles and San Diego areas extends from June to October. Yellowfin up to 450 pounds have been known, although a fish over 125 pounds is rather rare.

These fish are taken with the same trolling tactics, using outriggers, as bluefins. The yellowfins will often strike swiftly-moving lures—like feather and bone jigs, metal squids, and plugs—as well as natural squids, shrimps, whole mackerel, herring, and flying fish.

Charter boats

Charter boats are available at various places along our vast coastline. Most cities and towns with good fishing have a fleet. The charter is usually smaller than the party boat, and the rates are much higher. While the party boat anchors for inshore fishing, the charter vessel usually trolls or drifts for the real gamesters—marlin, sailfish, tarpon, tuna, and similar heavyweights. There are two basic types of charter boat.

The smaller of the two types are the guide boats. These range from large outboard rigs equipped with twin power plants to inboard sea skiffs and open motorboats up to about 30 feet in length. Notable guide boat centers are Boca Grande, Florida, and the Puget Sound area, Washington—tarpon and salmon hot spots, respectively. Guide boat fishing generally is for the big inshore game, and you are actually paying more for the guides' knowledge of where the fish are than for the boat itself. The cost, which includes the boat and the services of the guide, is $15 to $45 per day. Lunch, bait, and the inevitable extras must, of course, be added to the cost of a day's outing.

The true charter boat, as opposed to the smaller open guide boat, is an offshore craft ranging 30 to 60 feet in over-all length, usually equipped with twin gas or diesel engines, outriggers, fishing chairs, live-bait wells, fish boxes, ship-to-shore radio, and many of the items that make up the well-equipped offshore fishing boat. Sheltered cabins, bunks, and all the other comforts of yachting are standard. The charter boat is manned by a captain and his mate, both experienced in big-game fishing.

At present, rates for good charter boats range from about $40 per day to $150—and sometimes more. Rates depend upon the season and the quality of the fishing—it's the old law of supply and demand. These figures cover the cost of boat and crew alone; bait, lunch, and so on are extra. Some boats charge a small fee for big-game tackle. Remember that the figures mentioned here can be divided by the number of persons in the fishing party. If you go it alone, the rates are the same as for four or six. The average fishing party along the Eastern seaboard is generally four persons, while on the West Coast, where the charter boats are larger, the parties may reach as many as twenty passengers.

What do you get for your money when you hire a charter boat? First, you get privacy. That is, instead of being one of a big group of party-boat fishermen, mostly strangers, you make up your own group of friends. Next, you get exciting fishing. Instead of the party boat's hand line or boat rod, you use real big-game tackle, and instead of going after bottom fish like flounders, you have the chance to take some of the smashing fighters of the deep, such as sailfish, tuna, swordfish, or marlin. Another benefit of charter-boat fishing not to be overlooked is a chance of education. A day offshore with the skipper who gives you the fishing lore it took him many years to acquire is in itself invaluable. Your knowledge of salt-water fishing will be broadened and you'll learn techniques that would be difficult to set down in words. But if you plan to charter a boat, you must make a reservation well in advance—especially on weekends. On weekdays you may find days when the boats aren't booked, but even then it pays to make a call in advance to reserve a boat.

Every salt-water angler should have a go at big game at least once in his lifetime. When you do have the opportunity, gather some friends and give it a try. Splitting the cost will make the junket much less expensive. The $15 to $30 your share will cost is well worth every cent. Spread out over your total fishing costs over the years, a few days offshore in a charter boat won't amount to much. You'll bring home a fine store of memories, and—who knows?—you might boat a record-size denizen of the deep.

9

101 Favorite fishing spots on the North American continent

There are indeed countless hundreds of thousands of *good* fishing places embraced on this vast expanse called the North American continent. But, for the real fisherman, we only want to concern ourself with the *best* places.

Where are these angling meccas? What can you expect to catch there? When should you venture forth? What will you find in the way of accommodations? How is the best way for you to get there? What can you do with the better half? Where can you get further information?

These and other equally ripe questions will be answered in this chapter in order to afford you that most precious of all things: a new adventure in fishing.

Over the years we have collected fishing reports from the "experts" who have written for our magazine and from the readers themselves. The following is a compilation of *Esquire*'s 101 favorite fishing spots on the North American continent:

United States

1. ALABAMA: TVA Dam System

Fishing excellent in still waters above four major dams built in TVA system, north Alabama. Record smallmouth bass caught in Wilson Lake formed by Wilson Dam, Florence, Alabama. Largemouth bass, white bass, walleyes, channel catfish also in abundance. No closed season or size limits on game fishing. April, May, October, November best months. Boats, motors, guides available at number of camps.

EQUIPMENT: *Smallmouth bass:* Bait casting, fly casting, spinning. Surface plugs best except in summer months when fish run deep. *Channel catfish:* Fishermen using strong boats and fast motors push into edge of boils caused by powerhouse turbines, then drift downcurrent, fishing with light tackle for channel catfish. Annual fishing license for nonresidents: $5.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Mild weather comes early, stays late. Many cool nights. Warm jacket for early morning bass fishing. No boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Florence, Alabama, is largest city of Muscle Shoals area. Many camps.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: North Alabama State Fair in September. Tour of dams exciting. Farmers' Curb Market open Tuesday, Saturday in Florence.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Muscle Shoals. Florence to Wilson Lake, 2 miles by car; to Wheeler Lake formed by Wheeler Dam, 17 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Conservation, Montgomery 4, Alabama.

2. ALASKA: Kahkanok River

Near Iliamna Lake, the Kahkanok River is rated by experts as best rainbow trout fishing stream in Alaska, where rainbows abound. No roads leading in to it, but you can take 160-mile hop by air from Anchorage. Season open during all ice-free periods and you can take as many as you wish, but can keep only 10 fish or 10 pounds and one fish. July, August are best months. Guides available in Anchorage. No facilities whatsoever in fishing area.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Dynamic adversary, especially attracted to wet flies here. Spoons and plugs are good, too. Fishing license for nonresidents: $2.50 annually.

WHAT TO WEAR: This is chill northland, especially just after ice-out. Wear your woolies and bring parka and rain gear. Armpit waders are a must.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations are nonexistent. You'll be living in tent you bring with you. Anchorage is your home base.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: She can be grandly entertained in Anchorage and, if she's sturdy, she'll go for the simple life up on river.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Anchorage. Anchorage to the fishing area, by chartered aircraft.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Division of Tourist & Economic Development, Klein Building, Juneau, Alaska.

3. ALASKA: Battle Lake

Just a little way back from the gigantic Bristol Bay is Battle Lake, a little-known, little-fished paradise for lake trout, grayling, and rainbows. You'll fly in from Anchorage. Season is open as long as ice is out and you can catch granddaddy-size of all three. Ten fish or 10 pounds and one fish limit. July, August, and early September are best months. Boats, motors, cook, guides available.

EQUIPMENT: *Lake trout:* Trollers with spoons and old faithful bait-casting rods will have extraordinary success on Battle Lake. Some trout run over 30 pounds, so be prepared. *Rainbow* and *grayling trout:* Wet or dry flies will have trout jumping for your hook. Many anglers prefer casting rod with spoon or plug. Fishing license for nonresidents: $2.50 annually.

WHAT TO WEAR: Mighty cold in these parts after ice-out and in fall before ice comes again. Wear your warmest clothing and don't forget rain wear. Bring along your armpit waders in case you get an urge to fish trout streams in the neighborhood.

WHERE TO STAY: Fish camps are rough but quite comfortable and have all basics. You may want to stay over for a few nights and then fly back to home base in Anchorage.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: She ought to enjoy a few days of the rugged life. She is almost certain to see one or more big Alaska brown bear, moose, and caribou. Ample city life in Anchorage if you care to depart for few days of strictly male fishing on Battle Lake.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Anchorage. Anchorage to Battle Lake by chartered air.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Division of Tourist & Economic Development, Klein Building, Juneau, Alaska.

4. ALASKA: Situk River

On strip of land that hangs down from Alaska like a tail and robs British Columbia of about half its coastline, this small river empties into Pacific at Yakutat. In June, rainbow trout (Alaskan "steelheads") and in September, silver salmon are present en masse. No salmon limit. Ten trout or 10 pounds and one fish. No facilities except emergency overnight quarters at CAA airport. Fly in from Juneau with your equipment.

EQUIPMENT: *Silver salmon:* Top-notch game fish that hit hard and fight harder. Streamer flies are best. Be sure your rod is a sturdy one. *Steelheads:* Bait-casters use daredevil spoon or salmon eggs. Wet flies are effective, too. Fishing license is $2.50 for the year.

WHAT TO WEAR: Bring along your warmest clothes and rain wear. Armpit waders are a must.

WHERE TO STAY: No camp here except your tent plus a small village, cannery and some supplies at Yakutat. Juneau is your home base.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: If she's not inclined to rough it, she'll find entertainment in the capital city of Alaska, Juneau.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Juneau. Juneau to Yakutat is 210 miles by air, daily service.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Division of Tourist & Economic Development, Klein Building, Juneau, Alaska.

5. ARIZONA: Big Lake

Big Lake, in White Mountain area, eastern central Arizona, has excellent reputation for rainbows, cutthroat, and grayling. Trout rarely weigh less than 2 pounds; weights up to 8 pounds. No closed season or size limits. Bag limit: 10 fish. June to October are best. Boats available, but no accommodations. Guides available at Big Lake boat dock.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Rises gamely to wet and dry flies. Live bait prohibited. Nonresident five-day fishing license: $5.00; season license: $10.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Mountainous country quite cool in evenings, but can get very hot during day. Rain wear, sweaters, warm clothing. No boots for Big Lake fishing; hip boots good idea when fishing White Mountains streams.

WHERE TO STAY: Ideal for pack trips, camping out. Springerville nearest town.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Country to west and south of Big Lake is Apache Indian Reservation. Colorful trips into reservation arranged with Indian Service.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Albuquerque. Albuquerque to Big Lake, 261 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Arizona Game & Fish Commission, Arizona State Building, Phoenix, Arizona.

6. ARKANSAS: Indian Bay

Largemouth black bass, bream, and crappie abound in Maddox Bay, East Lake, and Indian Bay, all oxbow lakes formed from old channel of White River. This is backcountry, and fishing is excellent. No closed season, but best catches usually come in May, June, October, and November. No minimum size; creel limits are 8 per day for bass, 15 for crappie, 25 for bream. Good idea to have guide. Boats for hire on lakes, and guides available at Hollow Grove, Brinkley, and along lake area.

EQUIPMENT: *Bass and bream:* Casting from boats is usual method. Plugs, flies for bass, spinners and popping bugs for bream. Ten-day nonresident license: $2.00; season: $5.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Light wool for spring and fall, with warm wool and rain gear for early and late weeks. Cotton and light wool for summer.

WHERE TO STAY: This is primarily camping area. Expect to tent out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Wife should be fisherman or stay home.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Memphis. Memphis to lakes, 101 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Secretary, Arkansas Game and Fish Commission, Little Rock, Arkansas.

7. CALIFORNIA: San Diego

You'll find every type of deep-sea fishing—open party, charter boats, barges. San Diego's harbor is superb. Here you can get in on the best roundup of smaller species to be had anywhere along the coast. Farther out, there are yellowtails, bluefin tuna, white and black sea bass, Pacific barracuda, striped marlin, and swordfish, to name a few. Marlin put San Diego on the big-game angler's map, for these powerful fighters roam not far from the mainland. Fishing gets into high gear in Southern California about the first of June, and holds strong until around the middle of September. San Diego is a main focal point for the yellowtail fleet. Thousands of anglers head for the Coronado Islands when runs of these desirable scrappers are on. Big ones up to 40 pounds and more are taken, and rivalry becomes fast and furious, especially while San Diego's Yellowtail Fishing Derby is in progress. For a change of scenery you can have fun in Mission Bay, tickling the palates of corbina, croakers, mackerel, sea perch, bass, and halibut with baits and lures either from boats or the shore. Should you wish to cast or still-fish for bottom feeders, take your stand on one of the piers that extend several hundred feet out into the ocean at Ocean Beach, Pacific Beach, Del Mar, and Oceanside.

EQUIPMENT: Standard salt-water gear necessary for bottom and surf fishing. Charter boats for big-game supply tackle. License is required for salt-water fishing.

WHAT TO WEAR: Summer wear is a must here.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations are very good and numerous.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: All city facilities are here.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to San Diego.

INFORMATION SERVICE: San Diego–California Club, 499 West Broadway, San Diego, California; or Department of Fish and Game, 926 J Street, Sacramento, California.

8. CALIFORNIA: Marble Mountain

Real wilderness in extreme northern part of California. Lakes of Marble Mountain well stocked with brook and rainbow trout. Best fishing months September and October, but season open from May 2 to October 31. Bag limit 15 trout. Various regulations should be checked before you start for the wilderness. No boats available for rental.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* During best months, wet and dry flies very effective. However, in July and August, trout seek cool water. Use deep fly. spinner, or bait sunk very deep. *Brook Trout:* Any number of fly patterns will attract brookies. Fly fishermen usually cast upstream for them. Fishing license, 10 days, nonresident: $3.00; annual: $10.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Weather is brisk in this lovely mountain country. You will need warm clothing. Hikers take heavy shoes, parka, and rest of usual camping-out equipment. Steelheads and salmon in streams in lower part of area, so bring your hip boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Ideal country for back-pack or horse trips. Trails are kept open by Forest Service. Lodgings available at several of rough-hewn camps hereabouts.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: It's a long way from San Francisco, but she might like to stay there while you take plane hop up to area. Country around Weed, however, is second to none for scenic beauty and Mount Shasta is nearby.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Redding, via San Francisco. Redding to Weed by car, 74 miles.

INFORMATION SERVICE: State of California, Department of Fish and Game, 926 J Street, Sacramento, California.

9. CALIFORNIA: Eel River

This is one of the best rivers in the West for giant steelhead fishing. Its mouth is a few miles northwest of Fortuna. Guides are available.

EQUIPMENT: Lower stretches of the Eel are best fly fishing. But the steelheads in this vicinity are big and brawny, and should be fished accordingly.

WHAT TO WEAR: Weather is very brisk, but pleasant. You should have warm clothing with you.

WHERE TO STAY: Hotels, motels, and cabin accommodations in towns of Eureka and Fortuna.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: There's plenty a fishing widow can do and see in this section of the country.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Eureka. From Eureka to the mouth of Eel is about 15 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: State of California, Department of Fish and Game, 926 J Street, Sacramento, California.

10. COLORADO: Gunnison River

One of very best trout streams anywhere. Gunnison River flows through central Colorado, touching such cities as Delta and Gunnison. Brook, brown, and rainbow trout. Trout season begins May 25, ends October 31. Bag limit: 10 to 20 fish according to time of year. Late summer, early fall, best months. Elevation 7,683. Guides available in Gunnison. Boats available; wading preferred.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Rises easily to dry or wet fly. Fly-spinner combo also effective. *Brook trout:* Wet or dry flies (Adams and Quill Gordon, especially). Angleworms and minnows favored by live-bait fanciers. *Brown trout:* Sturdy fighter attracted by streamer flies (Royal Coachmen, especially). Nonresident 5-day license: $3.00; season: $10.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Rugged, dry, sunny country, air is always brisk, but light woolen sweaters and jacket are safe. Hip boots a must.

WHERE TO STAY: Cabins, motor courts, and lodges are modern and abundant. Excellent camping sites in area if you're roughing it.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Fabulous scenery. Rodeo in Gunnison mid-July.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Gunnison. Gunnison to fishing areas, a few miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: State of Colorado, Game & Fish Commission, Denver, Colorado.

11. COLORADO: Upper Rio Grande

Stubborn, fat brown and rainbow trout are most sought-after denizens of upper Rio Grande. Ranging from 6 to 20 pounds and over, rainbows and browns like fast, rocky streams. Season, generally, open from May 25 to October 31, but most anglers find fall is best. Below Monte Vista to border, season is open year round. No size limits on trout, but check your regulations on daily bag limit. Strangers ought to have guides.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Rainbows come swimming after regular wet and dry flies, nymphs, and usual patterns. Ditto for brown trout. Look for a tough fight, especially from latter. They are a tough breed. Fishing license annually for nonresident: $10.00; 5 days: $3.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Bring your hip boots, heavy wool shirt, and light but weatherized jacket. Weather is never too hot, but it does get cool at night. If you're fishing before dawn, you'll want warmth.

WHERE TO STAY: Ideal area for camping out. Pack trip up to source of Rio Grande is fine sport. Monte Vista and Grande offer pleasant accommodations.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Beautiful country for a nature lover. In August, the stampede and rodeo at Monte Vista are worth trip.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Pueblo. Pueblo to Monte Vista, 142 miles by car. Monte Vista has small airfield, however, and you can hop over to Monte Vista as the crow flies in no time. Monte Vista to Grande, 38 miles.

INFORMATION SERVICE: State of Colorado, Game and Fish Commission, Denver 1, Colorado.

12. FLORIDA: Central-Southern

St. Johns River flows out of northeast into central section of state; one of most famous largemouth black bass fishing grounds in world. Farther south, Kissimmee River system and Lake Okeechobee, second-largest fresh-water lake entirely in continental U.S.A., also favorite black bass country. Open season all year round, no size limits, best months in early spring. Guides available from $7.50 to $15.00 and up per day (fee includes fast boat and motor as well as detailed information). Panfish also abound in area.

EQUIPMENT: *Largemouth bass:* Strikes at both surface and submerged plugs. Fond of hiding under lily pads. Tends to seek cooler, deeper waters during heat of day. Underwater spoons, pork-rind bait used with good results. Non-resident license, 14 days: $3.25; annual: $8.00 per person.

WHAT TO WEAR: Light clothing all year round. Winter visitors ought to pack jackets, though. Boots unnecessary.

WHERE TO STAY: River dotted with hotels, lodges; every price bracket. Way down south, around Lake Okeechobee, similar conditions prevail.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: The St. Johns flows only a short distance from the ocean. St. Augustine and Daytona Beach are both exciting towns in their own way —for sight-seeing, shopping, evening entertainment. Don't miss Ravine Gardens at Palatka on the St. Johns. Around Lake Okeechobee, she can make one of the most unusual sight-seeing trips in America—through Everglades in a swamp buggy. This, too, is Seminole country.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Jacksonville. Car mileage Jacksonville to Palatka, 68. For Lake Okeechobee, air round trip to Palm Beach. Palm Beach to Clewiston, 55 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Game & Fresh-Water Fish Commission, Division of Information and Education, Tallahassee, Florida.

13. FLORIDA: STUART

This port is acknowledge by all national authorities to be the best place to catch a sailfish. While sails are found in the Gulf Stream from Stuart south to Key West, the greatest concentration is usually off this port. With a fine fleet of charter cruisers captained by veteran fishing guides and mates, the fleet which sails from St. Lucie Inlet accounts most consistently for catches. It is a matter of record that as high as a dozen or more sails per boat may be caught during a phenomenal run. During late November and December, the sailfish "ball the bait" off Stuart, riding herd on frightened minnows like Indians surrounding wagon trains. In such runs, eight to ten sail per boat is common. January, when the Sailfish Light Tackle Tournament is held, February, and March are excellent months. Sailfish are caught all summer long, some of the biggest being landed in June and July. Sailfishing is definitely a year-round sport here.

EQUIPMENT: Charter boats supply tackle. No license is required for fishing the salt and brackish waters.

WHAT TO WEAR: Light clothing all year round.

WHERE TO STAY: Hotels and motels are available in town.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: There is plenty to do in the "Land of Rivers" for any wife.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Palm Beach. By car, it's 38 miles to Stuart.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Stuart Chamber of Commerce, Stuart, Florida.

14. FLORIDA: Shark River

These are tarpon waters and they're plenty wild in the small bays and bigger waters. Fishing is year-round but summer season best for the big fellows. Boats, tackle, and guides are available.

EQUIPMENT: Fly casting, plug and spoon trolling, and cut-bait bottom fishing. No license is required for salt- or brackish-water fishing.

WHAT TO WEAR: It's just plain hot here, so dress accordingly.

WHERE TO STAY: There are several fishing camps in the area.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Best leave her in Miami.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Miami. Car or charter plane to the Shark River region.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Florida Development Commission, Tallahassee, Florida.

15. FLORIDA: Key West

For the light-tackle enthusiasts, the number one fish of Florida is the bonefish, found only in the shallow coastal waters from Biscayne Bay south through the Keys. They do not grow very large and do not leap, but they are exceedingly fast and make long runs when hooked. Bonefish are wary and timid and much caution must be used in approaching a feeding school, which you can often locate by spotting the tails of the fish as they stand on their noses to feed in the shallow water. Occasionally a permit, or great pompano, is encountered while bonefishing, and then you have your hands full. There are many fishing camps along the Overseas Highway to Key West, where good bonefishing may be found, as well as boats for reef fishing and Gulf Stream fishing.

WHAT TO WEAR: The Keys are generally rather hot, but nights are rather cool.

WHERE TO STAY: Plenty of motels, cabins, and hotels all the way to Key West, in addition to fishing camps.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Take a tour of the Keys, swim, or stay in Miami.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Miami or Key West.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Florida Development Commission, Tallahassee, Florida.

16. GEORGIA: Clark Hill Reservoir

Georgia and South Carolina share this new and promising lake. See *South Carolina* (No. 60) for complete description.

17. IDAHO: Main Salmon River

Along Main Salmon, its forks and tributaries, Chinook salmon head for spawning areas. Ranging in size up to 40 pounds, Chinook bag limit is 2 per day. Season, June 4 through October 31. July, early August are best months. This is rugged country. Guides are available in small towns and at Stanley Basin Recreational Area.

EQUIPMENT: *Chinook salmon:* Fishermen use either salmon eggs in clusters or spoons on hook and line to get their daily bag. Spearing salmon has been outlawed since 1946. Nonresident license, 5 days: $3.00; annual: $10.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Since midday in Idaho during summer is usually warm, fishermen should have lightweight clothing for warm-weather comfort. Jacket for early morning and evening angling. Rugged shoes and hip boots are indispensable.

WHERE TO STAY: There are a number of small resorts within hiking distance of the river and several small towns built right on it. However, you might want to stay in Boise, fly in for a few days' fishing, camp out overnight and then return to home base.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Boise is a shopping center and also state capital of Idaho. You and the wife may want to fly over to Sun Valley, about 110 miles by air, where there are summer sports such as golf, tennis, and swimming in the incomparable valley.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Boise. Boise to Stanley Basin Recreational Area, 250 miles. Stanley Basin only 74 miles from Sun Valley.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Idaho State Fish and Game Department, 518 Front Street, Boise, Idaho.

18. IDAHO: Lake Pend Oreille

State-wide general fishing season runs from June 4 through October 31 except for northern lakes, which are open from May 3 through November 30. Experienced fly fishermen will enjoy challenge offered by Silver Creek in Blaine County, one of finest rainbow trout streams. In northern Idaho, Lake Pend Oreille yields good catches of Kamloops rainbow trout running to 30 pounds. Trolling is common practice on Pend Oreille, with best results in spring and fall. Boats, motors, available.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Rise to bait in spring; wet or dry flies in summer, fall. Some anglers like to bring fly-spinner combo.

WHAT TO WEAR: Nights are cool. Early-morning or late-evening trout fishing always best. Idaho fishermen wear light wool shirts to beat the chill. Heavy hiking shoes and hip boots for stream fishing are a must.

WHERE TO STAY: Lakes are well supplied with tourist accommodations. Camping out is tops.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Some entertainment at resorts in area, but if she is bored, Spokane is only 79 miles from Sandpoint.

TRAVEL DATA: State authorities recommend that you own or rent car or plane. Landing strips have been built in many primitive areas which have access to good fishing waters. Planes may be chartered throughout state. Air to Spokane. Car milage Spokane to Sandpoint, 79 miles.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Idaho State Fish and Game Department, 518 Front Street, Boise, Idaho.

19. KENTUCKY: Kentucky Lake

Largest man-made lake in world; a famed bass fishing area. Located in southwestern part of state, Kentucky Lake has 2,200 miles of shoreline. Largemouth bass are center of attraction. Season open all year round, spring best months. Daily limit of 10, size limit 10 inches. Most fishermen troll for this fellow. 1952 Creel Census shows average catch of 3 fish per hour in Kentucky Lake. Boats and motors available.

EQUIPMENT: *Largemouth bass:* Prefers quiet water containing waterweeds, stumps, shady nooks. Early in season, live bait preferred, but wet and dry flies and plugs are good most any time. Nonresident fishing license: $5.00 annually; $2.00 for 10 days.

WHAT TO WEAR: Nights pleasant enough here, but begins to get warm during days of late April. Better take along jacket just in case.

WHERE TO STAY: Hotel and motel accommodations in area. Also, this is grand roughing-it country. You'll want to camp out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Paducah close at hand for evening in town, but Kentucky Lake is still being developed and entertainment is scarce.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Paducah. Paducah to Kentucky Lake, 41 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Fish and Wildlife Resources, Division of Fisheries, Frankfort, Kentucky.

20. KENTUCKY: Dale Hollow

Excellent spot shared with Tennessee. For details see listing under *Tennessee* (No. 61).

21. LOUISIANA: Cenla Region

Cenla—short for Central Louisiana. Area pocked with lakes, streams, bayous. Largemouth, smallmouth bass are chief game fish, running to 3 and 10 pounds, respectively, with average about half that weight. Three of best lakes for largemouths in Cenla are Iatt Lake in Grant Parish, Catahoula Lake in La Salle Parish, and Valentine Lake in Kisatchie National Forest in Rapides Parish. Smallmouth bass in Whiskey Chitto, Ten Mile Creeks, Allen Parish, especially abundant. Season open all year round, spring months best. Limit on bass, 15 per day, 10 inches or more. Boats, motors available on all lakes, most streams.

EQUIPMENT: *Largemouth bass:* Like to relax in shade of overhanging ledge and in weeds along shore. Plug fishermen will probably have slightly better luck than fly-casters or live-bait fanciers. *Smallmouth bass:* Among gamest of fish, he goes for wet or dry flies, plugs, and minnows. Fishing license: nonresident, $2.00 for 7 days; $5.00 annually.

WHAT TO WEAR: It's rather cool early in spring, developing later into typical Southern summer weather. You will need jacket and hip boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Alexandria and Pineville on the Red River are practically twin cities in the center of this area. Good roads lead off in three directions to the

bass lakes, myriad streams, and camp sites. This is resort country; accommodations are excellent.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: If she's bird watcher, central Louisiana is ideal. Louisiana is winter home for at least 20 species of ducks and many other migratory and tropical fowl. Area has reputation for congeniality.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Alexandria. Alexandria to Iatt Lake, 35 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Central Louisiana Association, Alexandria, Louisiana.

22. MAINE: Narraguagus River

This river offers approximately 20 miles of excellent Atlantic salmon fishing. The season opens May 1 and extends to September 15, but the best fishing is from mid-May to the end of June. Guides and tackle are available. Another good salmon stream in the area is Dennys River at Dennysville.

EQUIPMENT: For *Atlantic salmon,* use flies only. A standard salmon rod weighing from 7 to 10 ounces, and a larger capacity reel with regular tapered fly line, plus backing, should be part of your equipment. Include salmon flies of conventional or English type and heavy leaders. Nonresident fishing license: 3 days: $3.25; 15 days: $5.75; season: $8.75.

WHAT TO WEAR: Wear warm clothing clothing in spring; later, usual summer stuff. Nights downright cool. During spring season a raincoat or parka is a must.

WHERE TO STAY: Fishing camp facilities are available.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Limited activities in area.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Bangor. Bangor to Cherryfield, about 47 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Maine Publicity Bureau, Portland, Maine.

23. MAINE: Fish River Region

One of the outstanding fishing regions in United States. Fish River chain includes six major lakes plus many more ponds and streams. Landlocked salmon are huge. Trout also numerous. Salmon and trout season open soon as ice is out, lasts until September 30. From April to middle of July and again in September when waters begin to cool are best salmon months. Bag limit varies—see regulations. Salmon must be over 14 inches long. Boats, motors, and guides available.

EQUIPMENT: *Landlocked salmon:* Streamer flies, either cast or troll. Regular flies, wet or dry, are best late in the season. Pearl Wobbler, Flat Fish lures are best for trolling. *Brook trout:* Maine trout range up to 7 pounds of fighting fury. Brook trout tend to seek same waters and bite same lures as salmon; they take bait and small flies especially. Nonresident fishing license: 3 days: $3.25; 15 days: $5.75; season: $8.75.

WHAT TO WEAR: Heavy winter wear is necessary for early spring. Rough clothing is always right. Raincoat is a must. Hip boots, too.

WHERE TO STAY: Famous Maine sporting camps are everywhere. Individual cabins, central dining and recreation hall. Camping out is also great sport in summer.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Evening entertainment—on simple, wholesome side—at most sporting camps and hotels in area.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Presque Isle. Presque Isle to lake region, 42 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Maine Publicity Bureau, Portland, Maine.

24. MAINE: Moosehead Lake

One of largest bodies of fresh water wholly within one state in United States, Moosehead Lake is 40 miles long, 20 miles wide. Thousands of lakes, streams are in region, many of which are reached by air or by long canoe trips. Lake trout (togue), salmon, and other trout species are fairly crammed into region. Best fishing months spring and September. Season generally opens when ice goes out, lasts until September 30. Size limit for trout is 6 inches or over in streams, 8 inches or over in lakes. Lake trout, however, must be over 14 inches in length. Bag limit varies, so be sure to check Maine fishing regulations when you arrive. Canoes, boats, and motors, as well as some of best guides in America, will be at your service.

EQUIPMENT: *Lake trout (togue)*: Delicious eating fish, togue range up to 20 pounds or more. Most are caught by trolling with pretty heavy rigging—smelts or shiners or single hook preceded by a spoon with a wire line, most common. *Salmon and trout:* (See information under *Maine*, No. 23.) Fishing license, nonresident: 3 days: $3.25; 15 days: $5.75; season: $8.75.

WHAT TO WEAR: Heavy winter wear is necessary for early spring. Rough clothing is always right. Raincoat is a must.

WHERE TO STAY: Famous Maine sporting camps are everywhere. Individual cabins, central dining and recreation hall. Camping out is also great sport in summer.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Evening entertainment—on simple, wholesome side—at most sporting camps and hotels in area.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Bangor. Air taxi from Bangor to Moosehead Lake.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Maine Publicity Bureau, Portland, Maine.

25. MAINE: Rangeley Lakes, Upper Dam Pool

Upper Dam Pool, between Mooselookmeguntic and Aziscohos lakes, tempts angler with landlocked salmon up to 8 pounds. Season runs from ice-out till August 15, with best fishing in June. Guides and canoes available either at Upper Dam settlement or at Haines Landing on the upper lake. Guides virtual necessity if fisherman is unfamiliar with area. Daily catch of salmon not to exceed total weight of 7½ pounds, and minimum size limit is 14 inches.

EQUIPMENT: *Landlocked salmon:* Eight-foot fly rod with reel large enough to hold 100 feet of backing. Bucktail streamers are best for early months, with

dry and wet flies becoming popular later. Trollers favor Flat Fish and Pearl Wobbler. Nonresident season license: $8.75; 15 days: $5.75; 3 days: $3.25.

WHAT TO WEAR: Warm woolens and rain gear for May and early June. Light woolens for summer. No boots for salmon, but you may want to go after trout in neighborhood, so bring them along.

WHERE TO STAY: Cabins at Upper Dam. Arrangements should be made in advance. Camping out is recommended, too.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Boating and canoeing, swimming, and lovely walks through unspoiled forest. Sporting camps in area are first-rate.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Augusta. Augusta to Haines Landing, 100 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Maine Publicity Bureau, Portland, Maine.

26. MARYLAND: Ocean City

Coastal anglers find white marlin the ocean's greatest challenge. These billfish are so plentiful off Ocean City that the port is known as the "white marlin capital of the world." More whites are taken there than at any other point on the Atlantic Coast. The fishing begins about June 15, improves until early August. September fishing can be excellent. Marlin angling is so popular that it is necessary to make boat reservations in advance. Boat, crew, tackle, and bait for four are provided at about $75 a day. Extra anglers can be accommodated at a slightly increased rate. Most marlin are taken in the vicinity of the Jack Spot, a shoal located about 23 miles offshore. Squid are trolled to raise the great whites, as well as occasional blue marlin, numerous bluefish and dolphin, some sailfish, and mako sharks. Also offshore are vast schools of bluefish, which arrive by June and are available spasmodically until mid-September. Best fishing is in July. When the blues are in, preceding the major marlin migration, the charter fleet concentrates on them. Parties of six can be arranged at a daily rate of about $65. The fee is slightly higher with more than six. Trolling lures net quantities of blues weighing up to 7 pounds or more. Porgies, sea bass, kingfish, and trout are also taken offshore, with porgies and bass the mainstay of thousands of bottom fishermen. Charter and party boats are available for this, with ordinary results being a pretzel can full of porgies and bass. The larger party boats, accommodating about thirty anglers, charge $3 per person per trip.

EQUIPMENT: Charter boats for marlin and other big-game supply tackle. Standard salt-water tackle for bottom fishing. No license required for salt-water fishing.

WHAT TO WEAR: Usual summer clothing.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations plentiful and varied.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Usual recreational resort facilities.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Salisbury. Car trip from Salisbury to Ocean City is about 33 miles.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Information, State of Maryland, Annapolis, Maryland.

27. MARYLAND: Chesapeake Bay Region

Among the species found in incredible abundance in Chesapeake Bay, which borders the Delmarva Peninsula on its western side, or in Delaware Bay and the Atlantic Ocean, which border it on the east, are striped bass, channel bass, black drum, croakers, tuna, weakfish, white marlin, bluefish, cobia, and any number of lesser sports fish. As for the inland waters of the peninsula, the upper fresh-water reaches of the tidal rivers and the ponds, here is an almost wholly unexplored paradise for the largemouth black bass angler, with eastern pickerel and innumerable panfish thrown in for good measure.

EQUIPMENT: Almost any type of tackle you wish to employ.

WHAT TO WEAR: Days are usually warm in the summer but nights are rather cool—so dress accordingly.

WHERE TO STAY: Unlimited accommodations available.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: She will find visiting some of the historic old mansions with their beautifully landscaped grounds most interesting, and such trips can be arranged so wives won't have to go and gawk like ordinary tourists. Your fishing host will arrange it. It is just as easy for a fisherman's widow group to charter a boat as it is for their husbands, and sail around the bay on a sight-seeing trip, or cross to the Western Shore mainland and visit resort towns like Chesapeake Beach, Plumpoint (here are the Fossil Cliffs of Calvert where the budding geologist in the family can pick up prehistoric fossils from the old sea bed of Chesapeake Bay to his heart's content), North Beach, Annapolis.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Norfolk, Virginia, or to Baltimore. From the latter city you can travel by car to almost any point on the Chesapeake Bay.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Information, State of Maryland, Annapolis, Maryland.

28. MASSACHUSETTS: Cape Cod

Pre-eminence of Massachusetts coastal waters for sport fishing has been definitely established within recent years. Consistently, the catch of striped bass, bluefish, and other game species taken by rod and reel has exceeded in size and quantity that of any other state along the Northeast Atlantic seaboard. If you look at the map of Cape Cod, you will see that it appears like an arm flexed against the Atlantic Ocean. Provincetown is its fist, Chatham its elbow. At the shoulder is the man-made Cape Cod Canal, which makes the Cape an island and holds within its tide-scoured length some of the finest striped-bass fishing in the world. South of Cape Cod are Nantucket and Vineyard sounds, both giant bluefish traps in August and September. The old island whaling centers of Martha's Vineyard and Nantucket buffer the Cape against the southerly Atlantic storms and are twin "hot spots" for boat and surf anglers. To the north, in the bight of the arm, is Cape Cod Bay, another great fish trap. Plymouth, Massachusetts, is the westerly jaw of the trap, Provincetown the easterly. In the bay are giant tuna that Cape anglers are just beginning to learn how to fool. Along our 1,800 miles of salt-water coastline, there are literally hundreds of "hot" areas for striped bass. Second

in popularity on the Cape and Massachusetts are the bluefish. Trollers and surf casters knock them silly (or vice versa) when the runs are on. For the inshore fisherman, the countless rivers, the myriad bays, the sounds and sea itself offer porgies, flounders, weakfish, sea bass, whiting, cod, and pollack. Big fish too are here. From the Vineyard ports, boats meet tuna, marlin, and swordfish in the Atlantic. Offshore waters here have hardly been scratched.

EQUIPMENT: Standard salt-water tackle necessary for bottom and surf fishing. Charter boats for big-game supply tackle. No license required for salt-water fishing.

WHAT TO WEAR: Nights are rather cold, but days on the Cape beaches are scorchers when bass are in. Take along both types of clothing.

WHERE TO STAY: Comfortable lodgings, with or without housekeeping facilities, within a price range to meet every budget, are to be found at the seashore or inland areas. Motel, hotel, inn, cottage colony—whatever your choice, you will find them at their hospitable best.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Any number of things to see on the colorful Cape; summer theaters, art shows, museums, etc.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Provincetown.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Massachusetts Department of Commerce, 334 Boylston Street, Boston 16, Massachusetts.

29. MICHIGAN: Au Sable River

Near Grayling in central Michigan, the swift Au Sable is a trout stream without many peers. Brook, brown, and rainbows are fat and frisky in spring right after trout season opens—April 25. It closes September 13, but get your fishing in early. Canoeing is great sport on Au Sable and, along with all equipment you'll ever need, canoes are available throughout region. Minimum trout size: 7 inches. Bag limit: 10 trout. Guides plentiful.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Both wet and dry flies are usual lures, but Michigan veterans have had much luck with grasshoppers and worms. Look for brook trout in gentler waters, while brown and rainbow will be in deep pools and faster waters. Natural bait should be sunk, dry flies drifted downstream, wet flies cast near bank where current will bring them back to midstream. Nonresident fishing license with trout stamp added: annual: $4.00; 10 days: $3.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Mighty cool in these parts during early spring. Warm jacket will serve you well. Don't forget armpit waders.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations to fit every wallet. Grayling is bustling little town with several nice places to stop over. Camping out, too, is ideal.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Popular resort country and your wife will find other wives to swim, tour, and talk with. Evening entertainment on sparse side.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Saginaw Bay City. Saginaw to Grayling and the choice areas of the Au Sable, about 135 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Conservation, Lansing 26, Michigan.

30. MICHIGAN: Manistee River

Brook, rainbow, and brown are taken both from the Big Manistee and Little Manistee rivers. Best fishing is early in the season—late April and May. Guides are available.

EQUIPMENT: Same as for Au Sable River (No. 29).

WHAT TO WEAR: Waders are a must. It also is rather cool during the best part of the trout season.

WHERE TO STAY: Good accommodations are available in this region.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: All the usual diversions in a resort area.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Traverse City and then by car, some 25 to 40 miles, to good spots along the Manistee.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Conservation, Lansing 26, Michigan.

31. MICHIGAN: Lake St. Clair

Lake St. Clair and St. Clair River, in neighborhood of Mount Clemens, just a few minutes from Detroit, offer best muskellunge fishing in the country. From May 10 to mid-August (season is practically year round) these giants are taken without limit. In 1940, the world's record muskie—62 pounds, 8 ounces—was hauled out of lake. Minimum length: 30 inches. Walleyed pike are good game here, too. Boats, motors, and expert guides are available all around lake, which is blooming resort area.

EQUIPMENT: *Muskellunge:* Big boys roam about mile off shore. To pull 'em in, troll with good-sized plug or nice, fat, live minnow. *Walleyed pike:* They go for deep water, except at night when feeding close to shore. Minnows or night crawlers for still fishermen. Bait or small spinner plus worms for deep troller. At dusk, after dark, wet flies are best. Nonresident fishing license: $3.00 annually; $2.00 for 10 days (except trout).

WHAT TO WEAR: Michigan summers are warm but evenings cool down quite comfortably. You'll need light jacket. Don't forget your swimming gear—fine beaches on lake.

WHERE TO STAY: Comfortably modern hotels, motels, cabins, guest houses dot Mount Clemens area for sole purpose of taking care of vacationers.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Golf, riding, boating, sight-seeing are particularly satisfying in area. And she can go on shopping whirl in Detroit.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Detroit. Detroit to Mount Clemens, about 20 miles.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Conservation, Lansing 26, Michigan.

32. MINNESOTA: Gunflint Trail

Originating in Grand Marais, Gunflint Trail heads north through Superior National Forest to Canadian border. Wilderness country unsurpassed. Canoeing through streams and lakes, crossing portages hundreds of years old, you'll be in rustic resort area where northern pike, lake trout, walleyes grow fat and scrappy. Season on northerns, walleyes opens May 17, closes February 15. Best months June and September. Lake trout are legal May 3–September 25, and are most eager in May and early June. Bag limit for pike, 8 per day; lake trout, 5 per day. When making the trail trip, have guide along, available with outing gear and canoes at Grand Marais and other towns up the line.

EQUIPMENT: *Northern pike:* Ranging from 5 to 25 pounds, he's big and tough. Check your line for weaknesses. He'll strike at just about everything you throw in water, but spoons are best. Do your trolling along edge of weed beds. *Lake trout:* Average 6 pounds, but range up to 26 pounds. Silver or copper spoons, minnow-type plugs, and red and white daredevils attract them. Deep trolling good sport in the dog days. Nonresident annual fishing license: $4.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: When fishing is at peak, you will just about miss rainy season, but rain wear is good insurance. Heavy jacket and lightweight clothes will suffice.

WHERE TO STAY: Lodges, trading posts, inns, and housekeeping cabins are available from Grand Marais on up to border. In Grand Marais you might like any one of several rustic lodges. Camping out along Gunflint Trail is highly recommended.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Several resorts specialize in entertaining guests after nightfall. Games, sings, and general congeniality are the rule. She'll never forget canoe trip up the trail, however.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Duluth. Duluth to Grand Marais, 114 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Minnesota Department of Business Research & Development, Publicity Division, State Capitol, St. Paul 1, Minnesota.

33. MINNESOTA: Lake of the Woods

Largest walleyes in Minnesota, muskies, lake trout, and northern pike live in these waters. Baudette is your home base for excursions up to Northwest Angle for lake trout and Safskong Bay for muskies. Walleyes, muskies, and northerns are legal from May 17 to February 15, but best months are late May and June. Eight walleyes, 2 muskies, and 3 northerns are your daily limits. Lake trout season opens May 3, closes September 15, and is most productive from opening day to about middle of June. Bag limit: 5. Guides, canoes, boats, motors available at Baudette and at lake ports.

EQUIPMENT: *Muskellunge:* Casting rods with large muskie plugs or spoons are best; trolling, too. Evening fishermen use surface-floating lures. *Lake trout and northern pike:* (See *Minnesota: Gunflint Trail,* No. 32). Nonresident fishing license: $4.00 annually.

WHAT TO WEAR: Prepare for cool weather in best fishing months. Woolen shirts and lumberjackets. No boots necessary.

WHERE TO STAY: This is something of a "last frontier" country, but resorts provide pleasant accommodations at reasonable prices.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Tourists' entertainment at some resorts, but largely this is sportsmen's country and pretty rough at that.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Duluth. You'll probably want to fly into Baudette, about 200 miles. Baudette to Lake of the Woods, minimum 13 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Minnesota Department of Business Research & Development, Publicity Division, State Capitol, St. Paul 1, Minnesota.

34. MINNESOTA: Superior Forest

At heart of forest is Ely, resort and mining town. Here you can put your canoe in water and travel hundreds of miles into Superior National Forest. Full gear, plus food and canoe, can be obtained for as low as $4.50 per day. Expert guides are necessary and available. Then you set off on a fishing trip that ought to net daily legal limit on both northern pike and walleyed pike: 3 and 8 per day, respectively. Best months are June and September, but season is open and fishing is good from May 17 to freeze-up time.

EQUIPMENT: *Walleyed pike:* Good right after sundown when trolling close in to shore along edges of drop-offs and bars. Casting or fly fishing, a nylon or gut leader is a must. Minnow-spinner combo is recommended by veterans as well as deep plugs. *Northern pike:* (See *Minnesota: Gunflint Trail*, No. 32). Nonresident annual fishing license: $4.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Summers are cool and springtime is even cooler around forest, so bring along heavy jacket, wool shirt. No boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Although Ely has population of only 6,000, it is thriving resort center and accommodations are fine. Once you are on canoe trail, camping out or rough overnight camps will suit you well enough.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Three underground iron mines inside city are breath-taking for visitors, plus beach area, usual diversions.

TRAVEL DATA: Air round trip to Duluth. Duluth to Ely, 115 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Minnesota Department of Business Research & Development, Publicity Division, State Capitol, St. Paul 1, Minnesota.

35. MISSISSIPPI: Eagle Lake

Mississippi smallmouth black bass frequently weigh up to 7 pounds. U.S. Government reports Eagle Lake has largest game fish population of any lake in nation. Also includes largemouth bass and crappies. Mississippi Delta country locale where lakes are formed by mighty river. Season open all year round; no size limit on black bass. However, bag limit is 15 per day. Months of both spring and fall are exceptionally productive. Boats, motors are available in area.

EQUIPMENT: *Smallmouth black bass:* It's most popular game fish of Mississippi, where local folks fish for it all year round. Casting, trolling, live-bait fishing all produce daily limit. Surface plugs effective during choice months. Annual license: $5.25 for nonresidents.

WHAT TO WEAR: Very early spring and late fall in Mississippi are cool enough for light jacket. Summer, of course, is very warm, and you should dress accordingly. Many streams nearby have good reputations. Hip boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Eagle Lake is a highly developed resort area with hotels, motels, and cabins to suit your budget.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Swimming and outdoor sports. Sprague Museum, ancient stern-wheeler, is tied to dock at Vicksburg. Vicksburg shrines are legion and only a few minutes from Eagle Lake.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Vicksburg. Vicksburg to Eagle Lake, 15 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Mississippi Agriculture & Industrial Board, 1504 State Office Building, Jackson, Mississippi.

36. MISSISSIPPI: Biloxi

The stretch of water from Petit Bois Island curving southwest to the eastern mouths or passes of the great Mississippi River Delta is a section of bountiful sea harvest. Fed by waters from Mobile Bay and the Pascagoula River on the east, and the Pearl River and the Louisiana marshes or Mississippi River Delta system on the west, this region is one of the nation's finest fish baskets—especially for variety in choice products of the sea. Within easy reach of the cities of the Mississippi coast are to be found more than a score of different kinds of fish. In the Back Bay section fishermen sometimes bring both salt- and fresh-water varieties into their rowboats. Strictly salt-water specimens, such as the fighting ladyfish, a close relative of the bonefish, have been landed off the four bridges which serve the Biloxi peninsula. While trolling for speckled trout with plugs off the Old Naval Reserve Park area one afternoon, two fishermen were startled to bring aboard the strange cutlass, or ribbon, fish. Catching a dozen varieties of fish on a day's sport in this area is usual. The usual cost of a charter boat is $60 per day. One to ten persons are permitted. Bait, tackle, and ice are provided. Departure is usually made at 5 A.M. As many as 70 miles are covered on some of these daily expeditions. Skiffs may be rented at numerous fishing camps along the Mississippi Gulf Coast for a dollar or two.

EQUIPMENT: Standard salt-water tackle, bait-casting or fly-fishing gear depending on the species of fish you are after.

WHAT TO WEAR: Usually summer clothing.

WHERE TO STAY: Many motels and hotels in the area.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: All types of activities from swimming to excellent night clubs are obtainable here.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Biloxi.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Biloxi Chamber of Commerce, P.O. Box 905, Biloxi, Mississippi.

37. MISSOURI: Lake of the Ozarks

Well-developed resort area in northern Ozark Mountains, Lake of the Ozarks has shoreline of 1,300 miles. Largemouth black bass, white bass, walleyed pike, and giant crappies are packed into it. Open season all year round in lake, although best months are in spring, late summer, and early fall. No size limits, but daily bag of all game fish is limited to 20. Guide services for fishermen as well as boats, motors, and other equipment. Available on all sections of the lake.

EQUIPMENT: *Largemouth black bass:* Trollers use plugs, live bait, and surface-floating flies; often found close into a weedy shore. *Walleyed pike:* Trolling from dawn to breakfast time with sinker, spinner, and angleworm is accepted method. Fly fishermen, bait-casters using plugs are also happy with results. Fishing license, nonresident, for 7 days: $3.00; yearly: $5.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Weather likely to be cool in spring and fall, so jacket and woolen shirts recommended. Summers warm. No boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Lake of the Ozarks has great many excellent resorts for every pocketbook. Camping out encouraged.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Excursion boats operate on lake during vacation season and many resorts have planned entertainments for guests each evening. All water sports, too.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Jefferson City. Jefferson City to Lake of the Ozarks, about 45 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Division of Resources and Development, Jefferson City, Missouri.

38. MISSOURI: Big Springs Area

In southeast Missouri, *float fishing* is for ambitious fishermen. You float for half a day or for two weeks down such cold and clear Missouri streams as the Black River, Current River, and St. Francis River. Smallmouth bass and walleyed pike are chief game. Commercial guides do all paddling downstream as well as making camp and cooking. Commissary boat goes ahead to set up lunch camp and, later, tent camp for overnight. Season for flat trips usually opens along with black bass and walleyed pike season, May 30. Big Springs season closes November 30.

EQUIPMENT: *Smallmouth black bass* and *walleyed pike:* Float fishermen need only bring rod, reel, and tackle. Commercial guides and outfitters supply baits, all other equipment and essentials, including food, for about $15.00 per day. Seven-day fishing license: $3.00 for nonresidents; $5.00 yearly.

WHAT TO WEAR: Weather will be cool during spring and fall months. Rubber-soled sneakers are advisable. Don't forget your flashlight.

WHERE TO STAY: You will be accommodated by float trip outfitter.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Beautiful country and it's hard to believe she would not want to take float trip with you. Evening entertainment around campfire is a real joy.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Cape Girardeau. Poplar Bluff to float area, about 35 miles by car. Cape Girardeau to Piedmont, 76 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Division of Resources and Development, Jefferson City, Missouri.

39. MONTANA: Flathead Lake

Dolly Varden trout ranging up to 30 pounds are hauled out of Flathead Lake in spring and early summer. Located in northwestern corner of state, lake is open all year round. In fall, thousands of one-half to one-pound sockeye salmon converge on lake for egg-laying time. Called Kokanee, they're scrappy fighters on light tackle. Montana fishing regulations vary, so check on them when you arrive. Boats and motors available around lake; guides available for excursions to tributaries, streams north of lake.

EQUIPMENT: *Dolly Varden:* Deep-lake trout taken by cowbells and other trolling bait plus good sturdy metal line. *Sockeye salmon:* Kokanee are taken by trollers, too. Nonresident fishing license, 3 days: $2.50; $10.00 annually.

WHAT TO WEAR: Of course, you will bundle up for very good, very early spring fishing in Montana, but even summers are cool enough for you to take along jackets and sweaters. Armpit waders are a must if you plan to go north of lake for stream fishing.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations around Flathead Lake are excellent. Pack trips into nearby mountains also arranged. Camping out along the way a real thrill.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: This is rugged country, but if she is interested in Indian lore, she will keep busy seeing all the sights in neighborhood. Usual singing and storytelling at dude ranches if you are staying there.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Missoula. Missoula to Flathead Lake, 89 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Montana Fish & Game Department, Helena, Montana.

40. MONTANA: Madison River

Headwaters of Madison rise in Yellowstone Park and are rich in minerals from Hot Springs. Rainbow trout and Loch Leven are everywhere along this short river, giving it reputation of being truly outstanding trout stream of America. Season opens in mid-May and closes September 30, but this, like bag and size limits, is subject to slight fluctuations. Check regulations for Madison and Gallatin counties. Best fishing months, however, are in first early weeks of summer when salmon fly hatch is on. Boats, motors are available for trollers on Hebgen Lake, an artificial impoundment of river where fishing is excellent.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Madison River is rated a fly fisherman's "dream stream," wet or dry flies equally effective. Wet flies and bait are best early

in season; dry flies later on. *Loch Leven (brown trout)*: Grown-up Loch Levens may be 18 inches long. A night feeder, spends most of the day in hiding. It takes a cool angler to entice him out with streamer flies as well as usual lures. Angleworms are good, too. Fish ahead of rocks for big ones. Fishing license, nonresident, 3 days: $2.50; season: $10.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: During best weeks of season, climate is mild, but nights are quite cool and wool shirt or jacket is important. Don't forget your waders. You will be in stream well above your waist.

WHERE TO STAY: You ought to camp out along Madison River. Surrounding terrain goes up to peaks of 11,000 feet and over. Lodges are also in area.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Butte, Montana, as well as Bozeman and Livingston are all within driving distance of the fishing country. Butte especially has all the pleasures of a big city, which it is—population 33,000.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Butte. Butte to Ennis, on Central Madison River, is 88 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Montana Fish & Game Department, Helena, Montana.

41. NEVADA: Ruby Mountain Area

Brook trout, rainbows, and cutthroats are chief game of these high lakes in most remote area of Nevada. You'll have to go in on horseback from either Wells or Elko, preferably the latter. A rugged trip, but well worth it. Season for this area opens July 1 and closes October 31. Last two months of season are best. Limits: 15 fish or 10 pounds, whichever is reached first, but 5 trout regardless of weight allowed each day. Guides and, indeed, complete tours can be arranged for you by various hotels in Elko and Wells.

EQUIPMENT: *Brook trout:* Take along your usual assortment of wet and dry flies for catching brook trout and the others. Some anglers are having fine time with light spinners, wobblers, and small attractors. Fishing license for nonresidents: annually: $6.00; 5 days: $3.50.

WHAT TO WEAR: Cool, comfortable weather in evenings, but it gets mighty warm during day. Lightweight, but sturdy, summer clothing plus a good, warm jacket will take care of your needs.

WHERE TO STAY: You'll be sleeping out on pack trip, but before and after you may want a bit of a rest in Elko.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: She'll be missing a thrilling experience if she skips horse trip into Ruby Mountains. Elko, however, has its diversions.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Elko. One good spot, Angel Lake, is just outside of Wells and is accessible by car. Elko to Wells, 52 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Fish and Game Commission, P.O. Box 678, Reno, Nevada.

42. NEVADA: Lake Mead

Bass up to 14 pounds have been taken from this great artificially created source of hydroelectric power. The best time to fish is usually early fall when waters cool. Guides, boats, and proper tackle available along the lake. Nonresident license: $10; special 5-day visitor's permit: $3.50.

EQUIPMENT: Bait-casting tackle is best since trolling is a popular method of taking the bass here.

WHAT TO WEAR: Weather is usually fairly warm, but nights are cool.

WHERE TO STAY: Fishing camps are fairly numerous in the area.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Visits to Indian reservations or boat excursions along the lake.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Las Vegas and car to Lake Mead, some 25 miles away.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Fish and Game Commission, P.O. Box 678, Reno, Nevada.

43. NEW HAMPSHIRE: Lake Sunapee

Home of rare Sunapee trout—also called eastern golden trout. Local people are proud of large Sunapees that have been taken. Landlocked salmon, smallmouth black bass, and brook trout also present in force. Season on Sunapee trout opens on April 1 or as soon after as the ice leaves. From then until August 31, both live bait and artificial lures are legal. During September, flies only permitted. May-June best months. Bag limit: 4 per day; size limit: 12 inches or over. Bass season: July 1–September 30 with special artificial fly season, June 15–July 1. Bag limit: 9 inches minimum, 7-pound upper limit, 5 per day. Landlocked salmon—see *New Hampshire: Upper Connecticut River* (No. 44). Sunapee is quite a resort area, so guides, motors, and boats are ready.

EQUIPMENT: *Sunapee trout:* Still-fish or troll (until May 1) for these agile fellows—spoons, spinners for trolling, live smelt or minnows for still fishing. *Smallmouth bass:* A real battler who takes streamer flies and live bait, too. Fishing license: season for nonresidents: $5.25; 3 days: $1.75.

WHAT TO WEAR: This is north country and early spring fishermen need warm woolen shirts and heavy jackets. Summers are balmy. Raincoat and hip boots. The latter for fishing nearby streams.

WHERE TO STAY: Sunapee has many resorts where most fishermen reside. Sporting camps and excellent hotels within short range by car.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Naturally, she'll want to see Concord and the breath-taking White Mountains. Also, half-mile chair tramway at nearby Sunapee State Park.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Concord. Concord to Lake Sunapee, 43 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: New Hampshire State Planning and Development Commission, Concord, New Hampshire.

44. NEW HAMPSHIRE: Upper Connecticut River

In New Hampshire's north country, close to Canadian border, famed Upper Connecticut River is fast rainbow trout stream and homestead for sizable brook trout and landlocked salmon. First and Second Connecticut lakes, filled with salmon and lake trout, are right there, too. Season on brook and rainbow trout, May 1–August 31, plus extra month for fly fishing only. Salmon legal a month earlier if ice is out, which is rare before May 1. Spring and last two weeks of September are excellent. Daily bag limit: 10 trout. Size limit: 6 inches or over. Salmon and lake trout bag limit: 2 per day. Size: over 15 inches. Boats and motors for trollers available in the area. Guides, too, but not vital.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Tough critters, but delicious eating—rise to wet or dry flies, cast or trolled. *Landlocked salmon:* Cagey old warrior goes for streamer flies, cast or trolled. Live-bait fishermen have good luck, too. Late in season: regular wet or dry flies. *Brook trout:* About like salmon. Fishing license: season for nonresident: $5.25; 3 days: $1.75.

WHAT TO WEAR: Heavy winter wear is considered important in early spring. Rough clothing is a must as well as parka or raincoat. Plus hip boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations range from lavish hotels to small inns and cabins. Sporting camps are in deep woods with guides to lead you.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: She'll want to take a spin through Dixville Notch, just east of Colebrook and one of wildest of New Hampshire's famous notches. Evening entertainment at many lodges and sporting camps, plus Annual Guides' Show.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Berlin. Berlin to Connecticut River and Connecticut Lakes, about 84 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: New Hampshire State Planning and Development Commission, Concord, New Hampshire.

45. NEW JERSEY: Cape May

Off the Cape May area there's some of best salt-water fishing on the East Coast. All types of bottom fish—flounders, tautog, fluke, etc.—as well as such inshore species as striped bass, weakfish, mackerel, bluefish, etc., are obtainable. The charter boats leave here for tuna, dolphin, white marlin, and other big fellows. All types of fishing can be had.

EQUIPMENT: Standard salt-water tackle for bottom and surf fishing. Charter boats for big-game supply tackle. No license required for salt-water angling.

WHAT TO WEAR: Day is usually quite warm, but nights are rather cool.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations are fair in this area, but it's wise to make arrangements in advance.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Bathing good and small towns in area have movies.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Cape May.

INFORMATION SERVICE: New Jersey Promotion Section, 520 East State Street, Trenton, New Jersey.

46. NEW MEXICO: Eagle Nest Lake

In beautiful Moreno Valley, near Taos, 1,250-acre lake is home of fightingest rainbow trout in the West. Season opens May 25, closes October 1. Few areas are kept off limits until June 30 to protect spawning trout. Bag limit is 6 fish; 12 in possession. Limited number of boats available for trollers, but majority of fishermen prefer shore. September is best month, June second.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* In June, rise to bait; wet or dry flies get more action in summer, early fall. Streamer flies and fly-spinner combo also get results. Annual license: $5.00; 10 days: $3.00. Plus $1.00 extra for fishing Eagle Nest Lake since the state leases this area from private owners.

WHAT TO WEAR: New Mexico's famous weather requires jacket for very early morning fishing, lightweight clothing for the daytime and early evening. Hip boots would be extra-plus for shore fishing.

WHERE TO STAY: State Game Commission maintains public campgrounds in Cimarron Canyon, lovely spot, not far from Eagle Nest. You can also camp alongside the lake, as well as rent excellent accommodations.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Area of simple pleasures. Countryside is as breath-taking as anything in America. Reputation for congeniality possessed by local folks.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Albuquerque. Albuquerque to Taos, 132 miles by car. Airstrip has been cleared near Eagle Nest Lake for private planes.

INFORMATION SERVICE: State of New Mexico, Department of Game and Fish, Santa Fe, New Mexico.

47. NEW YORK: The Adirondacks

Excellent fishing in this entire northeastern sector of New York State. Largemouth and smallmouth black bass, lake trout, northern pike are popular, along with brook, brown, and rainbow trout. Delightful fishing-canoe trip, however, provides thrills that are just a bit different. From Old Forge to Saranac Lake by way of Fulton Chain and Upper and Lower Saranac lakes is nearly 100 miles of wilderness fishing country alternating between placid lakes and racing streams. The bass season opens July 1, closes November 30; best time for bass fishermen is in early summer. Check on creel and size limits when you hire guide, canoes, etc., in Old Forge or way points.

EQUIPMENT: *Smallmouth black bass:* Goes for bass flies and bass bugs if you're using fly rod; wide variety of plugs if bait casting. Still fishermen have good luck with any of old stand-bys. *Lake trout:* Troll for this big fellow, using heavy line, spoon, and smelts. Fishing license: nonresident, all year: $5.50; 3 days: $2.75.

WHAT TO WEAR: You'll have to be prepared for rain, heat, and probably a cool spell on this fishing trip. Don't forget your hiking shoes and first-rate pair of hip boots.

WHERE TO STAY: You'll be camping out all the way. Of course, when you get to Old Forge and/or Saranac Lake, you'll find very comfortable accommodations. Public lean-tos, camp sites maintained along the way, by state.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: If she doesn't care to accompany you on this jaunt, her best bet is to meet you at Saranac Lake. It is booming resort country with usual entertainments.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Utica. Utica to Old Forge, 53 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Conservation Department, Division of Conservation Education, Albany, New York.

48. NEW YORK: SACANDAGA

World's record northern pike, weighing 46 pounds, 2 ounces, was pulled out of reservoir in 1940. Near Corinth in Saratoga County, reservoir is also noted for walleyes. Pike season: May 1 to March 1. Fish early or late, but expect things to be rather slow in midsummer. Your best bet is trolling reservoir, boats and motors available. Check size and bag limits when you arrive at Corinth.

EQUIPMENT: *Northern pike:* Spoons with tail waving behind are excellent. Ditto underwater or surface plugs. Look for this fellow close into shore, in weeds; he won't be in deep water very often. Fishing license: all year: $5.50; 3 days: $2.75.

WHAT TO WEAR: Lightweight, comfortable clothes and pair of moccasins are about all you'll need. Take along liningless jacket for evening and early morn. No boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Cottages, tourist cabins, dude ranches—yes, dude ranches—and many pleasant inns in the neighborhood.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: They are off and running at Saratoga in month of August. Moreover, there is as much history per square mile in and around Saratoga Springs as you'll find anywhere—especially Saratoga National Historical Park. She'll be able to swim, take boat trips, and generally have fine time.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Albany. Albany to Corinth, 46 miles by car; Corinth to Sacandaga Reservoir, 5 miles.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Conservation Department, Division of Conservation Education, Albany, New York.

49. NEW YORK: LAKE CHAMPLAIN

See *Lake Champlain* description under *Vermont* (No. 64). For New York, season May 1 and closes March 1. Fishing license: annually: $5.30; 3 days: $2.75.

50. NEW YORK: BEAVERKILL RIVER

Possibly the most famous trout stream in the East. This well-stocked river affords the early-spring fisherman fast, though not outsize, brown and rainbow trout fish-

ing. Many hot spots along its winding lengths, with several areas designated *fly fishing only*. May and early June are best months. Season opens the second Saturday in April and ends on September 30.

EQUIPMENT: While flies are generally employed, live bait and spinners are often good, too. Fishing license: nonresident, all year: $5.50; 3 days: $2.75.

WHAT TO WEAR: During early spring, weather is apt to be cold, but during the remaining portion of the season, it's pleasant. Nights are usually cool.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations available at Roscoe and Livingston Manor. Also several motels along the river.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Many activities in the area. Movies, summer stock theater, swimming, night trotters, golf, to name a few.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to New York. About 75 miles from New York City on New York Route 17.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Conservation Department, Division of Conservation Education, Albany, New York.

51. NEW YORK: MONTAUK

At the extreme eastern tip of Long Island, this is one of the leading ocean ports on the East Coast. In addition to salt-water, big-game fish—tuna, swordfish, shark, and marlin—there are available such inshore species as striped bass, kingfish,

weakfish, mackerel. June, September, and October are three good months for this area. Charter and party boats, as well as rowboats, are readily obtainable.

EQUIPMENT: Standard salt-water gear necessary for bottom and surf fishing. Charter boats for big-game supply tackle. No license required for salt-water fishing.

WHAT TO WEAR: Usual summer wear, but the nights are sometimes cool.

WHERE TO STAY: All types of accommodations are available. If you wish to camp, facilities can be found at Hither Hills State Park.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Swimming, summer stock, and golf are major non-fishing activities here.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to New York. By car, it's 118 miles from New York to Montauk

INFORMATION SERVICE: Chamber of Commerce, Montauk, New York

52. NORTH CAROLINA: Morehead City and Nags Head

On the Outer Bank near Nags Head and Manteo, is Oregon Inlet, where the big run of channel bass in late March or early April kicks off the real salt-water fishing season, and in the Cape Hatteras National Seashore Park is Hatteras, where marlin and sailfish are specialties. Morehead City is the home of the largest sport-fishing fleet in the Tarheel State. The section is noted for large catches of sailfish, along with other Gulf Stream varieties. A highly prized catch is the large king mackerel, locally called the cero. Boats of all types are available.

EQUIPMENT: Standard salt-water tackle for bottom and surf fishing. Charter boats for big-game supply tackle. No license required for salt-water fishing.

WHAT TO WEAR: Weather is usually warm, except during early spring channel bass and bluefish runs.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations are good in this area.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Excellent beaches for surf bathing. Many other points of interest, such as Wright Memorial, Fort Raleigh, Roanoke Island, etc., can be visited.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Morehead City. Nags Head has its own private airport for charter flights.

INFORMATION SERVICE: North Carolina Travel Bureau, Raleigh, North Carolina.

53. NORTH CAROLINA: Fontana

Best of many good lakes and streams in western North Carolina. Fontana Lake controlled by Fontana TVA Dam in heart of Great Smoky Mountain area. Plenty of trout, crappies, and, above all, smallmouth bass. Season for bass year round but they bite best in springtime. Get regulations on bag and size limits when you arrive because they vary. Little resort town of Fontana Village is ideally set up for tourists. Boats, motors, advice, special water-taxi service are available.

EQUIPMENT: *Smallmouth black bass:* This scrappy favorite taken with streamer flies, bass flies, and bugs. Bait casting often preferred using plugs and spinners. Live bait gets results, too. Fishing license: $6.10 annually; $2.60 for 5 days; and $1.10 for 1 day.

WHAT TO WEAR: You will be in area where highest mountains in Eastern United States keep things reasonably cool. Summer-weight clothing for daytime, but bring along warm sweater and raincoat. Bring your hip boots, too, because trout in nearby streams are fine.

WHERE TO STAY: Fontana Village has convenient 56-room lodge, 280 cottages, and houses for rent. Take your pick at price you can afford to pay. Camping out, too, is good fun.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Supervised entertainment planned all year round in Fontana Village. Square dancing, fish fries, campfire suppers, stage shows—the works—are planned for both of you, as well as an exhilarating trip through Great Smokies.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Knoxville. Knoxville to Fontana Village, 55 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Fontana Village, North Carolina; or North Carolina Travel Bureau, Raleigh, North Carolina.

54. OHIO: Bass Islands

Travel along Ohio's western Lake Erie shore and for 50 miles or more you can see dark patches of green far out on the faded blue horizon. These are the Bass Islands archipelago or, as fishermen call them, the Treasure Islands. Good runs of walleye, smallmouth bass, channel catfish, and white bass are taken in this region. Boats, motors, bait, tackle, and guides are always available. Reef and party boats leave daily for walleye and bass fishing.

EQUIPMENT: Standard bait and spin tackle may be used here. Late in April the smallmouths move into very shallow places, often near shore, to spawn. It's then that casting along the rocky perimeters of Rattlesnake, Starve, Green, Ballast, Sugar, and Middle Bass islands is an unforgettable experience. They usually hang around until mid-June; after that it's necessary to prospect in deeper waters. No sooner have the smallmouths pulled out than the white bass go on a spree that is unequaled anywhere. Acres of them weave a crazy course in and around the islands, herding schools of emerald shiners, Lake Erie's amazing forage fish, ahead of them. To find a school of stripers, watch for milling gulls and terns. It makes no difference what lure you use nor how you use it—the fish will strike at anything. Fishing license: nonresident fishing: $5; nonresident fishing for 10 days: $3.

WHAT TO WEAR: Usual summer wear, but the nights may be rather cool.

WHERE TO STAY: Every conceivable type of accommodation is available at Put-in-Bay on South Bass Island or in Port Clinton on the mainland.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Many historical spots can be visited. There are several good-sized cities in the area.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Toledo. Toledo to Port Clinton, 33 miles by car. In summer, the 8-mile trip to Put-in-Bay or to Middle Bass requires 40 minutes by car ferry from Port Clinton. The year round, an airlift from Gypsum, near Port Clinton, carries passengers to the three major islands.

INFORMATION DATA: Department of Natural Resources, State Office Building, Columbus 15, Ohio.

55. OREGON: Paulina, East Lakes

Almost identical lakes in central Oregon, Paulina and East are first-rate trout waters, especially for rainbow, eastern brook, Loch Leven. You'll fish at altitude of 6,300 feet. Season opens May 30, closes September 30. Summer months are less productive. General bag limit is 10 trout in Paulina, 5 in East, over 6 inches, but check rule book for additional regulations when you arrive. Both lakes have exceptional resorts located along the shore. Boats, motors, guides, and all equipment available.

EQUIPMENT: Brook trout: Usual wet and dry flies take them, although early season fishermen have best luck trolling and still fishing with bait. Local people advise you to get your gear at lakes so that old hands can advise. Fishing license: nonresident annual fee: $15.00. Special 7-day license: $5.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Some of the cleanest, brightest weather anywhere. You'll need something warm for evening; add lightweight wool shirt for fishing during the best months—late May, June, and early fall. No boots necessary.

WHERE TO STAY: As noted, resorts in the area are above average and anxious to please. Many anglers prefer camping out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Entertainment and diversions are planned as part of good resort life. On July 4–5–6, Bend schedules a rodeo, water pageant.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Eugene. Eugene to Bend, 116 miles by car. Forty miles to lakes.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Travel Information Division, Oregon State Highway Department, Salem, Oregon.

56. OREGON: Rogue River

Chinook salmon and steelhead trout (rainbow trout, but heavier and hardier) are both very much in demand along the Rogue. So far the Rogue has been able to keep up supply at fantastic rates. From August to October steelhead run in Rogue around Agness, a resort town in southwestern Oregon. Above Agness, in Grants Pass, Chinook salmon are taken from March 15 into June, with May peak month. Chinooks and steelheads in late summer and fall in lower river. Regulations are well defined and should be consulted before angling. Boats, motors, guides are ready.

EQUIPMENT: *Chinook salmon:* Taken from boats, shore, and piers built out from bank. Copper or nickel spoons are preferred by anglers who anchor boats, let current play with spinner. Many anchored boats are often lined up side by side. *Steelhead trout:* Averages about 2½ times size of average rainbow

trout. Light casting rods baited with salmon eggs used late in run. Real attraction of Rogue, however, is fishing for steelheads with small flies on light speckled-trout tackle. This is chief pastime during August–October run.

WHAT TO WEAR: You'll need a warm jacket for winter. Weather is usually mild, though, so you can travel light. Waders are useful.

WHERE TO STAY: Grants Pass, Gold Beach and Agness and numerous little resorts have moderately priced accommodations. Camping out is accepted policy in these parts.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: She will really enjoy "riding the riffles of the Rogue" on the U.S. mailboat that makes the 32-mile run on the river from Gold Beach on the Pacific Coast to Agness. One-day round trip. It's the only direct route inland from the coast.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Medford. Medford to Grants Pass, 32 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Travel Information Division, Oregon State Highway Department, Salem, Oregon.

57. OREGON: Coos River

Striped bass and salmon are taken in Coos Bay and lower Coos River. The months of July through October provide the best angling. Fish are taken both from the bank and from boats. Artificial plugs, frozen pilchard, herring, and sculpins are used. At Coos Bay, the stripers average around 6 pounds. Steelhead enter most coastal streams after the fall rains commence, and fishing is at its peak from December through February. Boat and bank angling are equally popular; boat liveries are available on most of the larger streams and rivers. Cluster eggs, spinners, and spinning lures are used. Although winter temperatures are not severe, warm and water-repellent clothing is a necessity. Rock and surf fishing is enjoyed all along this portion of the Oregon coast. (A license is required only for trout, salmon, shad, and striped bass.) Perch, flounder, rockfish, sea bass, ling, cod, and many other species are taken by sport anglers. Salmon fishing offshore in private and charter boats is growing in popularity in the summer months. Jetty fishing is claiming additional converts each year. Boats and guides may be obtained at most of the major coastal communities. Tackle is provided, is desired.

WHAT TO WEAR: Weather is usually fairly mild, but rain gear is a must.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations of all types are available.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Beachcombing is fun on all this section of the coast. Rough agates may be found, the best specimens kept for later polishing; and interesting, sand-scoured bits of driftwood occur everywhere. Here can be an intricately "carved" tree root, suitable for a novel lampstand; or a smooth, white slab of fir or pine upon which to mount a prize fish. There are scores of forest roads to be explored. You'll find thickets of wild blackberries and, up on the ridges, huckleberries and salmonberries. For an unforgettable trip, allot a day to drive up to Silver and Golden Falls, on the Millicoma Fork of Coos River, 30 miles from Coos Bay. A lovely picnic

spot, yes—but don't forget trout tackle for the cutthroats and rainbows in the pools below the falls!

TRAVEL DATA: Air to North Bend on Coos Bay.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Travel Information Division, Oregon State Highway Department, Salem, Oregon.

58. PENNSYLVANIA: BRODHEAD RIVER

Near Stroudsburg, the Brodhead River is an elegant May rainbow stream, punctuated by long runs and white water. Season opens second Saturday in April and closes September 1.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Standard eastern trout fly tackle can be used, but some spinning and bait-casting gear is employed in deeper pools. For pattern information, consult local tackle shops along stream. Waders or hip boots necessary. Nonresident license: 5-day: $3.25. Six-inch minimum size and creel limit is 8.

WHAT TO WEAR: In spring, trout weather is cold, but as the season progresses, the weather becomes warmer. Nights are cool.

WHERE TO STAY: Motels are available in the area.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Typical resort area facilities.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Scranton. By car, it's 37 miles from Scranton to Stroudsburg.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Pennsylvania Game Commission, South Office Building, State Capitol, Harrisburg, Pennsylvania.

59. RHODE ISLAND: WATCH HILL AND POINT JUDITH

These two Rhode Island ports have become one of the East Coast's foremost big-game tuna fishing centers. Nebraska Shoals, Rosie's Ledge, and the sweep of the Block Island Quadrilateral are fertile grounds for the schooled-up big boys. They start hitting in around the last week of July and remain close to shore through the fall squalls, leaving generally about the second week in September. Charter boats are available at both ports.

EQUIPMENT: Charter boats for tuna supply tackle. No license required for salt-water angling.

WHAT TO WEAR: Days are usually quite warm.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations are good.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Summer theaters, swimming, and good shopping can be had in the immediate area.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Providence. Short car trip to either port.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Publicity & Recreation Division, Development Council, Roger Williams Building, Hayes Street, Providence 8, Rhode Island.

60. SOUTH CAROLINA: Clark Hill

After one year of fishing, new Clark Hill Reservoir on South Carolina–Georgia border promises to be one of most productive lakes in Southeast. Only access to water is through four boat landings controlled by U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. Largemouth black bass, bluegill, bream, and crappies are most popular species. Season is open all year round, but May, June and September are best months. Daily bag limit is 8 bass; 10-inch minimum. Boats, motors.

EQUIPMENT: *Largemouth black bass:* Plug bait, on surface or below, seems to be most effective lure, but all manner of colorful flies do job, too. Annual license for nonresidents: $10.25.

WHAT TO WEAR: Warm clothes needed through March. Weather will be quite comfortable in best months; lightweight clothing. No boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Rough, but comfortable, lodgings in neighborhood. Accommodations also in small towns on both side of the border.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: This is an area rich in Confederate history. Trip to Augusta is a must; likewise Columbia and even Charleston.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Columbia. Columbia to Clark Hill, 79 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Wildlife Resources Department, Columbia, South Carolina, or Augusta Chamber of Commerce, Augusta, Georgia.

61: TENNESSEE: Dale Hollow Lake

In foothills of Cumberland Mountains, Dale Hollow Lake covers 40,000 acres. Smallmouth black bass and walleyed pike pulled from lake have been winning remarkable percentage of blue ribbons in national contests. Part of lake extends into Kentucky. Season open all year round. Best fishing April, May, and early June. No size limit. Daily creel limit: 5 walleyes, 10 smallmouth bass. At last count, there were ten boat docks around lake but as word gets around more entrepreneurs will be setting up shop. Guides available, too.

EQUIPMENT: *Smallmouth bass:* In spring, anglers have best luck with bait casting. Dale Hollow is very deep lake, which means you'll have to troll deep with metal lines in summertime. *Walleyed pike:* Troll for him from dawn to breakfast using spinner plus night crawlers. Nonresident license: $5.00 annually; $1.00, 3 days.

WHAT TO WEAR: In Cumberlands, you'll never be uncomfortably warm during the day and there's good chance that spring evenings will be quite chilly. Light jacket added to usual things will be just right.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations are few but growing. This is fine-looking country, so perhaps you'll want to sleep out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Scenic country but rather rough and undeveloped when it comes to special entertainments. Nashville not far.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Nashville. Nashville to the Dale Hollow area, about 125 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Division of State Information, Department of Conservation, Nashville 3, Tennessee.

62. TEXAS: Port Aransas

Port Aransas is often called the "Tarpon Capital of the World" simply because of the number of these big fellows that are available. In addition to tarpon, other game like mackerel, jackfish, kingfish, sailfish, and marlin can be taken in these Texas waters. Boats of all types are available here.

EQUIPMENT: Tackle is usually furnished by boat captains or guides. No license is required for fishing in tidal waters.

WHAT TO WEAR: Because the best months for tarpon are June to September, dress very light.

WHERE TO STAY: Motels are available near Port Aransas.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: All the facilities of a modern city can be found in nearby Corpus Christi. Beaches are beautiful in this area.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Corpus Christi. By car, it's 18 miles to Port Aransas from Corpus Christi.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Texas Game, Fish and Oyster Commission, Austin 14, Texas.

63. UTAH: Uinta Mountain Area

One of few remaining areas in the West where man can really get away from it all. Lakes and streams of Uinta Mountains accessible on foot or horseback, although some good fishing spots on edge of area if you're driving. Brook, grayling, and rainbow trout chief game. Facilities for pack trips available upon reservation. Your guide will have camping equipment plus all pertinent information on Utah fishing regulations. Utah season opens about June 15; closes near October 10. Best trout months are late July and on to fall. Point of information: Uinta Mountains range up to 13,498 feet.

EQUIPMENT: *Brook trout:* Wet and dry flies used with great effectiveness. Spinning, too, has adherents. Fishing license, nonresident, for the season: $5.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: You'll need warm clothes for dawn fishing plus sturdy windbreaker that shuts out occasional wind that blows through high mountains. Tough hiking shoes, raincoat, and waders are vital, too.

WHERE TO STAY: You'll be sleeping under the stars on trip, but cabin and camping facilities in fringe areas are provided.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: She'll prefer Salt Lake City, one of the cleanest and most beautiful towns in America. Besides fine Mormon architecture and lore, Salt Lake City has all usual diversions.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Salt Lake City. Salt Lake City to Roosevelt, in the Uinta area, about 150 miles.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Utah Fish and Game Department, Salt Lake City, Utah.

64. VERMONT: Lake Champlain

Beautiful, historic lake on wooded New York–Vermont border provides widest variety in fishing of any single body of water in East. In spring and summer months, angler has his choice of northern and walleyed pike, large and smallmouth bass, yellow perch, and occasional muskies and bullheads. In winter, there is exciting sport of ice fishing for smelt, pickerel, and pike. Season and limits vary for species, but September is best all-round month. Guide not necessary; boats, motors, canoes available at many camps on lake.

EQUIPMENT: *Pike and muskies:* Plug casting or trolling, with copper-nickel spinner and live or artificial bait for cool weeks, deep trolling with wire line for midsummer (light tackle, small plugs, and bass bugs for bass). Hand line or light steel rod or special flag-indicator equipment for fishing through ice in winter. Nonresident license: $5.25; 14-day: $3.50.

WHAT TO WEAR: Light wool and rain gear for spring, lightest wool and cotton for summer. Long johns and mackinaws for ice fishing.

WHERE TO STAY: Many cabins, camps, and inns along lake shore.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Complete range of summer activities: swimming, golf, tennis, riding, boating, hiking. Also many interesting historic points and scenic drives. In autumn, Vermont foliage is beautiful.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Burlington. Burlington to best fishing areas, a few miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Write the Vermont Development Commission, Montpelier, Vermont.

65. VERMONT: Battenkill River

Primarily noted for brown and rainbow fishing, this is one of top trout streams in the East. Best areas lie on the west side along the New York State line and from Manchester to New York State line. While season is from May 1 to August 30, the best time is generally from May 15 to June 15. Few guides are available.

EQUIPMENT: Essentially a fly-rod stream, fishermen have used spinning tackle and other techniques have come in for their share of sport from time to time. The Battenkill is a fine stream for wets and nymph. Nonresident license: $5.25; 14-day: $3.50.

WHAT TO WEAR: Light wool and rain gear for spring, lightest wool and cotton for summer. Nights are cool here.

WHERE TO STAY: There are many motels and inns in this region.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Scenery is beautiful and small towns may prove interesting. There are some theaters nearby.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Rutland and then by car some 28 miles to Manchester.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Vermont Development Commission, Montpelier, Vermont.

66. VIRGINIA: Back Bay Region

Probably one of the least-known yet most productive of Virginia's coastal fishing holes is sprawling Back Bay, due south of Norfolk and Virginia Beach on the North Carolina border. Here some of your favorite fresh-water species join with salt-water fish to provide a variety of angling action found in such abundance nowhere else in the state. Actually an inland extension of North Carolina's famed Currituck Sound, the entire Back Bay area consists of five connecting bays (North, Shipps, Red Head, Sand, and Back Bay proper). Ranging in saltiness from 4 percent to zero, the area is separated from the Atlantic by a narrow strip of sandy beach and is the home of thousands upon thousands of largemouth black bass averaging 13 to 18 inches and running up to 6 pounds. Though the tidewater largemouth bass fishing is fairly well defined in its year-round pattern of productivity (best months: June, May, April, October, and November in that order), other species, both fresh water and salt, are available all year. Striped bass, native to the area, can sometimes be taken throughout all four seasons, but the biggest runs come in the spring. Other fish available: small catfish, big bluegills, black crappies, yellow and white perch, bowfin, and carp.

EQUIPMENT: Probably the best way to fish the area for the first time is to hire a guide who knows his way around the almost continuous marshes where the shallow water is crisscrossed by endless canals, ditches, deeper ponds, smaller bays, and well-lined islands. Most guides, moreover, are equipped to handle two fishermen a trip, but there's nothing to stop even the novice from finding productive water within a mile or so of the docks. Guides often furnish the tackle.

WHAT TO WEAR: Usually summer clothing, except in early spring and late fall, when woolens are required.

WHERE TO STAY: Some motels and fishing camps are in the area.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Usual small-town diversions.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Norfolk and then by car to the Back Bay region.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Commission of Game & Inland Fisheries, 7 North Second Street, Richmond 13, Virginia.

67. VIRGINIA: Chickahominy River

This Virginia river is possibly the best shad-fishing body of water in the country. Shad aren't widely known by fishermen. But, like all anadromous fish, shad are fast, sleek, powerful, and full of fight. They are also jump-crazy. They have been said to jump like tarpon and run like bonefish. In a normal spring, good hickory shad fishing begins about April 15. It reaches a peak rather quickly, then diminishes as spawned fish return to the sea. White shad, twice the size of hickories and averaging 4 pounds, hit a peak in May. They're considered a delicacy, and their roe is something epicures fight over. In the Chickahominy it's

possible to catch white and hickory shad, largemouth and striped bass, all in the same day.

EQUIPMENT: Most *shad* are taken on fly tackle, but some anglers are now employing spinning gear.

WHAT TO WEAR: It is generally warm in the spring in this section of the country, so dress accordingly.

WHERE TO STAY: Motels are in the vicinity.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Usual diversions for the fishing widow in a small-town area.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Richmond and then motor about 30 miles to the Chickahominy's shad waters.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Commission of Game & Inland Fisheries, 7 North Second Street, Richmond 13, Virginia.

68. WASHINGTON: Skagit River

Going after winter run of steelhead in Washington's Skagit River is experience any trout fisherman will remember. The river is open entire year except for month of April and first two or three weeks of May. Guides are not required but are advisable for tips on techniques and best pools. They furnish boats for float trips. While not necessary, boats offer a distinct advantage as river is large and much of best water cannot be reached by casting from shore. Best fishing period is from January through March. Guide reservations should be made several months in advance. Minimum size: 16 inches; daily creel limit: (winter) 3 steelhead.

EQUIPMENT: *Steelheads:* Eight-and-a-half foot, two-handed casting rod with extremely sensitive tip. Most fishermen prefer a monofilament line. Cluster salmon eggs, wobbling-type spoons, flat fish, golf tee, and yarn are best lures. Nonresident license: $10.00; 10 days: $1.50 (Oregon and Idaho residents excepted).

WHAT TO WEAR: Stout woolens (mackinaw) and rain gear are essential.

WHERE TO STAY: Hotels and tourist camps at various points. Camping out is not recommended at this time of year.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Little woman who doesn't fish will probably be bored to death along river. Scenic rides and hikes, weather permitting. Closest skiing area at least 60 miles away.

TRAVEL DATA: Municipal airport at town of Bellingham. Air to Bellingham.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Game, 600 North Capitol Way, Olympia, Washington.

69. WASHINGTON: Silver Lake

Best trout fishing comes in spring and early summer, with bass coming fast in midsummer and early fall. Season for trout: April 19 through October 31. For bass: ditto. Boats, motors, and accommodations all available at numerous resorts

at Silver Lake. Minimum length and creel limit for trout: 6 inches, 15 fish not to exceed 7½ pounds and 1 fish; for bass: 10-inch minimum size, 15 fish not to exceed 7½ pounds and 1 fish.

EQUIPMENT: *Trout:* Most of the fishing is done by fly casting, bait fishing, or trolling from a boat, although number of people fish from docks and floats. Regular light fly rod, wet flies preferred. Bass taking plugs, worms, and eels (use of live fish bait illegal). Small spoons and spinners often effective. Nonresident season license: $10.00; 10 days: $1.50 (Oregon and Idaho residents excepted).

WHAT TO WEAR: Warm woolens and rain gear for spring and fall. Light woolens and cottons for midsummer.

WHERE TO STAY: Cabins and inn at Silver Lake; several camps and tourist stops through area. Limited opportunity to camp out, so plan to sleep in first night until you have the lay of the land.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Swimming, boating, hiking, scenic drives.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Portland. Portland to Silver Lake, 62 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Game, 600 North Capitol Way, Olympia, Washington.

70. WASHINGTON: Strait of Juan de Fuca Area

Through this gateway come the first runs of adult king and coho salmon, en route to the inland spawning beds. These silvery fish are in top physical form, ready to give you a rugged time on suitable tackle. The Chinooks start forging into the strait early in May, and the procession fluctuates in number throughout the summer until it tapers off toward the middle of September. Farther to the east, out from Port Townsend, there is another derby, and wonderful catches are made in this vicinity. Immature (blackmouth) and mature kings and silvers are present in abundance from June into October. Boats, guides, cabins, tackle, and other accommodations are ready for service at resorts and towns along the Washington shore line of the strait. September and October are highlighted by the remarkable strings of silver salmon that may be secured, particularly in the waters around Sekiu and Clallam Bay, where natural basins favor concentrations of these fish. Salt-water bottom species and halibut may also be landed here on all occasions. Boats and guides are available.

EQUIPMENT: *Salmon:* Though trolling is the method most used, experience has shown that this is also a good place to try your skill in bringing salmon to gaff by fly casting. Such lures as spinner and fly combinations, streamer and bucktail flies, and regular wet flies of Royal Coachman, Jock Scott, Durham Ranger, Silver Doctor, Golden Spinner, Salmon Fly, Western Bee, Silver Wickerson, Babcock, and Umpqua Fly patterns may be cast profitably at various periods of the season. These are also effective when tied on hooks. In the same pools and riffles and quiet expanses of Puget Sound, these lures also account for many fine steelhead and cutthroat trout. Due to the rough weather in the Strait of Juan de Fuca during the winter, most of the angling activity at that time is carried on around sheltered Port Angeles. However,

prospects are highly favorable over in the Neah Bay section, and outdoorsmen who are hardened to the winds and rains reap fine specimens of winter blackmouths.

WHAT TO WEAR: Light woolens and cottons for summer, warm wool and rain gear for the other seasons.

WHERE TO STAY: Plenty of accommodations available in Seattle.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: All facilities of big city can be found in Seattle.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Seattle.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Game, 600 North Capitol Way, Olympia, Washington.

71. WEST VIRGINIA: Cacapon River

This river is one of the best smallmouth streams in the country, with two excellent tributaries, incidentally—North River and Lost River. Guides and boats are available. Creel limit of bass is 8.

EQUIPMENT: Cacapon River is a fine place for the fly fisherman. Spinner-fly combinations are used extensively here on standard tackle. Nonresident license fee: $10.00; 6-day license, $3.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Cottons and light woolens.

WHERE TO STAY: Fishing camps near the river. Some motels are available in the area.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: There is little for her to do here.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Hagerstown, Maryland. Car to Berkeley Springs, West Virginia, is about 25 miles.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Conservation Commission of West Virginia, Charleston 5, West Virginia.

72. WISCONSIN: Manitowish River

Swift waters and shallows of Manitowish River provide some of liveliest smallmouth bass fishing in central United States. Season extends from June 20 to January 15, with best months June and October. Daily bag limit: 5 bass, with each fish to measure not less than 10 inches. Guides not required, but available along with boats, canoes, etc., at Mercer, Manitowish, and Manitowish Waters.

EQUIPMENT: Hellgrammites popular in early months, plugs, bugs, and bass flies in warmer weather. Use light casting rod with reel big enough to hold 50 yards of line. Most fishing is done from a boat, but there are some opportunities for wading and bank fishing. Nonresident license fee: $4.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Cottons and light woolens for summer, warm wool and rain gear for spring and fall. Bring your hip boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Plenty of accommodations at and near three towns mentioned above. Also camps in area, and opportunities to sleep out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Boating, swimming, canoeing, walking are all pleasant in this wooded land.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Wausau. Wausau to Manitowish, 100 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Mercer Resort Association, Mercer, Wisconsin; or Conservation Department, State Office Building, Madison 1, Wisconsin.

73. WISCONSIN: Lake Chippewa

Biggest member of famous Hayward Chain in northwest Wisconsin furnishes exciting trolling and plug casting for giant muskies. Season runs from May 25 to November 1, with best fishing in September and early October. Guides not required but readily available. Boats, motors, canoes, too. Anglers are limited to one muskie per day; minimum size: 30 inches.

EQUIPMENT: *Muskellunge:* Stout tackle for bait casting or trolling from boat. Wire leaders essential. Spinners with live or artificial bait good for trolling, with plugs used for casting. Nonresident season license: $4.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Cottons and light woolens for summer, warm woolens for fall.

WHERE TO STAY: Hotels, resorts, and cabin arrangements all available near Hayward.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Boating, swimming, walking, all pleasant in this area.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Eau Claire. Eau Claire to Hayward, 110 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Hayward Lakes Resort Association, Hayward, Wisconsin; or Conservation Department, State Office Building, Madison 1, Wisconsin.

74. WYOMING: Snake River

Rising in Yellowstone National Park, Snake River provides top-notch trout fishing of wide variety as it winds out of park and down past the Tetons. Brook, cutthroat, rainbow, and Loch Leven are most popular. Open season generally runs from May 1 through October 31 with daily creel limit of 12 fish. Numerous local exceptions make prechecking advisable. Best weeks are in late May, early June, and September. Guide not necessary, but highly advisable, especially outside of park area. Guides, camping equipment, etc., available at Jackson and other points in region. Pack trip over the Tetons is the experience of a lifetime.

EQUIPMENT: This is almost exclusively brook and small-pool fishing, and flies with light trout rod are recommended. Leaders, line, etc., will all be lightweight, and type of fly, in either wet or dry, will vary with the locale and its prevailing weather. Fishing license: $3.00 for 5 days; $10.00 for season.

WHAT TO WEAR: Warm woolens for early and late weeks, light woolens for midsummer. Armpit waders necessary.

WHERE TO STAY: All types of accommodations can be had either by reservation or by "first-come" within Yellowstone Park. In Jackson Hole, the town of Jackson is central point, and cabin, hotel, and camping arrangements can be made there. Many opportunities to sleep out both in park and surrounding area.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Horseback riding over beautiful mountain trails, hiking, natural wonders and wildlife within park.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Idaho Falls, Idaho. Idaho Falls to Jackson, 98 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Commerce and Industry Commission, 213 Capitol Building, Cheyenne, Wyoming.

75. WYOMING: North Platte River

Upper North Platte and its tributaries give anglers some of the steadiest and most satisfying trout fishing in state of Wyoming. Seminole Reservoir will yield some beauties, and there are plenty of brownies, some measuring up to 30 inches, in the lower Sweetwater River. Guides not necessary, and boats and other equipment available in area, particularly at Saratoga. Season usually May 1 to October 31, but varies. Daily creel limit is 12 fish.

EQUIPMENT: Angler can cast from boat or shore. In reservoir, trout can be lured by trolling with small spinner, or by fly casting. River can be fished either by wading or by dropping down in a boat or canoe. Light fly rod recommended. Tourist 5-day license costs $3.00, and season's license is $10.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Wool for May and October, with lighter woolens and cottons for midsummer. Bring boots if intend to wade river.

WHERE TO STAY: Ample accommodations near and at Saratoga and points along the river. Arrangements can be made to camp out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Scenery itself is worth the trip, with hiking, horseback riding, swimming, and visits to historic sites excellent.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Casper. Casper to Saratoga, by air about 100 miles, by car 160.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Commerce and Industry Commission, 213 Capitol Building, Cheyenne, Wyoming.

CANADA

76. ALBERTA: Jasper

Athabaska River system, heavily stocked with rainbow trout, and Maligne River, with eastern brook trout, provide excellent fishing backdropped by beautiful scenery. Wading in fast mountain streams can be alternated with trolling and still fishing in fifty Alpine lakes allied to river systems. Rainbow season usually opens July 1, runs till mid-October, with other species beginning June 15 and having same closing date. Best fishing in June and early July. Creel limits vary.

Guides not necessary unless remote spots chosen, but several good ones are available. Boats available on most lakes. Power boats prohibited except on Pyramid, Medicine, and Maligne.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Streams excellent for dry or wet flies, with dry flies coming in during warmer months. Lakes provide complete scope for either casting or trolling with almost every known fresh-water lure. Boots necessary if angler intends to wade streams for trout. Light fly rods and small casting rods popular. Fishing license for 3 days, nonresident: $1.00; season: $2.50.

WHAT TO WEAR: Weather warm and usually dry during day, but nights get chilly. Advisable to bring woolens for evening and early weeks of season. Armpit waders.

WHERE TO STAY: Many camps throughout area. Opportunities for camping out, recommended here for sportsman who appreciates his surroundings as much as his fish.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Jasper Park is one of North America's best-known resort areas. Boating, swimming, games, golf, hiking, horseback riding, interesting procedure at park fish hatchery on Maligne River.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Edmonton. Light aircraft, chartered in Edmonton, may land at Jasper. Canadian National RR or highway from Banff to Jasper Park, 185 miles; Edmonton to Jasper Park, 234 miles.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Information Bureau, Jasper, Alberta, Canada.

77. ALBERTA: Rocky Mountain House

Wide variety of scrappy trout abound in numerous small streams and potholes. These are well stocked each year, and fishery officials like to see them heavily fished. Loch Leven, Dolly Varden, and rainbows are most popular in that order. Area includes huge Clearwater Forest Reserve, and Raven River, on which is located large government hatchery. Season runs May 1 to September 30, with best months June and July. Daily limit: 15 fish of any one species. No guides necessary, but several are available, and outfitters in area specialize in large parties.

EQUIPMENT: *Rainbow trout:* Much fishing is done in brooks and from edge of small pools, so waders are highly advisable. Fly fishing popular, with brown or gray hackles in wet or dry the favorites. Baited small plugs and spinners also used. Fishing license, nonresidents, 3 days: $1.00; season: $2.25.

WHAT TO WEAR: Weather mostly dry, and days warm, but sweaters should be taken for cool summer evenings and June days. Armpit waders.

WHERE TO STAY: Nearest town is Rocky Mountain House, with two frontier hotels and some tourist cabins. Camping out is your best bet.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Walking, photographing, and just plain loafing surrounded by Rocky Mountain and foothill scenery.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Calgary. Calgary to Rocky Mountain House, 140 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Alberta Government Travel Bureau, Legislative Building, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada.

78. ALBERTA: BANFF

Banff is oldest of Alberta's four great National Parks, with excellent fishing conditions and magnificent scenery at least rivaling Jasper. Four most popular game fish here are the rainbow, Dolly Varden, eastern brookie, and Loch Leven. Seasons, bag limits, license fees, guide situation, and best months virtually the same as Jasper.

EQUIPMENT: See *Jasper* (No. 76).

WHAT TO WEAR: See *Jasper*.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations to suit all budgets, but reservations should be made in advance through Canadian Pacific Railway or Information Bureau, Banff.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Great variety of game roams park within sight of enterprising visitor. Alpine flowers abound; cave exploring; Tunnel Mountain Drive makes beautiful tour; hot springs for swimming; majestic sculptured rocks left by glacier; plus wide range of summer sports.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Calgary. Calgary to Banff, 85 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Superintendent, Banff National Park, Banff, Alberta, Canada.

79. BRITISH COLUMBIA: TLELL RIVER

On Queen Charlotte Island, Tlell River, home of coho salmon, big gamy fighter that can be taken on fly or spinner. Best fishing from July to late September. Creel limit is 5 salmon or 10 grilse (less than 3 pounds) per day, which is a nice day's haul. Good coho weigh up to 20 pounds. Guides not mandatory but advisable. Canoes, boats, guides all available at city of Tlell.

EQUIPMENT: *Coho salmon:* Fly fishing with streamer flies is real sport. Ten-to-eleven-foot rod with plenty of backing is advisable. Trolling with spinners or spoons, plugs, or herring strip is excellent. Three to four hundred feet of 12–15 test line and 2–8-ounce lead sinkers. Fresh-water license for nonresidents, season: $7.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Light woolens for summer; rain gear for early fall. Boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Excellent accommodations and camp sites at Tlell.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: She'll enjoy the outdoor life. The local scene is picturesque.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Prince Rupert. Should you fly to Vancouver, Prince Rupert is 100 miles by boat.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Government Travel Bureau, Victoria, British Columbia, Canada.

80. BRITISH COLUMBIA: Kootenay Lake

Kootenay Lake is favorite haunt of exciting Kamloops trout, close cousin of steelhead. And in this mountain lake near Idaho border, they sometimes reach weight of 40 pounds. Guides, canoes, boats, and motors all available in area, particularly at towns of Balfour and Kaslo. Season runs May 1 to end of February in lake and June 1 to November 14 in nearby streams. Best months are May, June, and October.

EQUIPMENT: *Kamloops trout:* Tackle will range from regular trout fly rod to steelhead tackle to stout trolling gear depending on when and on what part of lake angler seeks his fish. Boots and light trout rod, line, and flies for small streams coming into lake, particularly during late spring, summer. Trolling with spinners is good for early and late weeks of season, and deep trolling for warm months. Season license for nonresidents: $7.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Light woolens for midsummer, warm woolens and rain gear for spring and fall.

WHERE TO STAY: Plenty of camps and cabins in lake area. Good opportunities to camp out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Walking, riding, swimming, and scenic drives.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Castlegar. Castlegar to lake, 44 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Government Travel Bureau, Victoria, British Columbia, Canada.

81. BRITISH COLUMBIA: Andy Lake

Again the famous Kamloops trout (see *Kootenay*, No. 80), this time on fly rod. Season runs May 1 to end of February, with May, June, September, and October the best months. Boats, motors, guides, canoes all available in town of Kamloops and at other points in area. Minimum size limit is 8 inches, and trout in this area run up to 5 and 6 pounds. Daily limit is 12 fish or 25 pounds and one fish.

EQUIPMENT: *Kamloops trout:* Standard light fly rod with reel holding about hundred feet of backing. Fly casting is done from boat or shore of lake. Dry flies for early and late, and wet flies and trolls are often used in warmer months. Season license, nonresident: $7.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Light cotton for summer, warmer wool and rain gear for late spring and fall. Bring your hip boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Several camps in area, hotels in Kamloops. Opportunity to camp out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Hiking, swimming, boating, riding, and scenic drives.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Penticton. Penticton to Kamloops, 145 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Government Travel Bureau, Victoria, British Columbia, Canada.

82. MANITOBA: The Pas–Flin Flon–Cormorant Forest Reserve

This area in western-central Manitoba is a place where fish stories come true. In late thirties, a record 62-pound lake trout was landed in Lake Athapapuska. Here and in neighboring Lakes Cormorant, Atikameg, and Goose, great northern pike range up to 40 pounds, and lake trout hit 60. The laker season runs from May 15 to September 15, pike from May 17 to October 31. Best weeks are ice-out to the middle of July, but 35-pounders still bite in the warmer months. Lodging, boats, guides, motors available at several camps, and guides are recommended for this newly opened wilderness area. Not more than 8 pike, or 5 lakers can be taken in one day, with 10 fish total daily bag limit.

EQUIPMENT: *Lake trout:* Good, rugged tackle is recommended for lake fishing in these waters, with reel large enough to hold 200 yards of backing. Troll, still-fish, or cast from boat. Plug casting and surface trolling with spinners and spoons is preferred for early months, with deep trolling with wire leaders for warmer weather. Summer-season license: $5.50.

WHAT TO WEAR: Stout woolens are urged for early and late fishermen, with rain gear to ward off rains, late and early snow flurries. Lighter-weight woolens for July and August. No boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Several rough lodges in area. Plenty of opportunity to camp out, but guide should be engaged and good equipment stocked.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: If wife not fishing, it is recommended that she remain in Winnipeg. Flin Flon is growing, but is still rugged mining town, and non-sporting pleasures are very limited. Winnipeg offers pleasant hotels, sightseeing at the Provincial Museum, the Hudson Bay Historical Exhibit, and Assiniboine Park with zoo.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Winnipeg. It is 571 miles by car from Winnipeg to Flin Flon. Town is also accessible by rail or chartered light float plane from Winnipeg, Canada.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Bureau of Travel and Publicity, Department of Industry and Commerce, Winnipeg, Canada.

83. MANITOBA: Whiteshell Forest

Large area of protected land has lakes, streams, which are filled with bass, pike and pickerel. Easily accessible by automobile from Winnipeg, area offers convenient, pleasant, and plentiful angling. Season on bass runs from July 1 to October 31. Best weeks are in July and late September for bass, May, June, and late September for pike and pickerel. Guides not necessary, but available. Boats, canoes, guides, etc., available at 25 or 30 camps within the reserve. Daily limit on bass, not more than 6; pike and pickerel, not more than 8; with daily aggregate limit at 10 fish.

EQUIPMENT: *Bass:* Plug casting from boat in early and late weeks, bass bugs, and trolling with spoons and spinners for warmer months. *Pike and pickerel:* Plug casting in early weeks, and trolling with wire leaders for midsummer when fish lie deeper in water. Season's nonresident license: $5.50.

WHAT TO WEAR: Woolens for beginning and end of summer, light woolens for cool evenings of midsummer. Boots not necessary.

WHERE TO STAY: Many camps and lodges all through Reserve. Many opportunities to camp out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Whiteshell is well-kept preserve, with abundant wildlife and many varieties of flowers to be observed and photographed. Swimming, boating, canoeing also offered in many ponds and lakes.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Winnipeg. Winnipeg to Whiteshell, 70 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Bureau of Travel and Publicity, Department of Industry and Commerce, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada.

84. MANITOBA: God's Lake

God's Lake, God's River, surrounding tributaries, and smaller ponds offer nice combination of top-notch brook trout angling plus trolling or casting for giant lake trout and pike. Trout run up to 7 pounds, and lakers and pike run up into 20-to-40-pound class. Daily limits are 5 for brookies, 5 for lakers, 8 for pike, and daily total of not more than 10 fish. Season begins mid-May, but end varies from mid-September to mid-October for different species. Best months follow ice-out. Boats, canoes, lodging available at camp. Guide indispensable, available at camp.

EQUIPMENT: *Trout:* Regular fly rod, about 7½ feet, about 4½ ounces, with reel large enough to hold at least 50 feet of backing; wet flies and nymphs for early weeks, dry or wet flies for warmer months. *Pike and lakers:* Strong tackle with reel large enough to hold at least 150 yards of line. Plug casting and surface trolling with spinners and spoons is preferred in early months, with deep trolling with wire leaders for warm weather. Season's nonresident license: $5.50.

WHAT TO WEAR: Bring long underwear, heavy woolens, and rain gear for cold snaps and snow flurries in early months, lighter woolens for midsummer. Waders necessary.

WHERE TO STAY: Lodge accommodations are sparse but furnishings will please you if you're not too exacting. Excellent camping opportunities.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: If wife is not outdoor kind, she should remain in Winnipeg.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Winnipeg. Sixty miles by limousine from Winnipeg to Lac du Bonnet, then 360 miles by light plane to God's Lake. Weekly package deal, includes transportation, lodging, guides, canoe, etc.: $400.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Bureau of Travel and Publicity, Department of Industry and Commerce, Winnipeg, Canada.

85. NEW BRUNSWICK: Restigouche River

Summer fishing for Atlantic silver salmon excellent on famous Restigouche River, Upsalquitch, Big Sevogle, and Northwest Miramichi rivers. These are known as Reserve Water and reservations must be made well in advance. Season extends

roughly May 24 to September 1, but local variations make it advisable to write in advance for this information. Early weeks best when water cold and moving swiftly. Guide necessary if angler works from canoe, advisable if wading. Guides, canoes, etc., available at many camps.

EQUIPMENT: *Silver salmon:* Same as spring run (see below, No. 86), except small wet flies may replace streamers. Dry flies and streamers may be used if preferred, and choice is often dictated by daily weather conditions. Restigouche Reserve Water license: maximum $40.00 per day including guide.

WHAT TO WEAR: Warm wool clothing for June and September (rain gear for June), light woolens for July and August. Boots necessary if fisherman chooses to wade.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations available in small towns and several camps at reserve areas.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Historic points connected with Seven Years' War; also interesting waterfront and commercial fisheries.

TRAVEL DATA: Moncton best point for those traveling by air. Campbellton to Moncton by car, 205 miles.

INFORMATION SERVICE: New Brunswick Travel Bureau, Fredericton, New Brunswick, Canada.

86. NEW BRUNSWICK: Miramichi River

By writing Regional Protection Officer, Federal Department of Fisheries, Fredericton, New Brunswick, anglers may obtain written permission to fish spring run of Atlantic silver salmon. Best spot is Miramichi River, between Boiestown and Blackville. Sport begins at ice-out, usually early April, and continues to May 24, when regular season begins. Guides necessary and available, along with canoes, accommodations at many camps along river.

EQUIPMENT: *Salmon, spring run:* Regular salmon rod, either cane or glass, of 5 to 7 ounces; good reel big enough to hold 100 yards of backing, and double-tapered or torpedo-head casting line. Large bucktail flies are used, with Mickey Finn the favorite. Casting is done from canoe maneuvered by guide in freshet water. Season license: $20.50; 7 days: $7.50.

WHAT TO WEAR: Angler will need wool clothing for cool, early spring weather, should also take raincoat and rain hat.

WHERE TO STAY: Many camp owners may be contacted in Fredericton, Newcastle, Blackville, Boiestown.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Fredericton, Provincial capital, offers library with several rare books, Christ Church Cathedral, agricultural experimental station, many early and interesting buildings.

TRAVEL DATA: Aircraft can fly in, land at Fredericton and St. John; also bus and train connections with United States points. Fredericton to Boiestown, 40 miles by car; Fredericton to Blackville, 80 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: New Brunswick Travel Bureau, Fredericton, New Brunswick, Canada.

87. NEWFOUNDLAND: River Ponds

Summer run of salmon in river of Ponds provides heavy, exciting sport for ambitious angler. River on main island of Newfoundland. Advise anglers to leave auto at home. Guides are mandatory and plentiful here. Boats, canoes, and motors available through arrangements at St. John's. Season runs June 20 to September 15 and best month is from July 10 to August 10. Daily creel limit is 8 fish, with the average fish weighing 5 pounds, and some reaching 22 pounds.

EQUIPMENT: *Salmon:* Boots not necessary but may be brought if angler wants to alternate bank fishing with casting, trolling from boats, canoes. Nine-foot salmon rod with reel large enough to hold 150 feet of backing. Bucktail streamers or shiner minnows favorite bait. Nonresident license costs $5.00 per day, or $30 for a season.

WHAT TO WEAR: Bring heavy woolens and rain gear for May, with lighter woolens for midsummer. Bring your waders.

WHERE TO STAY: Cabins are available through advance arrangements in St. John's.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: This is lovely country, but cool and rugged. If wife is not an outdoor girl or scenery enthusiast, she should stay in St. John's, where there are more urban interests.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to St. John's.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Newfoundland Tourist Development Office, St. John's, Newfoundland, Canada.

88. NORTHWEST TERRITORIES: Great Slave Lake

Wilderness area in great Northwest, where 40- and 50-pound lake trout are not uncommon in day's haul. Season runs from May 16 to September 15, with best weeks just after ice-out and in early September. Guides are essential and are available, along with canoes and other equipment at Yellowknife and several surrounding camps. Daily bag limit is 20 fish, with minimum size limit of 12 inches.

EQUIPMENT: *Lake trout:* For early and late months, use braided nylon line, natural or artificial bait, and copper-nickel spinners. For July and August, wire line and lead weights should be brought along for trolling at depths. Nonresident season license: $2.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Bring long underwear, stout woolens, and rain gear for May, June. Lighter clothing for July and August, but have heavy sweaters and windbreakers or warm coat on hand.

WHERE TO STAY: Camps and lodges in area, such as they are, can be quite comfortable and pleasant.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Unless wife is interested in fishing or gold mining, she should stay home.

TRAVEL DATA: Hay River on Great Slave Lake now accessible by auto, but angler is advised to make full round trip by air to Yellowknife.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Canadian Government Travel Bureau, Ottawa, Canada; or the Secretary, Board of Trade, Yellowknife, Northwest Territories, Canada.

89. NOVA SCOTIA: MEDWAY RIVER

Medway is a fine stream for Atlantic salmon, with peak fishing during first two weeks in June. Forty-pounders have been taken from this river, which offers mostly boat fishing through its turbulent stretches. Season on Medway runs from April 1 to August 31. Guide not necessary but advisable, and obtainable at many towns and camps along river. There is no minimum size limit for "keepers," but the daily bag limit is 5, and there is a weekly limit of 20. Canoes available all through area.

EQUIPMENT: *Atlantic salmon:* Ten- to 13-foot salmon rod, with reel large enough to hold 100 yards of backing. Only fly fishing is permitted in province; bucktails are becoming popular, with Silver Doctor most popular wet fly and Brown Hackle leading the dries. Almost all fishing done from boat. Season's nonresident license: $5.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Warm woolens and rain gear for early spring, light wool for cool nights in midsummer. Boots optional.

WHERE TO STAY: Mill Village, Greenfield, and the surrounding area have ample accommodations for anglers.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Many historic points, quaint villages, lovely scenery, especially along coastline, boating, and summer sports.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Halifax. Halifax to fishing area, 87 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Bureau of Information, Provincial Building, Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada.

90. NOVA SCOTIA: WEDGEPORT

The best-known salt-water game-fishing area in Canada is Nova Scotia, where the seas swarm with the biggest and fightingest tuna. Their clubhouse is Soldier's Rip, a six-knot tide stream about a mile wide, at the seaward edge of the rocky Tusket Islands southwest of Wedgeport. During the season, which leads up to the Annual International Tuna Cup Match in September, you'll see thousands of big bluefin jumping and playing over acres of water while clouds of herring fly out of the water, hoping to get away. Charter boats are available.

EQUIPMENT: Tackle furnished with boats. No license required for salt-water fishing.

WHAT TO WEAR: Tuna clothing should include parka and boots. Warm clothing is usually required.

WHERE TO STAY: Accommodations are available. Arrangements should be made in advance.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Activities are very limited in this area, except for fishing.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Yarmouth and then car to Wedgeport.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Wedgeport Guides Association, Wedgeport, Nova Scotia, Canada.

91. NOVA SCOTIA: MARGAREE RIVER

Possibly the best of accessible Northeastern salmon rivers, Margaree has yielded fish up to 50 pounds. River is placid, gravel-bottomed, and fringed with open meadows—ideal conditions for wading and long casting. Season is June 1—September 30, with best weeks in September. No guide is required, but guides are available with equipment at Margaree, Margaree Harbor, Margaree Forks, and Northeast Margaree. Daily bag limit is 3 fish, and there is no minimum size.

EQUIPMENT: *Salmon:* Same as Medway River, except that wading is very popular here. (See No. 89.)

WHAT TO WEAR: Woolens for early June and late September, lighter clothing for midsummer, with light wool for cool evenings. Armpit waders are a must.

WHERE TO STAY: Ample accommodations at Margaree (see above), and innkeepers, storekeepers ready with good advice on where to fish, how to get there, where to hire guide, etc.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Cape Breton Island one of real beauty points along Eastern seaboard. Boating, swimming, and many scenic drives.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Sydney. Halifax to Sydney, 268 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Bureau of Information, Provincial Building, Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada.

92. ONTARIO: KAWARTHA LAKES

Kawartha Lakes, with city of Peterborough at hub, form main part of Trent Waterways system connecting Lake Ontario to Georgian Bay, and offer topflight fishing for bass, pike, pickerel, and muskellunge. Bass and muskie season runs from July 1 to first week in October; pike and pickerel (walleye) open May 15 and close December 31 for pickerel and March 31 for pike. Guide not mandatory, but advisable. Best fishing during early weeks of seasons.

EQUIPMENT: *Bass:* Early and late months trolling from boat or canoe using spinners and spoons. (Consult local regulations for restrictions on lures.) Warmer seasons, casting from still or drifting boat or shore with plugs and bass bugs, often in shallow water and among lily pads. *Pike, pickerel, muskellunge*: All three prefer clear waters of grassy lakes and occasionally still stretches of rivers. During best fishing in early season, method is to troll with spinners or spoons. Use wire leaders for these sharp-toothed fighters. In warm months, cast plugs, and best to have guide help with tech-

nique, show spots, and caution against underwater snags. Nonresident license: $6.50; family license: $9.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Warm wool clothing and rain gear for May and June, light wool for midsummer. Boots not necessary, since majority of fishing done from boat.

WHERE TO STAY: Peterborough, Young's Point, Burleigh Falls, Fenelon Falls, Bobcaygeon, and many other towns offer accommodations, camping equipment and provide all facilities, including guides.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Swimming, canoeing, lovely trails through woods, Trent Canal with tremendous hydraulic locks, are all items of enjoyment.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Toronto. Toronto to Peterborough, 92 miles by car. Roads radiate from Peterborough to all parts of fishing area.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Travel and Publicity, 67 College Street, Toronto, Ontario, Canada.

93. ONTARIO: Lake of the Woods

See *Minnesota*, No. 33, for full information. Season is July 1 to October 1.

94. ONTARIO: Algoma–Sudbury–Nipissing–Timagami Areas

Some of fastest trout fishing in Central Canada is to be found in Algoma area. Pike, pickerel, and muskellunge also abound in region, and at Lake Nipissing and Lake Timagami. Trout is favorite, with best fishing coming in May, early June, and September. Season for trout runs from May 1 to September 15, with local limits on daily catch. Terrain rocky, beautiful, with fishing conditions much like Rocky Mountain area. Guides not mandatory, but highly recommended. Available at such towns as Sault Ste Marie, Sudbury, North Bay, Temigami, etc., and at a number of camps.

EQUIPMENT: *Trout:* Wading is usual method, although some canoe fishing can be had at mouths of streams. Earliest season fishermen often use nymphs, with wet flies soon replacing; many anglers switch to dry flies in warmer months, and back to wet flies for September. Nonresident fishing license: $6.50 for the year.

WHAT TO WEAR: Warm wool for early and late weeks, light wool for midsummer. Boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Sudbury and surrounding area offer ample accommodations. Camping opportunities pleasant and plentiful, especially in northern area. Be sure to check conditions in advance before planning extensive camping.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Sudbury is one of top mining centers in Canada, is rapidly growing town with many sight-seeing opportunities. Also swimming, boating, canoeing, and beautiful walks along wooded trails.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Sault Ste Marie. Sault Ste Marie to Sudbury, 200 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Travel and Publicity, 67 College Street, Toronto, Canada.

95. PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND: Morell River

Morell River, haven for fly fisherman who likes to take his trout in the cool of evening. Eastern brookies in this spring-fed stream just don't bite in daytime, and will virtually ignore anything but a fly (except during first few weeks of the season, when they are ravenous bait-eaters). Season runs April 15–September 30, with good bait fishing in April and May, and best fly fishing in June and late September. Guide not necessary, but obtainable, along with canoes, boats, etc., at village of Morell. Bag limit: 20 in one day not to exceed 10 pounds total weight.

EQUIPMENT: *Eastern brook trout:* Lightest fly and bait-casting tackle, according to season (see above). Dark Montreal, with silver body, and Parmachene Belle are favorites. Fishing can be done from boat, canoe, or bank. Wading also popular. Fishing license, nonresident, season: $3.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Woolens and rain gear for April and May, lighter woolens and cotton for midsummer, with sweater for cool evenings. Boots a must.

WHERE TO STAY: Several hotels, inns, and camps at points along the river.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Some sports, but mostly talk with the local folks.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Moncton. Moncton to Charlottetown Ferry, 63 miles by car. From Charlottetown to Morell River, 30 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Tourist and Information Branch of the Prince Edward Island Government, Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island, Canada.

96. QUEBEC: Lake St. John

Lake St. John and its immediate area abound with landlocked salmon. Angler can go after this handsome game fish with wet or dry flies, by trolling, and sometimes by bait casting. Guides, canoes, accommodations are available at number of camps along lake, although some fishermen may prefer the complete service offered by clubs with advance reservations. The season runs from May 1 to September 30, with the best fishing in the cool weeks in June and September. Size and bag limits are subject to change.

EQUIPMENT: *Landlocked salmon:* Trolling with spinners and live or artificial bait gets salmon along shoals next to deep water. Surface trolling for cool weeks, deeper for midsummer. Dry flies, wet flies, and streamers popular in or near moving water. Most fishing by canoe, but some anglers prefer to work along riverbanks. Family nonresident season license, excepting Atlantic salmon: $5.25.

WHAT TO WEAR: Woolens, and bring rain gear, for late spring; light woolens and some cotton for July and August, with sweater for cool evenings. Boots optional.

WHERE TO STAY: Outfitters in area provide fine accommodations.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Primarily a fishing area, although wife can enjoy swimming, canoeing, and scenic drives through nearby Laurentide Park.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Quebec. Quebec City to Lake St. John, 130 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Provincial Tourist Branch, 106 Grande-Allée, Quebec, Canada.

97. QUEBEC: Laurentide Park

Over 500 lakes, fed by fast-moving streams, provide Laurentide Provincial Park with some of best Eastern brook-trout fishing in Northeast. Season runs June 1 to September 30, with best weeks in June and September. Guides required. Accommodations, canoes, guides, etc., all available within park upon securing advance reservations from Provincial authorities in Quebec. Creel limits change seasonally, subject to park biology surveys. Fly casting and spinning with single hook are only methods permitted within park.

EQUIPMENT: *Eastern brook trout:* Regular light fly rod, favorite flies are Parmachene Belle, Montreal, Brown Hackle. Wet flies are good all season long, with dries becoming popular in warmer months. Fishing on ponds is done by boat, but many streams give opportunities for wading. No seasonal license required, but $2.00 daily permit for reserved waters.

WHAT TO WEAR: Woolens and rain gear for May and early June, light woolens and cottons for midsummer, with sweater for cool nights. Bring armpit waders or hip boots.

WHERE TO STAY: Advance reservations should be made through Quebec, since all accommodations are owned by the Provincial government. Complete budget range.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Lots of sport here, but if she gets restless, Quebec City offers infinite variety.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Quebec. Quebec to park, 30 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Game and Fisheries, Park Service, Quebec City, Canada.

98. QUEBEC: La Verendrye Park

Headwaters of several large rivers, and allied streams and ponds make La Verendrye Provincial Park top spot for smallmouth bass and pike. Bass begins June 16, ends October 15. No closed season on pike. Best weeks for bass come in June and early July, with July best month for pike. Guides and canoes are available at Lake Rapide, but other equipment should be brought in by angler. Creel limit for one day is 5 pike, 5 bass.

EQUIPMENT: *Bass:* Light rod, casting plugs for early fishing, bugs good in warmer months. *Pike:* Fish on surface with spinners and live or artificial bait in cool weeks, add wire line for deeper trolling in warm weather. Casting plugs also good for pike. Daily permit, $1.00, plus season nonresident license, $5.

WHAT TO WEAR: Wool and rain gear for spring weather, light woolens, cottons for warmer months, with sweater for cool evenings. Boots not vital. Bring along heavy hiking shoes for sojourns in the surrounding countryside.

WHERE TO STAY: Many cabins, camps available through Department of Game and Fisheries. Plentiful opportunities to camp out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Canoeing, boating, hiking, photography, swimming all offer pleasant diversion.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Ottawa. Ottawa to park, 130 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Department of Game and Fisheries, Park Service, Quebec City, Province of Quebec, Canada.

99. SASKATCHEWAN: Lac la Ronge

Accessible by road only in last four years, Lac la Ronge is paradise for rugged fisherman who likes to battle with king-size lake trout, pickerel, and northern pike. Last year, sports fishermen caught 245,000 pounds of fish out of this wilderness lake; and average lengths were 25.8 inches for trout, 17.2 inches for pickerel, and 27.5 inches for pike. Trout and pickerel seasons run from mid-May to mid-September, with May and June best for trout, and June for pickerel. August best month for pike. Guides necessary and available at many camps, which also supply canoes, boats, and other equipment. You have to throw your fish back if he measures less than 15 inches.

EQUIPMENT: *Lake trout:* Light, 20-pound braided nylon line with copper-nickel lures and natural or artificial bait for cool months. Deep trolling with wire line and lead weights for warm months. *Pike:* Trolling at approximately 8 feet with wire leaders. Variety of baits. *Pickerel:* Minnows and other live baits for trolling, plugs for casting. Season license for nonresidents: $8.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Stout woolens and rain gear for spring, light wool for July and August.

WHERE TO STAY: Over a dozen camps on lake, all with good accommodations, and many equipped to take angler on camping trip.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Wife should stay home if she doesn't like to fish.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Prince Albert. Prince Albert to Lac la Ronge, 180 miles by car.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Bureau of Publications, Tourist Branch, Legislative Building, Regina, Saskatchewan, Canada.

100. SASKATCHEWAN: Cree Lake

This is wilderness area, accessible by plane only. Favorite haunt of giant lake trout and northern pike, and graceful arctic grayling. Pike run to 55 pounds, and one lake trout weighing over 100 pounds was taken in commercial fisherman's net. Season runs from mid-May to mid-September, with best weeks coming in early part of season. Limits: 10 grayling per day; must measure more than 10

inches; lakers and pike must be more than 15 inches; keep 10 pike. Boats, canoes, available on lake. Guide necessary.

EQUIPMENT: *Northern pike:* Cast or troll with heavyweight bait that will reach down to his favorite 8-to-10-foot depth. Pike are ravenous, particularly early, and will bite at nearly anything. Nonresident season license: $8.00.

WHERE TO STAY: Several camps on lake, but arrangements should be made in advance. Ample opportunity to camp out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: If wife is not an outdoor girl, she should keep away from Cree Lake.

TRAVEL DATA: Saskatchewan Government Airways services Cree Lake from Lac la Ronge. (See above, No. 99.)

INFORMATION SERVICE: See *Lac la Ronge* (No. 99).

101. YUKON: WHITEHORSE AREA

Headwaters of Yukon River, with allied lakes and streams, afford varied and exciting fishing. Now accessible by Alcan Highway, this newly opened territory provides fly fishing, bait casting, and trolling for rainbow trout, arctic grayling, salmon, northern pike, landlocked salmon, lake trout, with lakers and grayling most numerous. Guides, canoes, and other equipment available in Whitehorse and many nearby camps. Seasons vary widely for species. Check regulations.

EQUIPMENT: *Grayling:* Regular trout fly-fishing equipment, with dark flies and hackles; or bait-casting rod and reel with wobble lures. *Lake trout:* Bait casting in early months, with deep trolling with wire line, lead weights, and spinning or flashing lures and live or artificial bait. Season nonresident license: $2.00.

WHAT TO WEAR: Stout woolens, long underwear, and rain gear for early spring, light woolens for July and August, with good windbreaker or warm coat for cool evenings. Bring waders for deep water.

WHERE TO STAY: Many camps easily accessible from Whitehorse. Plenty of opportunity to camp out.

FOR WIFE NOT FISHING: Many scenic drives out of Whitehorse, historic remnants of gold rush days, interesting Indian relics.

TRAVEL DATA: Air to Whitehorse.

INFORMATION SERVICE: Canadian Government Travel Bureau, Ottawa, Canada; or Director of Game and Publicity, Whitehorse, Yukon Territory, Canada.

Fishing guides

In the foregoing discussion of the 101 favorite fishing spots, we made several references to the fact that fishing guides were available. The question that is bound to come to mind is: Why do I need a fishing guide?

If you fish in nearby streams and lakes, or if you are after familiar species

of fish, you don't, under most conditions, need a guide. But when you take a trip to waters in an entirely different section of the country from where you live, or to fish for species with which you aren't completely familiar, a good guide can be the key to a successful fishing expedition. Yet we have known of anglers who have traveled thousands of miles into wilderness country at the cost of thousands of dollars, and then wouldn't spend a few extra bucks for the assistance that could mean the difference between catching fish or being skunked.

Some fellows use a guide only part of the time when they make a trek into unfamiliar territory. From him they learn the waters and methods which have been successful in taking good fish. Since he is usually a fellow who has lived around the place all his life, he knows the top spots and what lures and baits the native fish prefer. Not only does he add color and character to a trip, but in number and size of fish caught is usually worth his weight in the silver required to hire him. Then, after a few days of learning the tricks and the territory, the experienced anglers go out on their own.

When you're making plans for a vacation to distant fishing grounds, you usually must arrange in advance for a guide. First-class hands may be booked up months in advance, sometimes for an entire season, with customers who fish with them year after year.

There are several ways to hire a guide by long distance. Many of the leading ones advertise in outdoor sports magazines. Some state fish and game departments will supply a list of regional guides and outfitters, and might possibly, if requested, give you a confidential rating on the outstanding ones. The hotel, motor court, or camp that advertises its angling will often have a guide waiting when you get there. Local sporting-goods stores know their region's best guides and will gladly answer letters requesting that information. Such stores also will help after you reach your destination, but chances of getting a choice guide aren't so good unless you make arrangements in advance.

10

Favorite fishing spots in the rest of the world

The fisherman can ply his sport to the very ends of the earth. In this chapter, we'll cover fishing from Arctic Norway to the Strait of Magellan off the coast of Argentina. If any of our *favorite spots* whet your appetite—and we're sure some will—remember the important thing is to plan your trip well in advance; two years isn't premature for some countries.

Iceland

Iceland's sixty salmon rivers have been building up their almost legendary fame among knowing anglers over the past century, and today there are no waters in the world more jealously held or more zealously preserved. Actually, Iceland's law prohibits the ownership of a salmon river by anyone but an Icelandic national, so the only way to assure yourself of a permanent beat on one of these idyllic streams would be to marry an Icelandic girl. General Stewart, the author of *The Rivers of Iceland*, an Englishman who has fished there since 1914, says in just this connection, "A single angler could go farther and do worse." Anybody who has seen Icelandic girls might well retort that the good gray general is only elucidating the obvious.

People think of Iceland as a remote fastness harboring Eskimos, polar bears, reindeer, seals, and ice floes, and assume that the only proper garb for expeditions there is the type made famous by Admiral Byrd in the Antarctic regions. True, it does lie north of the lower third of Greenland, which is only a couple hundred miles to the west, and wholly above the Faroe Islands, but the proximity of the Gulf Stream gives it a mild oceanic climate, with a spread of only about 20 degrees between its average winter and summer temperatures.

There are both reindeer and seals, but there are no Eskimos, and polar bears are only visiting tourists along the north coast. The average winter temperature is only 30 degrees Fahrenheit, and the summer average is a degree or so above 50. In the three months of the salmon season, from mid-June to mid-September, the noonday temperature is apt to rise close to 70, and there is midnight sun for almost all of the season's first month. Even in late August and early September, when the season's end is approaching, there are only a few hours of real darkness, from around eleven at night until about three-thirty in the morning.

Except from the standpoint of his own creature comfort, Icelandic weather need not concern the angler, as the fishing there is as nearly weatherproof as it ever can be anywhere. For in addition to the total absence of trees there is also an almost total absence of mud. Hence the gin-clear streams, in even the foulest weather, never really muddy up. They may pearl up a bit for a few hours, but they never turn that muddy chocolate color that is so frequently the fly fisherman's despair almost everywhere else. The only big fly in the heavenly ointment of Icelandic fishing is, however, that high winds are rather more likely than not to be blowing across the treeless landscape. Fortunately, the fish seem supremely indifferent to all weather phenomena, and you will take, in addition to salmon, both trout and char, of the migratory and nonmigratory varieties, in literally all kinds of weather. Since you have no trees to worry about, you can usually so maneuver as to be able to let the wind carry your fly to the fish, even in a gale. Then your only worry is to keep your footing, once you're fast to a fish, as you certainly will be, sooner or later, regardless of the weather. That's why chest-high waders are an absolute necessity.

Icelandic fish don't run as large as those in Arctic Norway, the record salmon for most of Iceland's rivers running between 30 and 35 pounds, but what they lack in size they more than make up in vigor. Even a 6-pound salmon, if he's a male and fresh in from the sea, will lead you such a merry chase that you're a cinch to be sloshing around in water above the height of hip boots before you beach him, unless your tackle is of such gargantuan proportions as to enable you to horse him in.

The Icelanders themselves have apparently never heard of the light-tackle trend, and generally still use the heaviest rods that Hardy makes,

derricklike devices of 22 to 24 ounces with leaders of around 20-pound test, and their general practice is to grab the tail of any salmon that's brought close to shore and heave him in some 30 feet or more from the stream edge, where he's an odds-on bet to brain himself on the needle-sharp lava rock. When you show up with a 4-ounce trout rod, and announce your intention of attempting to beach yourself any fish you hook, they laugh themselves silly. They're laughers and drinkers on a Homeric scale, and generally just about the most likable people you'll ever meet, but they've simply never yet thought of giving the fish an even chance.

So take your own tackle, and if you're smart, you won't take anything heavier than, at most, a 6-ounce rod, since nine out of ten of the salmon you hook will run under 10 pounds. In most instances you're just as likely to take a trout or a char of between 2 and 4 pounds right in the same pools where the salmon are, and of course they're a picnic on rods of between 2 and 4 ounces. With rods of that weight you still have a splendid chance with all but a few of the salmon you're apt to hook, and because of the comparative lack of stream obstructions you have nothing but your own impatience to fear in playing even heavy fish on light tackle.

In Reykjavik there are two excellent tackle shops, where you can get your rods repaired promptly and well, and get all the flies you need. The Silver Doctor, Silver Wilkinson, and Black Doctor are almost a toss-up for first place as the most dependable all-round fly, being taken with enthusiasm not only by the salmon for which they are intended, but also by sea trout, browns and brookies, and by both migratory and nonmigratory char. The latter are such voracious takers of virtually any fly, including dries all the way down to No. 20 midges, that almost any fly you toss is likely to provoke some kind of action. In most Icelandic waters you will have a simultaneous chance for two of the five kinds of fish (salmon and either migratory or nonmigratory trout and char) so a size 4 Silver Doctor is probably the best all-round bet. But you will find salmon taking as readily on one size as another, from as small as 10 to as large as 6/0, so to insure the maximum number of strikes it's better to stay to size 4 or smaller, unless you feel that you just can't be bothered with fish under 8 pounds. Since most of the wading is done when the rivers are abnormally swollen and because the lava river beds are extremely slippery, hobnailed wading sandals, or at least a set of chains or a pair of wading grips, are a must.

Whatever you take in the way of stream clothes, be sure that it's both rain-resistant and windproof. A rain jacket, preferably with a hood, should be in the back pocket of whatever tackle pack, vest, or coat you normally wear on the stream. You're almost certain to need it, for protection from wind if not from rain. The winds serve to keep the water temperature almost always below 50 degrees, so you'll want to be especially warmly clad from

the waist down. Ski underwear and heavy socks are indicated, the latter of the insulated or therm-rubber variety if you tend to be at all cold-footed.

Salmon fishing has never been cheap anywhere, at least in modern times, and your ten days of fishing in Iceland, including your transportation, will stand you just about a thousand dollars. That's on the package deal. Unless you have an Icelandic friend who owns a salmon river, the chances are that it would cost you more than that, in money, and certainly a lot more in time and trouble, if you tried to arrange an expedition on your own. There are no railways in Iceland, and some of the more remote rivers are accessible only by a combination of plane and pack horse. There are buses, to put you within reach of a number of the rivers, but those that are within easiest reach physically are the least likely to be within reach financially, in terms of fishing rights.

Three of the best salmon rivers in Iceland, as well as several of the trout-teeming lakes, are controlled by Icelandic Airlines, on whose deal you are transported, guided, bedded, and boarded, so that your time can be spent in fishing as nearly round the clock as your enthusiasm and stamina will permit. There are streamside bungalows, complete with modern comforts, and food and drink beyond the capacity of all but a champion trencherman. In general, both food and lodging throughout the land are substantial but not de luxe, the former more likely to please gourmands than gourmets since Icelandic portions are of heroic Viking size, and the latter more inclined to comfort than to chic. In Reykjavik, outside the Hotel Borg, which compares to a good German hotel, there are at present very few adequate tourist lodgings, and outside the city they are of the farmhouse variety, clean and friendly but strictly potluck all around. The independent angler, setting out from Reykjavik, had better have some of the explorer and pioneer in his makeup.

British Isles

Suppose you're on a business or sight-seeing trip to England and want a few days of respite in the open air. How would you find a nearby stream or lake to try your luck? Local information is usually the best, and good sources of local information are the angling-equipment shops found in most towns or large villages. For a more general picture you can buy a tome called *Where to Fish*, complete with map, published by the Field, which lists several hundred "fishing stations" in England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland. This book covers all kinds of fresh-water and sea fishing on and around the islands, with details of location, accommodation, ownership, controlling authority, and types of fish; it also provides helpful information on closed seasons, flies, and so forth. It is kept up to date by new editions every

two years, and costs about two dollars. Another and smaller affair is an excellent map and list of some 280 trout and salmon waters of England and Wales, published by the British Field Sports Society. *The Fishing Gazette,* a weekly angling paper published at 171 High Street, Beckenham, Kent, not only lists much of the hotel fishing available, but supplies current angling reports from all over the British Isles. The Scottish Tourist Board also publishes a guidebook, *Scotland for Fishing,* which is a detailed compilation of the rivers and costs. But none of these publications by any means covers *all* the good fishing places which are available.

As few visitors go to the British Isles entirely for the purpose of fishing, choice of waters will depend in some degree on your general itinerary. Since the best sport is always to be found in the most scenic districts, according to John S. Walsh in his commentary on Great Britain, fishing provides an ideal way of getting to know the special charm of the English countryside.

You will find that angling here is less rugged and more organized than back home. Black flies are unknown and mosquitoes are rare, while the permit system prevents you from becoming one of a gang of competitors all thrashing the waters for the same trout. The climate is more temperate, greatly extending the favorable fishing periods; even in mid-July and August, trout will continue to rise and the angler will never be baked out by excessive heat. If the river or lake isn't beside the inn, it can usually be reached by walking through a field or two. Instead of back-breaking portages through dense bush, you stroll through lush meadowland or heather-covered moor with distant perspective of rolling country, and the occasional spire of some village church. Except for some mountain streams or wide rivers, wading isn't usually necessary, as generally there is plenty of access from one bank or the other, with room for back cast.

If you like trout and salmon fishing, there are some excellent streams in the South, Midlands, and East, though these regions, being flatter, generally have sluggish waters more suited to the growth of coarse fish. For game fishing, the mountains of Wales, the moors of Devon, Cornwall and Somerset, the Yorkshire dales, and the hills of Scotland provide greater variety. (It's common knowledge that the standard-bearer for the dining world is fresh Scotch salmon; the best of these is London smoked, emanating from the Billingsgate Market, but the fish, like the malt whisky, is created in waters which bubble from granite through peat, and none is superior to those products of Craigellachie on the Spey.) But it might be remembered that the mountains and hills which produce the trout streams and lakes also bring down the rain to fill them, causing this side of the country to be somewhat wetter than the east. Another point to remember in planning some fishing in England is that the open seasons are different from those which prevail in North America, and always start much earlier:

For example, the open season for salmon is from February 1 to October 11; for trout, March 1 to September 30; and the coarse-fish season is longest of all, extending from June 15 to March 14.

Because of the relatively cool water, English trout feed at or near the surface throughout the year, but sport is usually better early in the season, and especially at May fly time, of which more anon. In August, the water is lower, fish are shy, and hotel accommodations are somewhat harder to find. But you will never experience the midsummer doldrums of so many North American lakes when trout can only be lured by trolling assorted hardware from a copper line near the bottom.

Basic trout-fishing methods and equipment are similar the world over, but there are a few important differences between fishing in the U.S.A. and in England. Fishing in England with rod and line started a few centuries earlier than in the U.S., and this may have caused the fish to develop more brain capacity. Whatever the reason, experience suggests that though there is no lack of fish, a good catch requires greater skill and lighter tackle. This is particularly true of the large, educated trout of the crystal-clear chalk streams. The expert stalks these fish individually, waiting to begin operations until he spots a big one cruising and rising regularly in its own special beat under a bank or along the roots of a tree. (A really dedicated fisherman will "sit down" to the same trout for an hour—or a week, if necessary.) Then comes the choice of an appropriate fly—as close an imitation as possible of what seems to be pleasing his palate. Remaining well hidden or far off, you cast the lure so that it falls, as lightly as thistledown and without drag, just upstream from his lair. Now, if all this strategy and skill have succeeded, comes the pay-off. There will be a slight plop—no more than would be made by a minnow—as the big fellow sucks in the fly, and for the next half-hour he will rush madly up and down, diving, running into weeds, sulking, leaping, and trying every other stratagem he knows to break your slender leader. Finally the turmoil is over as you slip the net under a "master fish" —perhaps worthy of a call for "drinks all round" as you return to the inn.

In mountain streams and lakes, the wet fly is generally used; spinning and worm fishing is sometimes also sanctioned. Even on fast water, however, unless it is unduly rough, the dry fly works well. It often brings up the big fish which seem to be invulnerable to the wet variety. It should also be remembered that the *size* of the fly is all-important. English trout prefer much smaller flies than their American counterparts, and you'll do well to purchase your lures on the other side. The hotter the weather and the larger the fish, the smaller the fly should be; one of our best catches of big trout was made one day in August on a tiny midge fly you could scarcely see, after the trout had refused every other lure in the box. In the evening, however, the same trout respond better to a thick-bodied fly such as the Coachman,

Coch-y-bondhu, or Badger. Choice of fly depends very much on the time of the year and the local feeding habits of the trout. Early in the season, Olive Duns, March Browns, and similar flies are successful. Later in the season, especially in hot weather, small patterns, as near as possible to the natural insect currently being eaten by the trout, are essential.

On most trout waters in England, there is a period each year between about mid-May and mid-June when even the educated trout seem to go mad. At this time, quantities of large and beautiful yellowish flies hatch out at intervals from the water. Ever since Izaak Walton wrote about the "rain of yellow butter," the May fly season has always stirred the blood of British enthusiasts. In fact, the sight of these flies seems to excite even the largest and wiliest trout to gorge themselves at the surface, which activity also fills the fishing hotels and the fishermen's creels. Daily permit rates on some streams increase for this period, and if it is a good season you are likely to get better catches than at any other time. Even at May fly time, however, the big trout are by no means easy to lure. They seldom lose their natural caution and will sometimes rise more readily to another pattern even when the natural May flies are dapping the surface.

Coarse fishing can also be good sport, and is much more highly esteemed in England than on this side. If you're not near any good game fishing, you might like to try your hand at some of the local coarse varieties. Pike, carp, and perch are almost the only familiar fish you will find in this category, and they may be caught in the same way as back home. But there are no bass, muskies, walleyes, or pickerel; instead you'll find yourself angling for fresh-water bream, which weigh up to several pounds; roach and rudd, small and very common fish found in almost every quiet water; tench, a bit like carp except for the tiny scales; chub, which in England grow to several pounds in weight; or dace, small, lively, silvery fish which rise well to the dry fly and provide good practice as a prelude to trout fishing.

Fishing for each of these varieties of coarse fish is a separate art in itself, and you may be surprised to see the fine tackle and elaborate technique used. For example, to catch the carp (which here, unlike in the U.S.A., is rated highly as a sporting fish and is considered very difficult to catch), the experts use a long, slender rod and a line and leader as fine as would be employed for trout. The bait is a small lump of sweet dough, and is usually suspended from a porcupine-quill float. Ground baiting with bran or chopped worms is commonly employed.

Izaak Walton devotes a whole chapter to the carp, which he has immortalized as the "Queen of Rivers, a stately, a good and a very subtile fish." Modern Izaaks go about catching carp in scientific fashion in still ponds and lakes. Having chosen, plumbed, and ground-baited the spot the day before, and keeping well hidden behind bushes or reeds, they cast far out so that

the bait lies *on* the bottom, marked by the light float. They then possess themselves in patience until the float starts to bob; this means that a carp is suspiciously nosing the bait. No action is taken, however, until the float starts off on a slow glide, showing that the bait is in the mouth. At this point the fish is struck and, with the fine tackle and light rod, a tussle develops which may last up to half an hour before another carp proves himself not quite "subtile" enough.

Hotel accommodations vary considerably. As may be expected, out-of-the-way fishing inns and hotels don't provide the same amenities as those in the large towns, but you are usually sure of good country food, good English ale, and a comfortable bed. Fishing hotels on some of the more renowned

waters maintain a high standard. Rates are low compared with American hotels, and you can stay at a first-class fishing hotel for $3 or $4 per day, including permits. For those who wish to combine fishing with sight-seeing, it is entirely possible to stay in cities or resort towns such as Exeter or Lynton (both in Devon) and yet be within a short drive of several good fishing spots. And if you do not stray into neighboring counties, your general license will apply wherever you go.

Ireland remains one of the better salmonoid fisheries in the world due to its extreme rainfall and comparative lack of industrial pollution. The Emerald Isle has some fifteen major salmon rivers and twenty-five minor ones. Many waters are free to visitors staying at hotels which have proprietary fishing rights, while others require a small daily, weekly, or monthly fee. The Lee, Moy, Blackwater, Boyne, and the Corrib are all popular among tourists, but to get the best fishing requires a campaign of sorts. Perhaps the outstanding river is the beautiful Blackwater of County Cork. For the most part, its historic beats are held by riparian owners and these are rented out

to local syndicates who exercise their options from year to year. Thus, it isn't easy to obtain fishing rights except from a relatively few owners who rent their beats in advance. In brief, you cannot arrive unannounced in Ireland with your tackle, expecting to sample the Blackwater. The campaign begins by first writing to the Bord Failte Eireann, the Irish Tourist Bureau, regarding your trip, say, at least two years in advance. If you can't wait that long, then a trip to Ashford Castle or any one of the immediate lessees is in order. Another important thing to know about Irish fishing is that their big fish arrive early in the year. The season begins in January and the best angling occurs from February through March for salmon of 10 pounds or more. The grilse runs commence in June and last until October. Broadly speaking, Ireland offers the most fishing at the lowest cost in Europe.

For the salt-water angler who visits the British Isles, the great attraction is the tuna fishing of Scarborough and Whitby in the North Sea on the coasts of Yorkshire in August and September. The Cornish coast near Land's End runs a close second, but there are many other delightful spots. Ballycotton, Ireland, is one of the most famous, followed by Seaford, Lowestoft, Filey, Ramsgate, Deal, Dover, Herne Bay, Margate, Newhaven, Brighton, Eastbourne, Hastings, Poole, Bournemouth, Blackwater, and many other places in England, Ireland, and Wales.

The British Sea Anglers Society in Fetter Lane, London, will furnish ample cooperation and all the information needed by the prospective visitor.

France

In France, the best fishing, according to the author of this piece, John I. Hall, is considered to be in Normandy. In theory, of course, Normandy should no longer be a good place to fish trout at all. In the day of the airplane and the automobile it is not sufficiently remote and ought by rights to have been fished to death long ago. But the facts about trout fishing in the thickly populated parts of Europe suggest that the over-the-hills-and-far-away school of trout fishers should revise their thinking. There are very few places left, either near or far, where the number of fish that can legally be taken daily, and their size, isn't pretty strictly controlled. Consequently, it should be kept in mind that recommendation of trout fishing in Normandy is based on the assumption that travelers who are also trout fishers should examine pretty closely any fishing that is near at hand and easy to get at. The criterion should be to discover for themselves places that are strictly accessible, where they have a reasonable chance of getting their quota of trout, and where living is good and entirely different from living at home. Normandy is one such place for residents of England and for European visitors from the States.

It is three hours from Paris by car. Le Havre and Cherbourg, where the Atlantic liners dock, are in it. It is divided into five departments: Orne, Seine-Inférieure, Calvados, Eure, and Manche. In these are not only some of the most beautiful rivers and trout streams in Western Europe, but also the finest raw materials for good eating in France, and this is saying a lot. So even if one goes to Normandy to fish trout and fails, one could scarcely dream up a finer place in Europe in which to be a thwarted fisherman. It takes a real expert to be effectively miserable on Sole Normande and Canard au Sang à la Rouennaise. Anyway, to fish in Normandy, or even to eat one's way through it, is better than to fight over it. Many Americans and British have done the one, so they could do worse than to try the other.

The first thing to know about Norman trout fishing is the kind of rivers to expect; the best way to demonstrate this is to make notes on one particular river, because the Norman rivers and streams, though they vary considerably in size, are nearly all of the same kind. The Varenne, for example, is as good a subject as any, though some say prettier. It rises a little South of Saint-Saëns in the Seine-Inférieure, and flows through Saint-Saëns itself, Bellencombre, Muchedent, Torcy-le-Grand, and Saint-Germain d'Etables, then joins the Béthune near Arques-la-Bataille to flow into the sea near Dieppe. For some distance it runs alongside the main motor road from Dieppe to Paris, a small, discreet, smooth little stream, rarely more than 20 yards across. The countryside is luscious grazing land, full of fat cattle. The river wanders about in loops and meanders, among apple orchards, in a broad valley. The low hills that enclose it are old hunting forests where William of Normandy, and later on the late Duke of Westminster (once the principal landowner of London), chased the wild boar. Among them are the forests of Croc, of Arques, and the Wood of Pimont, where a famous water diviner and metal dowser lived in the 1930's whom villagers called the Sorcerer of the Wood of Pimont. During the war these forests hid many of the ramps from which the flying bombs started on their one-way trips to London.

The Varenne is a very typical Norman stream—smooth, clear, fairly shallow, fast-flowing, but with an almost oily surface save in the runs. Even the pools are not deep; the water is cold, but not ice-cold. It contains plenty of weed and in the season some water cress, so with generally alkaline water this insures an immense and varied supply of choice trout food—small fresh water shrimps, creepers of all kinds, snails, and all the flies in season—so the fish are fat. The May fly comes on in late May or early June for about three weeks, mostly just under that time. It is a simple, open river to fish, but with very little cover, so the trout rather easily can see a clumsy fisher coming. The Varenne isn't a wading river, but many of the others are. At the start of the season—it opens in April and closes in September—the banks are fairly clear, but by June the high flags have sprung up on the water's edge and you

can often fish behind them, using them judiciously for cover. It should all be dry-fly water. A skilled caster of plugs or small Devons can clear out a whole stretch of a river like the Varenne in a few seasons. In some places, in fact, this has been done, and consequently it is no longer officially encouraged.

Dry-fly fishing in these Norman rivers, however, is a pretty skilled occupation. If you're a duffer, at first you don't get many fish. By the same token, they are perfect rivers upon which to learn; the clear banks, the smooth water, the strictly calculable behavior of the fish help you. The secret of catching lies in two things: fishing accurately to rises as you see the trout come up to the natural fly, and, on days when there is no rise or the rise is sparse, recognizing the places where there ought to be a good fish lying.

Accurate casting is the criterion. Consequently, a newcomer will need to have the right rod and tackle for this kind of fishing. The rod required is a typical dry-fly rod, not longer than 9½ feet and not shorter than 8½ feet. It should be light, fairly stiff, and have plenty of drive from the butt, since the wind can blow hard in Normandy, and for the accurate casting into the wind that gets you your best fish, you need a rod that can be used to push line out really hard. The reel should be matched to your rod weight and length, and you should use a double-tapered, dressed silk or nylon line, also matched to the rod for weight; a too heavy line will strain the rod in a hard day's fishing, in windy conditions particularly; a too light line won't get out at all. As to leaders, these should be 3X or 2X nylon or gut, in a single 3-yard strand. You never fish more than one fly. In May fly time when the big trout are coming up, it's safest to use 2X leaders, particularly in the evening, but normally 3X is the effective weight during daylight. Finally, you'll need a landing net, unless you are one of those steady heroes who are ready to play a fine trout to exhaustion in a quickly flowing stream, and then manhandle it riskily onto the bank.

Expert advice about tackle for dry-fly fishing in the type of river found in Normandy is obtained easily enough in London and Paris—houses like Hardy and Ogden Smith in London, and Wyers and Brehier on the Quai du Louvre in Paris. Hardy also sells widely to fishing-tackle shops in France. These are international names in the European fishing-tackle world. But in most cities and towns of reasonable size in Normandy, there are tackle shops, excellent ones because of the number of fishermen and the many rivers. They advise pretty competently about rods, tackle, and flies in general, and it is always wise to question local tackle sellers particularly about local flies. There are nearly always specialties, or most favored flies of established patterns. In any event, most of them will be very different indeed from the fly patterns current on American rivers.

Fishing in France is well regulated by the Ministry of Agriculture, and is presided over by a body called the Conseil Supérieur de la Pêche, centered

in Paris. In each department of Normandy it has branches or affiliates which are called "Fédérations des Associations de Pêche et de Pisciculture," which answer inquiries about fishing in their districts very efficiently and issue permits. In addition, they publish admirable guides for each department with extraordinarily full information about fishing: where it can be obtained, how, and how much it costs. Incidentally, the official taxes and seasonal contributions connected with fishing in Normandy are relatively small—a few dollars a season—though to obtain a rod on a private water isn't easy, and generally fairly expensive. No detailed guidance about how to find a rod on a private water in Normandy is worth writing down. Circumstances in each place change too quickly, but you can nearly always find it possible to discover one, even in a district that is new to you, within a few days. One does have to pay around $10 or so a day for single days on well-known rivers, but this is nothing extraordinary for really good fishing anywhere. Many rivers cost much less.

Few countries in the world are so well provided with fishing guides and maps as France. First, there are the guides of the "Fédérations de Pêche" for each district. Second, there is the famous *Guide Pêche Jaune* with associated maps. Third, there are the Michelin Tourist Maps; and finally there are the brief guide sheets put out by the Touring Club de France. The latter are excellent for information about rivers as well as about hotels that have private water of their own. These guide sheets are annual affairs maintained partly by fishers' own reports, and contain a list of the "Associations de Pêche et de Pisciculture" in each particular region. Arm yourself with these and a dictionary, and once your fishing permits are in order you can travel about fishing new water on what is called the *domaine public*, or waters over which local hotels have the rights; and from time to time getting a day on a private water for a fee. Distances are quite short and the changes of scene enchanting.

A list of the best rivers of Normandy? There are so many: in the Eure country there are, for example, the Iton, the Andelle, the Risle, and the Epte; in the Seine-Inférieure the Scie, the Bresle, the Durdant, the Arques, the Béthune, the Valmont, the Varenne, the Soule, the Noireau, the Dove, and the Veyle. The thing is to get your guides and maps and discover your own favorites. Finally, if all else fails, take a look at the gastronomic map of Normandy and consider just how long to remain there, bearing in mind your present wardrobe. That's worth doing too.

France has several salmon rivers—notably the Allier, Sée, and Sélune, but the quality of the fishing is poor and their few profitable stretches are strictly preserved. Beyond Gaul, the range of the Atlantic salmon extends no further east in Europe than the Rhine River. For all practical purposes, the fish is extinct in that watershed today. There are two nominally separate salmon in

Germany. You will treasure one on the cold plates of country inns such as Hotel Dreesen at Bad Godesberg. This is the gourmet's *Rhinelachs* or true Atlantic salmon, which fattened on sand eels in the North Sea. Years ago, the fish were actually caught in the Rhine, but now all restaurant salmon originate in Norway or the British Isles. The other salmon is *der Huchen,* a large, coarse member of the genus *Salmo* who ranges the Danube and her tributaries, consuming such items as frogs and mice, and generally acting like a pike. The *Huchen* salmon is distributed as far north as the Laber, Regen, and Ilz rivers and extends east to Yugoslavia.

Spain

Few trout and salmon fishermen think of Spain as a place for their sport. Perhaps it is because Spain and Portugal are regarded by Americans as southern countries, though the 44th parallel of latitude which passes through the fishable portion of northern Spain runs also through the southern tip of Nova Scotia and Maine.

Salmon fishing in Spain dates back to Roman times and the word salmon —or jumping fish—is Roman. The present-day restoration of salmon fishing for the sportsman has been brought about by wise government regulation and the untiring effort of the Bureau of Tourism. In 1941 all netting of salmon rivers, at the mouth and in the stream, was prohibited and since then nature has restored these rivers to an astonishing degree. Poaching has been practically eliminated by opening certain beats in the preserved rivers to the local fisherman, or "professionals" as they're called, and by forcing the registration of every salmon sold.

Along the northern coast of Spain there are sixteen rivers containing salmon and of these the five best are preserved and beats assigned by the Board of Tourism. The preserves are on the river Eo in Galicia and the rivers Narcea and Deva-Cares in Asturias. Visitors who want to fish on these preserves obtain a permit from the Spanish National Tourist Department offices in Darsena de la Marina, Corunna, for the Eo River and in Cabo Noval, 5, Oviedo, for the other rivers. The river Eo is an early river, but the other two preserves are at their best through May and June. The season closes July 31.

The advantage of the preserves, in addition to their value as a conservation measure, is that sections of each preserve are divided into beats, each beat being large enough for a day's fishing. Beats are allotted in rotation, so each angler has an opportunity to fish a complete section. The permit also authorizes the angler to fish for trout in the waters of the preserve. There is also a national preserve for trout fishing on the river Tormes. The best fishing on this preserve is usually from mid-March to mid-June.

Denmark

In Denmark's rivers and streams, lakes, broads, and meres, and in the surrounding sea, there is fishing of virtually every kind, with lots of fish and easy access to the fishing. Is it game fishing you want—trout, salmon, sea trout, grayling? You will find it in Jutland. Is it coarse fishing? You will find it all over Denmark, almost untouched, for Danish anglers, with very few exceptions, have never discovered the joys of fishing for roach, bream, carp, chub, and the rest, including pike that frequently run up to 20 pounds, perch up to 3 pounds, and the fighting pike/perch, a separate species not found in British waters. If it is sea fishing you want, again Denmark has it everywhere along the coast and it runs from the humble cod to the huge and fighting tunny (the tuna).

Yes, the possibilities are almost limitless in all that appeals to the angler on holiday. The Danes are the first to admit that they haven't yet developed their salmon streams. After all, English angling experts have only recently discovered Denmark's potentialities for fishing holidays and urged them to do something about it. But the salmon's cousin, the sea trout, is found widely both in fresh and salt waters, and actually running up to 20 to 28 pounds. From midsummer until the early autumn, in particular, there is lots of first-class sea-trout fishing in Denmark. They are found in most Jutland streams in plenty, and the Karup are regarded by experts as one of Europe's best sea-trout waters.

All over Denmark, and not least on Zealand, the island on which Copenhagen stands, there is plenty of first-class coarse fishing. There are pike and black-striped perch, often of great size and putting up a first-class fight. Pike of 10 to 15 pounds and perch of over 2 pounds are general, but far heavier fish are frequently landed. All kinds of other coarse fish can be found in plenty for those who will only sit quietly in a boat or on the banks with a close eye on the float. On still summer evenings the surface is sometimes alive with fish and it is something of a problem to keep the waters from getting overstocked with coarse fish.

Not only is the coarse fishing regarded as "possibly among the finest available in Europe today" by one English expert who tried it, but the sea fishing has been reported to be the finest to be found in the whole of Europe, without reservation. The whole year round in Øresund, Kattegat, Skagerrak, the Baltic, or in Great of Little Belt there are fish in plenty for the fishing. The cod seem to be waiting in queues to fall on the bait, but not only cod, for there are large flatfish, whiting, ling, pollack, and coalfish, with now and then a skate or tope. In the summer months, mackerel and garfish make for the glittering spinner that the fisherman offers, and occasionally the fisherman

will be lucky enough to catch a salmon or sea trout. All this whether one is out on the sea in a boat or whether one fishes from a rock, a mole, or even directly from the beach. Some fishermen wade out from the beach to spin for sea trout that cruise along the coast in search of river mouths.

Those who prefer to fish with bottom tackle can expect the same heavy catches. For sea fishing Denmark certainly covers the whole field, and big-game fishermen from all over the world late in August every year go out after the tunny which are in Danish waters for about a month. Tunny weighing up to nearly 800 pounds have been landed from Danish waters after many a dramatic fight.

In Denmark fishing with spinner or spoons is much more general than with the fly in virtually all fishing waters, catching salmon, sea trout, pike, and perch in fresh water and cod, sea trout, coalfish, and tope in the sea. Many different kinds of spinners and spoons are to be found in the various sports shops in Denmark and they are very cheap. The making of Danish fishing tackle has been technically very well developed and the hand-made, split-cane fishing rods, spinners, spoons, flies, etc., have an excellent reputation and are very reasonable in price.

Perhaps what you want most of all is to spend long hours filled with peace by the banks of a lake or a mere or to lie in a boat among the reeds and water lilies with your pipe and your fishing tackle—a little roach or a worm on your hook as bait, the float bobbing gently on the water. Roach, bream, perch, and all sorts of other coarse fish will be there in plenty, and coarse fishing has a charm which many tourists value highly.

Norway

Despite some opinions to the contrary, Norway is still among the world's best spots for salmon and trout fishing, states Al McClane. No doubt, Scotland's rivers are better managed (and more expensive). Perhaps there are more trout in New Zealand. Certainly the Pacific salmon, especially the Chinook, are bigger than the Atlantic variety, but for all-round sport with rod and line within two days'—hours, by air—traveling time of almost anywhere in Europe, Norway would be hard to beat. Nor is the salmon fishing necessarily expensive. There are of course millionaires' rivers beyond the pocket of ordinary mortals, but the bulk of Norwegian salmon beats are reasonably priced.

Although you always have the chance of catching a monster fish in Norway, you shouldn't be lured there for that reason. The main thing is that the sport is good, the scenery is grand, the people are friendly, and a fishing vacation in Norway will always stand out in your memory as a thing to look back to with pleasure.

Another attraction is that the best fishing season coincides with the finest holiday season—from May to September. Salmon can be had from early May until September, but the best season is in June and July. Sea-trout fishing takes place from June to September and is best in August. The season for brown-trout angling varies with the altitude. In areas below 2,500 feet the season extends from May to September, but in mountain ranges higher than 2,500 feet the season is generally in July and August.

Norway has more salmon rivers than any other country in the world. But the demand for salmon fishing in Norway is very great, and it's often difficult to hire a river or a beat. The best rivers are found in the fjord country on the west coast and in Arctic Norway, where fishing can be had around the clock during the midnight sun season. If you go to the fjord country, always remember to book hotel and fishing well in advance. Beyond the Arctic Circle, you can always manage to find available salmon rivers, particularly where the fishing is offered on daily terms.

In the fjord country, River Aaroy is the most exclusive salmon river, famous for its 60-pounders, but it's privately owned and is seldom sublet. The best sporting river is the Laerdal on the same fjord—Sogne Fjord—the longest in Norway. You might start by writing to the Laerdal Tourist Committee, Laerdal, for a copy of their folder. But remember that sportsmen—including royalty—are queuing up for fishing on the Laerdal, and if you get it, the rental for fishing alone is around $35 a day. However, there's no shortage of first-class salmon rivers in the region with such as the Namsen, Driva, Surna, Tengs, Os, Vossa, Aurland, Neroy, Gaula, Rauma, and Leon.

Perhaps the best fishing vacation in the whole world is to go to the Land of the Midnight Sun. Fly from Oslo to Alta or Hammerfest and go to several places where there is good fishing. River Alta is, of course, the king of all rivers; but an American now holds the lease for several years, and the river isn't available to the public. Travel by bus from Alta or Hammerfest to Karasjok Gjestgiveri (guest house) and fish several rivers nearby. You can get a guide and go by the Lapp canoes in an hour or so to some very good salmon fishing. Or you can go by car along the Jiesjokka River and stop at pools right alongside the road. There are lots of salmon in the rivers around Karasjok, and you'll have wonderful sport. You can fish twenty-four hours a day. It's that light.

There are other *Gjestgiveris* near other salmon rivers, such as the Skaidi Gjestgiveri on the Repparfjord River. There are many other rivers and lakes, where you can catch brown trout and two fish much like whitefish, called *sik* and Arctic char. Also the harr, which is like Arctic grayling. All of them rise readily to dry flies. They reach about 3 pounds; the browns go bigger.

Brown-trout fishing is easier to get than salmon fishing. It is best for the sportsman in the mountainous areas close to and above the timber line. The

quantity and the size of the fish in the lakes and rivers of these areas are usually better than fish from the lower-lying country. Almost all the higher-lying lakes and rivers have only trout, but with some char in certain places. The height of the timber line varies, of course, quite considerably, more or less in keeping with the latitude of the area. Thus in southern Norway it usually varies from an altitude of 1,800 to 3,000 feet; in Nordland (a northerly county which is cut by the Polar Circle) trees don't grow much above 1,200 feet, and in the far north, in Finnmark County, trees give up the struggle at as low an altitude as 600 feet and even less. The farther north you travel, the better the trout fishing waters in lower land areas.

The massive Langfjellene (the Long Mountains) formation, which runs in a continuous chain from just above Kristiansund (the Setesdal uplands) in the very south of the country all the way to the northeast of Röros (the Sylene Range), provides the best fishing waters in the southern part of Norway. In this area lie the lakes and rivers of the valleys of Osterdal, the Gudbrandsdal, Valdres, and Hallingdal (Bergen Railway), with tributary valleys, in the northerly reaches the Femund area and westward the Hardanger Mountain plateau. The mountain areas between the Osterdal and Gudbrandsdal valleys have few lakes or rivers. Generally, fishing is best in the lakes and rivers which lie a little off the beaten track.

Trout fishing in the lower-lying areas of southern Norway is, generally speaking, a chancy game. But there are a number of forest lakes with mixed stocks of trout and perch which offer the angler attractive fishing. The Osterdal valleys, moreover, have in various places good stocks of trout as low as 1,200 to 1,800 feet and the major rivers of this area offer good sport. In the other main valleys, fishing is undoubtedly better at higher altitudes, but there is always the chance of big fish in some reaches of the rivers.

Along the south coast (Sorlandet), there is a multitude of lakes, both large and small, and lots of trout, but the fish are small and often of poor quality with the exception of the Setesdal and Rogaland Highlands. The low-lying waters of the fjord country (western Norway) are in much the same condition, but here also the higher-lying lakes offer excellent sport.

The mountain areas of Trondelag offer mostly good fishing, and in north Norway in general are to be found some of Norway's best fishing districts. There are fewer small trout even in the low-lying waters. In the mountain lakes the char often run to considerable size. There are good fishing lakes along the coast, but the best areas for trout fishing are near the Swedish border.

The word "Finnmarksvidda," the Finnmark Plateau, sounds especially sweet in a fisherman's ear. Here, even today, can be found lakes and rivers seldom, if ever, visited by people, and offering really splendid sport.

Fishing tackle is usually not for hire in Norway. If you want to buy it—

and this works out cheaper than paying excess fare by plane—you might contact A. Gresvig (Storgaten 20, Oslo) or Platou Sport (Smastrandgaten 8, Bergen), where you will also get expert advice on what sort of tackle is required for the various rivers. You need heavier tackle in Norway than anywhere else. Remember that many Norwegian streams are so fierce that the odds are on the fish! Always ask the owner of the water what sort of tackle he recommends. Take with you, however, the wet and dry flies you use in the United States. With them you can catch brown trout and char. For salmon and sea trout, buy your flies in Oslo or Bergen, because they are well tied and a bit cheaper too. Best salmon flies are Jock Scott, Thunder and Lightning, Mar Lodge, Silver Gray, Silver Doctor, Black Doctor, Red Torrish, Yellow Torrish, Black Dose, Blue Charm—all good, and so is the Durham Ranger and the Green Highlander. You select the hook size according to the height of the water—from No. 2 all the way up to an 8/0. Probably the most useful sizes will be from 2/0 to 5/0. You will have to ask about the height of the water you will fish, and then you can judge for yourself or ask the man you buy the flies from. Leaders are again dependent upon the force of the water. Some fishermen use 20-pound test tippets, which is as heavy as anyone would need to go, and a tippet over 10- or 12-pound test should hold almost any fish. Certainly on a straightaway pull it is almost impossible to break a 12-pound test bit of nylon leader material. For sea trout, where you will use dry flies or small wet flies, go down to a 2X or 3X tippet. Those are about all you will need for fly fishing. With spinning, you can use 12- or 15-pound test line and you can purchase good spoons in Norway.

In Arctic Norway you'll need heavy clothing. It is the Land of the Midnight Sun, and you will be fishing a lot during the night hours, and it can be cold. One suit of heavy underwear, woolen pants, woolen socks, woolen shirts. Be sure to take rain gear and chest-high waders. Or buy it all in Oslo or Bergen at reasonable prices.

Probably the easiest way to arrange a maiden trip to Norway is through the Scandinavian Airlines System or with the help of Norwegian National Travel Office, 290 Madison Avenue, New York 17, New York. The latter organization publishes an excellent booklet, *Angling in Norway,* which will help you plan any fishing trip to that country.

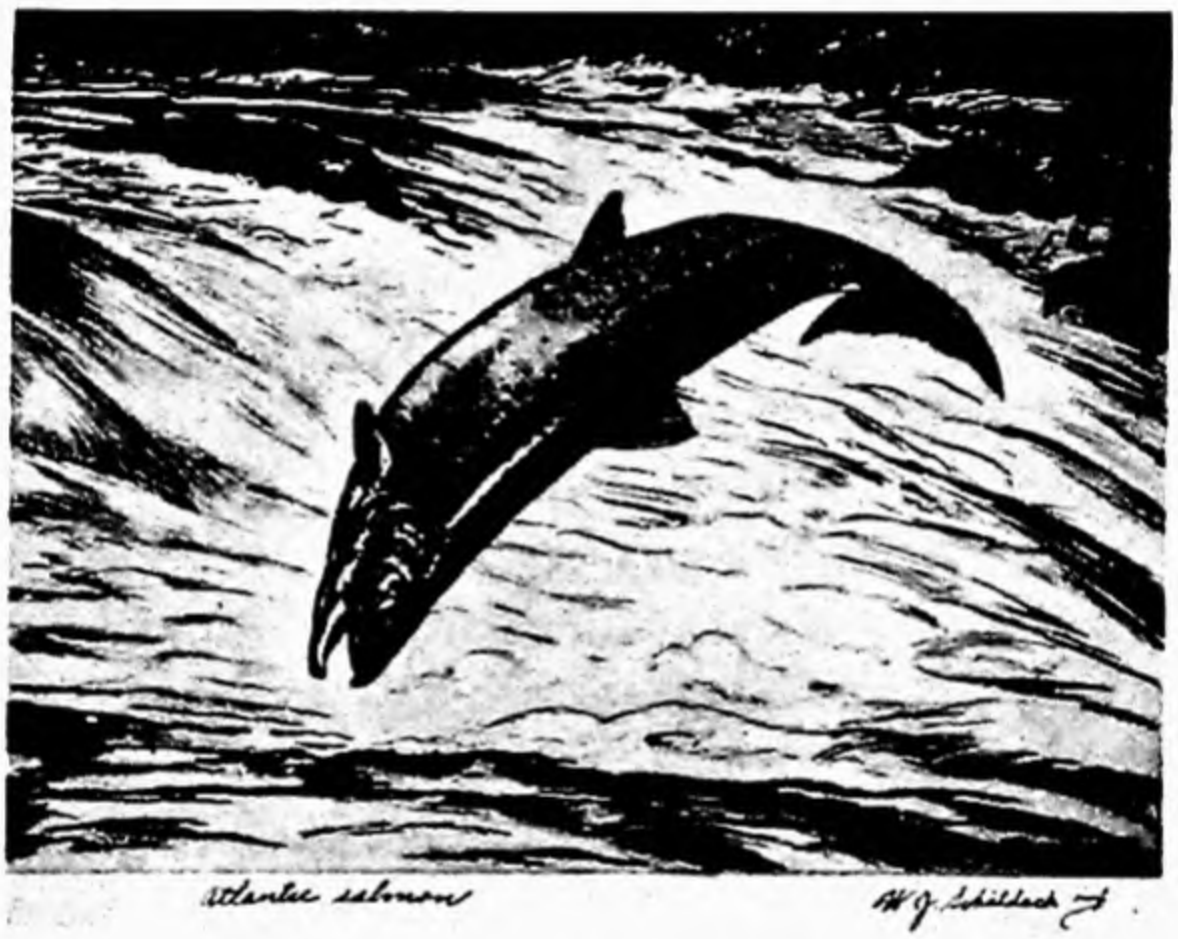
Hawaii

The most popular fishing grounds in our fiftieth state are out of Honolulu, Oahu Island, and Kauai, Kona and Hawaii islands.

The Waianae grounds, on the lee coast of Oahu, are recommended for marlin and Allison's tuna. They can be reached by boat from Honolulu; or special arrangements can be made for car transportation from Honolulu to

Waianae where fishermen meet their charter boats and eliminate two or three hours' running time. Penguin Bank is a 30-fathom shoal extending 27 miles southwest of Molokai. It is reached by boat from Honolulu. Seas are choppy, but fishing is generally good. The Kona coast of the island of Hawaii is the state's prime marlin ground. Smooth seas and the possibility of record marlin make it a favorite fishing spot. Too far away for a one-day boat trip from Honolulu and back, it is reached by plane either directly from Honolulu or by way of Hilon.

Principal game fish of Hawaii are marlin, wahoo, barracuda, skipjack and yellowfin tuna, dolphin, bonito, and jack crevallé. From a size standpoint, the marlin is king. Since warm currents keep Hawaiian waters comfortable



the year round, marlin do not migrate from the islands and are taken any season. About as tough a fighter as the marlin is Hawaii's favorite eating fish, the *mahimahi* or dolphin. Average size taken by sportsmen is about 25 pounds, but 65-pounders have been brought in by trollers. Biggest of the island tuna is the Allison or yellowfin. Hawaii for years has held the 80-pound test world record—265 pounds. An island woman landed a 225-pounder for a new women's world's record. Record wahoo also have been caught in Hawaiian waters. Some of these fast-striking fish top 100 pounds. Average size is 40 to 50 pounds. Barracuda from 40 to 50 pounds are brought in regularly. Surf casters in the right spot at the right time have landed 100-pounders. Jack crevallé generally scale 50 to 60 pounds, although the island shore-casting record is nearer 150 pounds. Trolling fishermen find them along rocky shores, often in pairs for double strikes. Bonefish, called *oio* by the natives, also come big in Hawaii. Special hooks have been designed by Hawaii fishermen, permitting bonefishing over coral without fouling.

Three species of fresh-water fish have been introduced into Hawaii in recent years, and all have become fairly well established. (Regulations and information are available from Director, Division of Fish and Game, 1428 South King Street, Honolulu, Hawaii.) Rainbow trout have been planted in the mountain streams of Kokee, on the island of Kauai. The season generally lasts from June to August inclusive; the limit is 10 fish per day, and the minimum size is 6 inches. The season on largemouth black bass is open all year. Daily limit: 10 fish; minimum size: 9 inches. These can be found in streams, estuaries, and reservoirs on Oahu, Kauai, Hawaii, and Maui. A third introduced fish is the bluegill sunfish. The season is open all year, the daily limit is 20 fish, and the minimum size is 4 inches. These inhabit streams, reservoirs, and estuaries on Oahu, Kauai and Maui, and have recently been introduced on Hawaii and Molokai.

New Zealand

World's records have been made in New Zealand waters where the migratory swordfish make their annual visitation. You may take them off the coasts of California at one time of the year and during the first three months of the calendar they abound in the vicinity of North Auckland and the Bay of Plenty in the northern parts of this country. These northern harbors are strikingly beautiful and some of them are almost landlocked.

Anglers who contemplate sport among the big-game fish of these coastal waters can therefore depend upon numerous sheltered and pleasant bases for their excursions. The more outstanding bases for deep-sea sport are Whangaroa, the Bay of Islands—including Russell and other points nearby: Urupukapuka Island, Deep Water Cove (Mangonui), etc.—Whitianga at the head of Mercury Bay and Tauranga on the Bay of Plenty. Generally it may be said that there is an area of varying width and no less than 300 miles in length, extending from Mangonui in the far north to the easternmost sweep of the Bay of Plenty, wherein record sport may be obtained. The following species are classed as "game fish" by the New Zealand deep-sea angling clubs: broadbill swordfish, black marlin, striped marlin, mako shark, thresher shark, hammerhead shark, and kingfish. There is a number of other varieties of deep-sea fish that provide fine sport, although not classified as "game" fish, and various specimens of sharks, such as the tiger, reremai, blue and gray nurse, are frequently caught.

The late Zane Grey described New Zealand as "The Fisherman's El Dorado." Doubtless, in common with so many others, he felt that this country offered some of the world's very best fishing amid what is acknowledged to be some of the finest scenery anywhere. Less than a hundred years ago none of New Zealand's inland waters possessed any interest for the angler. There

were but few indigenous fish in their lakes and streams and with the exception of eels (some of which reach prodigious proportions), none was of great size—in fact, most were diminutive—and none was of sporting quality. Around the year 1868 the first successful rearings of brown trout took place and within a very few years they increased rapidly in size and numbers. As early as the 1870's fish of 20 to 30 pounds were being taken from New Zealand's lakes and rivers, and even larger specimens are claimed to have been taken with rod and line. There has been a great natural increase in brown trout and their presence in the coastal waters suggests a permanent source of good sea-run fish. In 1883 rainbow trout were introduced into North Island waters from North America and, as in the case of the brown trout, this variety quickly became established and in the early years reached unprecedented size and weight. Fish of up to 27 pounds weren't uncommon, and so rapidly did they multiply that steps had to be taken to reduce their numbers to prevent deterioration. Today large fish are still being caught and 10-pounders and larger are frequently taken. In the famous Taupo District and particularly in the streams that discharge into Lake Taupo, some of the finest rainbow-trout fishing in the world is available.

Quinnat, a Pacific salmon, is also established in New Zealand. They were introduced in 1875 and have been running up the large snow-fed southern rivers since the turn of the century. They are yearly taken in numbers and there is evidence that they are spreading in coastal waters. The runs of quinnat salmon appear to be confined to particular rivers of the South Island. The Hurunui, Rakaia, Rangitata, and Waitaki rivers offer many miles of unrivaled fishing and even if activities are confined to tidal limits, the tendency of these streams to divide into several channels actually multiplies the fishing area. Usually the run commences about the second week in February and continues until the end of the season and that part of the streams within an average of 12 miles inland from the sea is their usual haunt. Where they enter the sea, most of the rivers have a more or less extensive lagoon of brackish water created by bars of shingle and sand, which in many instances entirely block the river mouth until a flood, the volume of the pent-up water, or the agency of man forces an outlet. It is at the entrances of these lagoons and for some distance inland that most of the quinnat angling is done, although quinnat are, indeed, frequently taken high up in the gorges.

Subject of the first early attempts at acclimatization was the Atlantic salmon. Thousands of fry were distributed from rearings in 1868 but there is no reliable evidence that any of these fish were ever taken. In 1908 further attempts were made, and most of the liberations took place in the streams that enter and run from Lake Te Anau. The Upukerora, Eglinton, and other waters of the district have subsequently become noteworthy for fine specimens of this fighting fish. It will be interesting to note the progress of this

variety as its acclimatization develops, because so far it is a debatable point whether the Atlantic salmon in New Zealand goes to sea and returns, as it did in its original habitat. A sufficient and well-distributed rainfall in a country of comparatively high relief makes New Zealand's chief physical characteristics its rivers and lakes. Few countries south of the Equator, except Chile and parts of the Argentine, possess such an abundance of swiftly-running streams. Most of the waters are plentifully endowed with small forms of varied riparian life, diminutive fishes, aquatic and semiaquatic insects and their larvae, and organisms that provide abundant food supplies for sporting fish. It is little wonder, then, that the introduced varieties, notably the *salmonidae*, have thrived so remarkably here. As in the case of the quinnat salmon, the most successful lures employed are spinning baits such as the spoon and the artificial minnow, although a fair measure of success has also been obtained with the large wet fly.

With three notable exceptions, the fishing is controlled by the Marine Department, which delegates local authority to Acclimatization Societies, of which there are upwards of a score. The exceptions are the Rotorua and Taupo Districts in the North Island and the Southern Lakes District in the South Island. In these three instances the conservation authority is the Department of Internal Affairs. This State Department employs Rangers to safeguard and foster the fisheries and also maintains well-equipped hatcheries as centers for research and at which trout ova are cultured and distributed to all parts of the country for the stocking of streams and lakes. Visitors from abroad will find the Officers and Rangers of the Departments of Marine and Internal Affairs, as well as those of the New Zealand Government Tourist Bureau and local sportsmen (and their organizations) generally, willing and able to supply information and advice with regard to districts. Good accommodations, hotels as well as fishing camps, are available in most angling areas.

Mexico

Under bright sunny skies lie almost 6,000 miles of rugged and sandy coastline encompassing the Republic of Mexico on two sides. The warm tropical waters of the Pacific and of the Gulf of Mexico gently caress gleaming beaches, or dash unceasingly against the jutting rocks of mountains that come down to the sea and, according to Richard Joseph, offer some of the best salt-water fishing in the world.

For the visiting deep-sea fisherman, there are splendidly equipped modern fishing craft—high-powered launches that can go safely far out to sea where the big-game fish are waiting, it would seem, to match their cunning against the skill and perseverance of the most expert angler. Few experiences can

equal the fight between a man and a 600-pound marlin, or a battle with a 300-pound tarpon, or even with a 150-pound sailfish. It is always a battle of wits, fast thinking, and action against the superb cunning of the deep, which only ends successfully when the conquering fisherman draws in the weary sea-dweller whose strength has been spent after a prolonged series of deep dives and flights through the air—the fight climaxed by one last spectacular bit of maritime fireworks.

For the angler of fresh-water game fish, Mexico has many lakes, rivers, and streams full of rainbow and brook trout, large- and smallmouth bass, rock and spotted bass, carp, whitefish, mullets, and big and small catfish.

Fishing in Mexico is as old as the country itself and centuries ago the natives fished, using methods still in vogue in isolated sections. Harpooning fish, prevalent before the arrival of the Europeans, is still done in some parts. Another old method, that of stringing nets across rivers, is common practice in many regions. On beautiful Lake Pátzcuaro, the bronzed descendants of the Tarascans catch the justly famous whitefish with their picturesque butterfly nets. Scantily clad natives of Tehuantepec wade into the broad Tehuantepec River and haul out miniature lobsters with their bare hands. In far-off isolated stretches of Tabasco and Yucatán, the native fishermen use spears and arrows.

Extending in part almost to the Texas border, and then far to the south, is the high tableland of Mexico, formed on two sides by towering mountain ranges. The tableland for the most part is arid, but in the areas near the mountains there are numerous large and small lakes fed by rivers and streams which have their sources in the nearby high watersheds. Gushing down the sides of the mountains and through deep ravines are other rivers and streams that form majestic waterfalls, swift rapids, and quiet pools.

Wherever possible, federal and local authorities have stocked these lakes and streams, rapids and pools with different kinds of fish. Most abundant are trout (plentiful in the upland streams and rapids), black bass, and catfish. As insect life differs greatly throughout Mexico, baits that are found to be good in one locality may not give the same results elsewhere. A large assortment of bright-colored flies makes it possible to experiment and to ascertain which kind of fly is best. Guides available in towns and villages are helpful in locating isolated places where fishing is good, and friendly natives in many instances are only too glad to lead fishermen to near or far-off streams and lakes, many of which are known only to the inhabitants of the region. For information on fresh-water fishing in Mexico, write to the Pemex Travel Club, Avenida Juarez 89, Mexico 1, D.F., for a copy of their booklet, *Fishing in Mexico.*

Mexican authorities divide their salt-water fishing grounds into ten main areas: Manzanillo, Zihuatanejo, and Acapulco on the lower Pacific Coast;

Guaymas and Mazatlán on the Gulf of California; the Gulf of Mexico; and Tamiahua Lagoon, Veracruz, and Coatzacoalcos on the Gulf of Campeche just south of the Gulf of Mexico. Good highways now make it possible for you to drive from Tampico or Veracruz, on the Gulf Coast, to Acapulco, on the Pacific side, over an unbroken ribbon of asphalt.

Acapulco would be a top deep-sea fishing port even if it weren't a world-famous resort, and unless you're reconciled to becoming an incurable fishing addict it's a dangerous place to go off on your first expedition. There are so many different kinds of fish around Acapulco that one of the leading hotels serves fish twice a day for ten days without repeating itself. The outstanding game is the sailfish, which runs between 80 and 125 pounds. Marlin, which are spectacular fighters, are also around here and there. Among the finest of the medium-sized game fish is the brilliantly colored dolphin, and the long, slender wahoo will also put up a spectacular fight. In these waters the barracuda will bite at a bare hook, and fight every inch of the way, and there are plenty of tuna, pompano, bonito and amberjack for the catching. For light-tackle angling, the green and silver roosterfish is a first-rate gamester. Excellent offshore fishing is provided by the striped grouper, the blue and gold and yellowtailed snapper, the large southern jewfish and the blue cregold and yellowtailed snapper, the large southern jewfish and the blue crevallé. And you might go out with the native fishermen and try your hand at harpooning giant sea turtles and the manta ray or devilfish, which often weigh a ton or more.

One of the real thrills of an Acapulco vacation is torch fishing at night for needlefish. The fishermen paddle between the rocks, in canoes hollowed out of a single log, carrying wooden torches which lure and dazzle the fish so that they leap out of the water in a blind fury, and get caught in small nets or impaled on three-pronged harpoons. The phosphorescent waters, the fantastic aerial acrobatics of the needlefish, and the primitive skills of the fishermen make an evening of torch fishing an experience like nothing you've ever known before.

On the Gulf of California the best-known resort is Guaymas, 260 miles south of Nogales, Arizona, on a newly paved highway. By air it's two hours via Aeronaves de Mexico from Nogales, or three hours from Tijuana. Some fishing authorities say that more marlin are taken from the waters around Guaymas than from any other waters in the world. The marlin average about 300 pounds, and the sailfish run just about a third that weight. The summer season, between April 1 and November 15, is best for marlin and sailfish, for 40-pound tuna and dolphin, 25-pound roosterfish, 15-pound albacore and 20-pound moonfish, for Spanish mackerel, bonito, skipjack, and needlefish. During the winter season, from mid-November to early April, you can harpoon a two-ton manta ray or catch a 250-pound jewfish or an 80-pound cabilliau, the famed giant white sea bass.

Guaymas also has an outstanding resort hotel, the well-known Hotel Playa de Cortes, where you can combine your deep-water fishing with swimming and goggle-fishing, riding, hunting, tennis, and fine resort living. The hotel operates nine fishing craft, renting for $5 to $6 an hour (or $45 to $55 a ten-hour day), including all tackle except marlin gear, which rents at $5 a day.

Another fishing center on the Gulf of California is La Paz, across the Gulf on the Lower California Peninsula. Founded by the conquistador Hernán Cortés more than four hundred years ago, La Paz is still a backwater, very much off-trail for American visitors despite the fact that it's easy to reach by air, but there's a good hotel, the Mission de La Paz, located right on the beach, with a beautiful view of the bay. Off the beach swarm sailfish, marlin, tuna, swordfish, shark, roosterfish, dolphin, giant ray, and all the rest of the finny four hundred which have given the Gulf of California its name in anglers' society. And if you're a man who likes to go exploring by car, you might try driving the 800 miles from San Diego down the Lower California Peninsula. It's passable, but rugged—you'd better figure on four to six days' driving each way. You can also drive to Guaymas on very good paved roads, then ship your car by boat across the Gulf.

Mazatlán is a lovely little seaport on the Pacific Coast, and much of its charm lies in the unworldly mood which it has managed to retain despite the opening a few years ago of a new highway connecting it with the rest of the world. The most plentiful fish in the Bay of Mazatlán are the rock bass and black sea bass, roosterfish, mackerel, sea trout, swordfish, grouper, sailfish, jewfish, yellowtail, dolphin, and the giant manta ray. There are good hotels in town, and every facility for the sports fisherman.

You find the same fish in the waters around Manzanillo, a very old tropical seaport between Mazatlán and Acapulco, and an important port of call for deep-water ships. The roads around Manzanillo are pretty rugged, but you can fly in from Mexico City via Aerovias Reforma in a little over four hours, or you can get there by train. The hotels are comfortable, and fishing launches are for hire quite inexpensively.

Moving east to the Gulf of Mexico, you'll find that top fishing honors are a toss-up between Veracruz and Tampico. Both are old Spanish colonial seaports, and both are famous for tarpon. Most fishing here is done with spoons and plugs, and all the big fish may be taken by slow trolling with a long line and any good type of trolling spoon. Tarpon are a bit easier to catch at Tampico than at Veracruz because they come inshore at the mouth of the wide Panuco River. The season starts with small ones in November, and runs through monsters in July. Red snapper, pompano, shark, red grouper, sea bass, yellowtail, sailfish, croaker, palometa, and jewfish are plentiful. Tampico is also noted for its tarpon rodeo, held every spring since 1942, and for its surf fishing.

Veracruz, one of the oldest cities in continental America, is a colorful and interesting place, with plenty of good hotels in town and one outstanding resort, the Mocambo, a few miles out. The best fishing grounds are found outside Veracruz Harbor, especially around the shoals and banks of Isla Verde, Antón Lizardo, Anegada de Afuera, La Gallega, and other islands in the vicinity. Yellowtail are big and abundant in these waters, and tarpon are plentiful during their season, which runs from May to the end of summer.

Veracruz and Tampico are more convenient for Americans than any fishing center on the West Coast except Acapulco. Tampico is less than two hours' flight by Pan American World Airways from either Brownsville, Texas, or Mexico City, and Veracruz is less than two hours from the capital by planes of CMA, Pan American's Mexican subsidiary. Both are on first-class highways, and you can also go to Veracruz by ship.

Bermuda

The islands of Bermuda, appropriately enough, are grouped together in the shape of a fishhook. They lie only 750 miles southeast of New York City—just a three-hour (less by jet) flight from the large metropolitan centers of the Eastern United States. Apart from the fact that you can enjoy the sport of fishing any time of the year, you don't have to go far for your fishing once you are in Bermuda. Some of the ocean's mightiest fighters—white marlin, Allison's tuna, oceanic bonito, false albacore, dolphin, wahoo, blue marlin, blackfish, and bluefin tuna—roam less than 15 miles offshore.

On the reefs groupers and rockfish abound; and the yellowtail and many other colorful and sporty fish are so plentiful that a day spent fishing the reefs is filled with both activity and variety. And inshore there are the flashy gaff-topsail pompano, the often overlooked and underestimated game fish, the barracuda. And in there, too, swim that phenomenal king of the shallows, the bonefish. (Bermuda is probably the world's greatest bonefish area.) Authorities list 335 varieties of fish which have been caught along the reefs and shallows, and 267 varieties that have been found in the open sea around the island. And besides these known species, new denizens of the salt are being discovered every season, adding ever new excitement to an angler's chance of contact when he fishes Bermuda waters.

But to the light-tackle angler, Bermuda's greatest charm is that some of the best fishing can be done right from shore—fishing from rocks and bridges and beaches. There's one hotel in Bermuda where guests have been known to cast spin lures from the hotel veranda and bring in gray snapper, sennets, and now and then a gwelly, a bruiser of a scrapper, a member of the ever rough-and-ready jack family. Most taxi drivers on the island are ardent fishermen, and are ready at anytime with tips on where the fish are to be

found and how they may be taken. In fact, many of them will double as guides for inshore fishing, taking anglers out for the day to various spots along the beaches and rocks where they know game fish are to be found.

For the deep-sea fisherman, Bermuda has a fine fishing fleet that consists of modern, fully equipped boats captained by experienced guides. Controlled and regulated by the Bermuda Game Fishing Guides Association, the charter boat fleet is based at all major points in the Bermudas. Varying from 35 to 50 feet in length, the boats accommodate up to six persons and may be chartered for $40 a half-day, $60 for a full day. So whether you're fishing for the first time, fishing just to take it easy, or looking for a battle with a 400-pounder, you'll always enjoy fishing in Bermuda waters at any time of year.

Bahamas

One of our finest salt-water fishing grounds—perhaps *the* finest—is that vast Atlantic area that surrounds the Bahama Islands. These 70,000 square miles of nearly virgin waters teem with most of the world's popular species of game fish. Some of the spots have rarely been fished, and many others have yet to be explored, states Don McCarthy, author of the *Fisherman's Guide to the Bahamas.*

The Bahamas consist of an extensive chain of nearly 700 low and rocky limestone islands. The surrounding waters are filled with countless marine fish. These fishing grounds are truly an angler's paradise. They will meet the approval of the most particular salt-water angler, whether he prefers to fish the shallow, crystal-clear waters of the flats for speedy bonefish, or to troll the outer reefs for the larger gamesters. Proof of the quality of Bahamas angling can be found in the number of IGFA records chalked up in the Bahamas.

The Bahamas offer all of the modern facilities necessary to accommodate the sports fisherman, whether he specializes in one species of fish, such as marlin, bluefin tuna, or bonefish, or takes on all comers, from amber jack and grouper to dolphin and wahoo. The guides are men of wide experience, wise in the ways of fish, and know intimately which fishing grounds are the most productive in the various seasons and weather conditions. Boats and guides are available for charter on a daily basis ($50 to $60 per day) or for extended trips throughout the picturesque cays and islands that comprise the Bahamas Archipelago.

Few fishing grounds in the world can match those of the Bahamas for year-round, action-packed, sure-fire, light-tackle angling. The inshore and offshore waters teem with a fascinating variety of game fish, and some are undoubtedly of world-record size. In the winter months wahoo, kingfish, and dolphin course the indigo depths in search of food. Striking hard and

decisively, fighting in furious zigzag runs, they set a sizzling pace that leaves the angler breathless from tension and speechless with admiration. Through the summer the albacore, tuna, and bonito hold the spotlight. Miniature counterparts of the bluefin, these fish—taken on light gear—are as tough as their heavier relatives.

The cavern-pocked, weed-patched, fern-dotted reefs that flank the countless islands and cays of the Bahamas harbor an amazing variety of sturdy battlers. Among them are barracuda and grouper, snapper and yellowtail, runner and mackerel. Some cruise close to the surface; others hug the bottom. Most of them will take a trolled lure; all will snatch a live bait. Those that can be taken by trolling make perfect prey for the 3- and 6-thread fishermen. When caught off the bottom from an anchored boat, they will extend a 9-thread line to its limit. Meat-on-the-table fish, they are nevertheless ready strikers, strong fighters, and colorful antagonists, well able to give the angler a day of thrills and sport.

Many of the bays, passes, inlets, creeks, and beaches of the Bahamas offer fast and consistently steady fishing for the fly fisherman, plug caster, and spinning enthusiast. Small amberjack, barracuda, grouper, jack, mackerel, runner, snapper, tarpon, and occasionally bonefish will strike almost any type of artificial lure. Off rocky points where reefs lie just below the surface, the angler, using weighted lures worked close to the bottom, will have a busy time with several species of snapper and grouper, jack, and houndfish. When the sea is calm and the tide is in, the caster can wade the sandy beaches, taking runner, palometa, and sometimes a bonefish on streamer flies or a bucktail. Tarpon in bays and creeks will rise to surface plugs.

Nassau, capital of the Bahamas, is on the island of New Providence, less than forty-five minutes by air from Miami. Although the "out" islands of Andros, Eleuthera, Bimini, Abaco and Grand Bahama all have their attractions for anglers, your Bahamian fishing headquarters is likely to be Nassau. Most of the large hotels and resorts are in Nassau, and the best shopping is in and around its Bay Street. In other words, while Daddy is out scooping the big ones up out of the Gulf Stream, Mama and kids can visit the many varied shops on the island. There are many beautiful beaches and attractions in the area, too.

Puerto Rico

Deep-sea fishing, virtually unknown in Puerto Rico a few years ago, is rapidly becoming the island's favorite sport. Puerto Rico has an abundance of every variety of the better-known game fish—albacore, barracuda, bonito, bonefish, dolphin, all kinds of grouper and jack, kingfish, blue and white marlin, sailfish, snook, tarpon, and tuna. According to the IGFA world

records, Puerto Rico is second in the world in the number of record catches. Due to its subtropical climate, always tempered by the trade winds, Puerto Rico is one of the few fishing centers that can boast a year-round season. There are many good ports from which deep-sea fishermen may put out in search of game. San Juan, Mayagüez, Aguadilla, La Parguera, Ponce, and Fajardo are the most popular, although the ardent fisherman can shove off from practically every inlet and find himself an exciting time.

At present, the major charter fleet operates in the San Juan area. Other boats are available at the tiny fishing village of La Parguera near the southwest tip of the island. Rates run from $45 to $75 for six, including tackle. Elsewhere, arrangements can be made for fishing trips from many of the coastal cities.

The big fish of the island is the blue marlin. Best fishing for this species is from April through November, the earlier months being the best. The big blues are there all the year through and have been known to grab a trolled whole mullet or bonefish in every month of the year. A brief rundown of the offshore seasons would include: sailfish from August to January; white marlin from April to August; Allison's tuna from April through November; blackfin tuna, known locally as albacore, during the same period; bonito and king mackerel, both of which can also be taken inshore, from April up until the middle of January. These seasons represent the peaks only; all species mentioned can be taken inshore also from April on, provided you have patience and luck. Add to the total also those fish that apparently have no fixed seasons at all—wahoo, dolphin, and a host of others that are caught "accidentally" while fishing for billfish.

Deep-water angling is not confined to the northern coast by any means. South, east, and west, the same species roam—and pay even less attention to the seasons prescribed by custom. Since Puerto Rico and its surrounding small islands are merely the tops of vast, submerged volcanic mountains rising sheer from the ocean, at no point along the coast is blue water very far away. And where the depths lie, the big-game fish lie also.

Armed with spinning or bait-casting rods, many of the local light-tackle addicts have discovered that surf fishing will bring amazing results. The species sought are snook, tarpon, and ladyfish, with a few barracuda thrown in for good measure. Just which other species will fall for this technique is still unknown. Here once again the field is wide-open for the angler who wants to do a little experimenting. Since deep-water fish work close to the beach, angling sensations are not only possible, but probable.

As summer approaches, both tarpon and snook are likely to work on a low tide around the countless river mouths of the island. Wading out in bathing trunks and casting to these fish is as exciting as it is unusual. The Santo and Loíza rivers to the east of San Juan, and the Añasco and Guana-

jibo rivers near Mayaguez, are favorites for this type of angling, but there is no reason why equal success can't be had at any of the fifty-odd river mouths elsewhere around the island.

Snook and tarpon are at their best from May to November, but they can be taken in almost all months. River fishing, particularly for snook and tarpon, hasn't been fully explored, although a few experimenters have had amazing results with spinning and fly rods. Ladyfish also come well within reach of the light-tackle angler working from shore or river. Ladyfish apparently are most plentiful in September and October, but here again the season limits can't be closely defined. Jack crevallé hit artificials best from May through October and will take live bait at any time of the year. Grunt, snapper, runner, and countless other species feed inshore and are taken both by light tackle and other methods.

Undoubtedly the least popularized species of Puerto Rico are the glamour fish of the light-tackle world—permit, pompano, and bonefish. Their feeding habits and seasons are virtually unknown, but they're there in abundance. Because there are more flats and shallows along the southern coast, these speeders are most common in that area, although they're taken from time to time all around the island. Squidding with surf tackle and artificial lures is practically unknown in Puerto Rico, but it's a safe bet that it will become popular when bait-casters and spinners find they can reach feeding fish that lie out of range of their lighter rods. Like much of the island's sport fishing, it hasn't been fully explored.

It's easy to get to Puerto Rico. You fly there in five and a half hours from New York, less than four from Miami. You need no passport. The currency is the U.S. dollar. There is no red tape or language problem. Hotels are modern and air-conditioned. Old Spanish fortresses and ancient cathedrals are there for the exploring. Cosmopolitan cafés and clubs have first-rate entertainment. And you'll have to watch your wife closely when she gets wind of the excellent shopping!

South America

One can't write about South America in the fashion of accepted angling literature, as the immensity of the continent itself requires explanation. In our discussion of fishing in our country, we based our recommendations on the advice of Al McClane and Richard Joseph, who, over the years, have written for *Esquire*, plus as many local guides and sportsmen as we could muster together. But in an area twice the size of the United States, which runs the gamut from steaming jungle to Antarctica, almost every detail is hidden, right to the habits of our quarry. In primitive regions the local people would prefer to eat the angler than guide him, and abetting their project

is a variety of fishes which enjoy the same sport. At the other extreme you can experience remarkable fishing from such opulent bases as the Antumalal Lodge in the Chilean lakes district, or the Llao Llao Hotel in San Carlos de Bariloche, where multilingual guides have the same respect for a visiting fisherman as their North American brethren.

It has become a worn cliché to say that South America is a land of contrasts, yet an absolute division between civilization and the wilderness is the very factor which provides some of the world's most diverse angling. There are, broadly, two kinds of inland fishing: jungle or warm water, and alpine or cold water. If you fish in Venezuela, Ecuador, Colombia, Surinam, British and French Guiana, Brazil, and Paraguay—all in the tropical region—the species endemic to one exist in the other. This topmost portion of South America isn't trout habitat, although salmonoids have been introduced with limited success at high elevations from Colombia to Brazil. What we find here are magnificent jungle rivers, varying from black waters to clear rocky torrents, and running in turn to the Amazon or the Orinoco. The luminous beauty of these rain-forest streams with their emerald trees and exploding bands of crimson-dabbed parakeets has no counterpart elsewhere. Many of the fish have yet to be catalogued by man. It's estimated that the Amazon River alone holds more than eighteen hundred species which range from four-eyed fish to huge parahydra catfish that commonly grow to 6 feet in length and weigh more than 300 pounds. The main stream of the Amazon is about 3,300 miles in length and the brown weight of it is so great that if the flow of the Mississippi were added there would scarcely be a change in water level. It runs quick, but not turbulent, resolute in its desire to get to the sea, which it stains for more than a hundred miles out in the South Equatorial Current. During the rainy season, which puts an end to fishing in all jungle streams, the river rises from 20 to 50 feet and floods the forests for 20 miles beyond its banks. The mouth is choked with islands, one of which is the size of the state of Massachusetts. Yet the Amazon is a petulant child compared to the Cordillera. The river rules the jungle, but the mountain range, that rugged backbone of the Andes, dominates the entire continent from Barranquilla to Tierra del Fuego. This is trout country and in all respects vastly different from the tropical interior.

The trout season in South America commences in November each year and extends until mid-April of the following year. This is the reverse of our Northern Hemisphere, where April corresponds to the Chilean October. Their spring season continues through December, with cold water bucketing off the Cordillera and hosing off the clouds. The dying winds still worry the trees, and plover whimper under a brooding sky, but it's by far the

best period for catching large trout in the lakes of both Chile and Argentina. Nevertheless, for the fly-caster who prefers stream fishing, the latter part of summer, beginning in late February and running through March, is the ideal season. The air is calm then and the sun warm. What little rain may fall merely stimulates the trout into feeding. It spills with the high spirits of a rare Napoleon brandy and evaporates as quickly. If you're going to the end of the world at Tierra del Fuego (55 degrees south latitude), February is the only real summer month, while March is likely to be a sudden jump into winter. The days run along mild and clear, then one morning the tent pegs pop and an eighty-knot wind howls down from the peaks in vicious blasts of rain and snow. Lake Titicaca in Peru is the sole exception to the reverse fishing season because of its prolonged and torrential summer rains.

The first thing to know about South American fishing is that a 2- to 3-pound trout would be a fair average for all waters and all countries. There is a tendency to expect much more because of the publicity surrounding one unique fishery, Lake Titicaca in Peru. Unfortunately the Titicaca syndrome is prevalent, and in the travel agencies one hears of nothing but 20- and 30-pound trout. Actually, a decade ago Lake Titicaca produced rainbow trout of 12 to 15 pounds with monotonous frequency. The record ran to 34 pounds. A 20- to 25-pounder wasn't unusual, and if one enjoyed trolling or casting with spoons, the delirium of catching nothing but trophies spoiled a man for the rest of his angling life. The secret of the lake's trout production is the pejerrey, which the Aymara Indians call *bocaron*. This rather large and prolific forage fish puts weight on rainbows very rapidly. But it also instills them with a catholic appetite, and the fly fisher rarely finds any sport on the lake proper. Today fishing in Titicaca is fast becoming a thing of the past, netting and dynamiting having taken a heavy toll of the larger trout. In spite of the decline, Titicaca is one of those alien aqueous places that hypnotizes the angler, and realization doesn't seem to lessen its influence. There are some huge rainbows still to be caught, and the lake will remain important for that reason.

To reach this world's highest trout lake, you can come from the Peruvian side in Lima, or the Bolivian side in La Paz. Lima is the better of the two. To make the ascent from Lima, you have the choice of Puna or Juliaca, two towns which provide minimum-comfort hotels. They can be reached via Cuzco or Arequipa by a railroad which supplies oxygen for needy passengers as it crosses a nearly three-mile height. There is also limited air service into Juliaca from Arequipa, but don't regard the schedule too seriously.

At Puna you can fish the Llave River, and at Juliaca the Cabanillas River or the Ramis River. These three streams are Titicaca tributaries which provide an occasional 8- or 10-pound fish. Perhaps the best bet in the entire

area is Lake Arapa, which is just beyond the Ramis. However, you would have to camp out at Arapa, and between the altitude and chill winds it's hardly ideal for the casual tourist. Bear in mind that the weather is cold from June through August, with freezing temperatures occurring whenever the sun drops below the Cordillera. The season for Titicaca fishing differs from all other regions in South America. During the rains, from November until March, even trolling is almost impossible on the lake. It usually gets better around the first of April, and until May the rivers run high and roily, which is the period when the largest trout are caught. By June the waters become clear, but they still can't be fished properly with flies until the level has gone down. The time for fly fishing here is in August and September. However, big silver-bodied streamer flies that resemble the slender pejerrey are necessary because aquatic insect life is scarce and unimportant at 12,500 feet. The dry-fly man would be disappointed.

A competent guide is a fundamental necessity in South America. Apart from his knowledge of geography, language, and customs, he will supply transportation. Car-rental services do not exist except in a few major cities, and these are invariably a thousand miles away from your jump-off point. But the word "guide" is often used rather loosely; in resort areas especially there are opportunists who labor at some unrelated job for fifty weeks of the year and take their summer vacations with pay by becoming fishing guides. Capable guides, however, do exist in all the popular fishing regions, and they can be contacted through your hotel or the sporting-goods stores of larger cities. Their rates vary, but the flat-fee system is by far the best. This should include all expenses incurred on the journey except for personal items such as liquor and cigarettes.

Chile is almost as long from north to south as the United States is wide from east to west. In its northern arid parts no fishing exists except in the ocean, but once you pass the latitude of Santiago and enter the rain belt, there is a vast, shining network of rivers. The best of the accessible angling is in the southern lakes district around Villarrica. The country here is mountainous, not unlike the Tyrol with its sweet breath of cyclamens and the confusion of white peaks along the horizon. Indeed, Willy Pollack's Autumalal Lodge could be on the hills above Hallstatt. From Autumalal you can fish the Trancura or the Liucura River, but both streams are only ghosts of themselves and often disappointing. Now the large trout are caught in Lake Villarrica during the spring, particularly in December. To find real stream fishing today, you must edge south to the Enco River, which flows between Lake Panguipulli and Lake Riñihue. Or in the same vicinity there is the Fui River which flows from Pirehueico Lake near the Argentinian border into the Cordillera end of Panguipulli. The lower end of the Fui

still produces 5- to 15-pound rainbows and browns, but the only way to enjoy it is to fly in and camp on the river. Perhaps the top river in Chile, the Rininahue River, is still further south near Lake Ranco. It is a comparatively small stream, but very large trout inhabit the lower end where it enters Lake Ranco near Llifén. At the opposite end of the lake, where the Bueno River forms at the outlet, there are trophy fish for some distance downstream. That about sums up the convenient streams along the tourist belt; this extends as far down as Puerto Varas, where the Gran Hotel acts as a pivot in the guided tours which head over the Cordillera for San Carlos de Bariloche in Argentina.

South of Puerto Varas for roughly a thousand miles is some of the wildest and most impenetrable country in the world. The most *accessible* spot in this area is the Puelo River. The Puelo is a magnificent stream flowing into the Reloncavi Strait and, in addition to an abundance of somersaulting rainbows, it attracts runs of steelhead and migratory brown trout which are said by the local commercial fishermen to weigh as much as 30 pounds. As in all west-slope Cordillera streams, the Puelo has tumbling rapids and deep, whirling pools with beautiful foam on them, like soft white custard. If a man had time to explore all of the southern fjord country, he could find many rivers even superior to the Puelo. The flying conditions are very bad, however, and for the time being it will remain as Chile's last trout frontier.

For the most part, the streams and rivers of Argentina are wadable, whereas those on the other side of the Cordillera in Chile are predominantly boat streams. This is the basic distinction between the two countries insofar as fishing is concerned. On waters like the Enco, Toltén, Trancura, San Pedro, Calcurrupe, Rahue, and Río Bueno in Chile, one must spend a great deal of time running rapids and floating from pool to pool. As a rule the *botero* will cover about ten miles in a day as access roads are widely spaced. At certain points you can get out and wade to rising fish, but these west-slope streams are steep and rough. Actually, float fishing is a delightful form of angling if you want to see a lot of country and enjoy a wonderful *asado,* as that meal alone is worth the journey. While the sheep is roasting and a red Torcornal chilling, you can wade the luncheon pool because your *botero* will do his cooking on a reasonably flat landscape. But all the Chilean boat streams are tourist attractions, and the quality of the sport isn't nearly so great today as it was fifteen years ago. You can try wading rivers like the Laja, Golgol, and the Petrohué. These flow too fast and broken for float fishing, but they can be negotiated with felts or chains. On the opposite side of the Cordillera in Argentina the streams have much less gradient, and in the summer season you can get along nicely with hip boots.

In general the dry-fly principle of fine and far-off remains the most telling

tactic on the glassy runs of South American rivers. You must work upstream with a good length of line and search the water ahead, using patterns tied on No. 8 to No. 16 hooks. The leader should not be heavier than 3X. If trout are rising steadily to a hatch, treat them with respect, even in unsophisticated wilderness rivers. In turbulent water it's much easier to cast the dry fly across and downstream with enough slack in the line to get a short float. In other words, don't be bound by the problem of drag except on very smooth water. These rivers are much deeper and stronger than those at home. It's almost impossible to wade into the current without becoming exhausted or tangled in your own line. Next to the dry fly, the most reliable lure is the streamer fly. An elderly 15-pound trout may not be in the mood to rise from great depths for an insect imitation, but something which re-

sembles a minnow or crayfish and sunk to his level is punishment for his contempt to surface feed. Fortunately, there are days when the dry fly will outfish anything else.

Before leaving the west side of the Cordillera, it should be noted that for the salt-water fisherman there are countless miles of coastline that haven't been tapped as yet. Actually, the only waters being fished regularly are in the vicinity of Iquique and Tocopilla, Chile, and Talara, Peru. About an hour's drive north of Talara is the site of the world-famous Cabo Blanco Fishing Club. This club accepts a limited number of tourist angler guests, and is undeniably magnetic to record hunters who want to bust the 1,000-pound-plus society. To some extent the region from Salinas to the island of La Plata is being fished also, but this is comparatively undeveloped for tourism. The chief game fish on South America's Pacific Coast are the broadbill in Chile, and the striped marlin and the black marlin, dominating Peruvian waters. Other species, like dolphin, big-eyed tuna, Pacific sailfish, roosterfish, mako shark, and amber jack, populate certain sectors in various

degrees of abundance, but the dory-sized billfish are the main attraction.

Along the coastal reefs and brackish water inlets of Venezuela, practically all the game fish—snook, tarpon, dolphin, mangrove snapper, etc.—found in Florida coastal waters can be fished. Off the northern coast of this country, charter boats are available for such deep-sea fishing species as marlin, sailfish, swordfish, and tuna. While none of the very large game fish are found in Brazil's coastal waters, splendid sport is provided by a number of fish, including yellowtails, dolphin, and, particularly, amber jack. The amber jack run to a hundred pounds or more and give excellent competition; activity centers around Cabo Frio, some hundred miles from Rio de Janeiro, where a group of leading Brazilian anglers maintain a club with complete facilities.

Speaking of Brazil, this country's fresh-water species have not been fished to any great extent by visiting anglers. Most famous of their fresh-water fish is the dorado, a golden battler found in the fast-flowing streams of southern Brazil as well as in northern Argentina and Uruguay. Equipped with extremely powerful teeth, the dorado offers a challenge which, from every account, tests the mettle of the ablest fisherman. It took a rather strong sense of duty to withstand the temptation to change all our plans and fly over to a dorado camp for a test of lines and skills.

The 2,300-mile length of Argentina encompasses every climate from the purely tropical north to the frigid south. As a tourist you may visit Buenos Aires and find a city hardly different from London or Paris. It's more violently flavored in its isolation perhaps, but the night lights begin 60 miles out on the edge of the pampas and instead of the Thames or the Seine you pass over the Río de la Plata. But a thousand miles to the southwest across the pampas in the valley of San Martín, vast herds of red stag roar at the rising sun, and the barred goose and the ashy-headed goose come in honking legions to the summer water holes of Patagonia. This is a land of lonesome rivers and brooding peaks and great empty places that make a man look for the slow-rising smoke of a campfire, or the moving streamer of dust made by a car on a distant road. During the day the sun lays a golden glow on the earth, then cools and falls in flame among the hills. Then abruptly the Cordillera challenges your passage in red and purple spires, and giant condors ride the thermals which form on the slopes. As the country narrows down to the Strait of Magellan, the eastern hills dwindle into desolate moors, but the Andes win out in the end.

Compared to tropical South America, the rivers of the Temperate Zone have very few native fish species. Before salmonoids were introduced from North America and Europe, the only inhabitants of these cold-water streams were the pejerrey, which is a large lake smelt, a small catfish called the bagre, and a trucha, which is not a trout but something more on the order

of a degenerate black bass. There are also several species of suckers which occur intermittently along the Cordillera. A North American fish culturist built the first hatchery in San Carlos de Bariloche back in 1930, and initially their production consisted of whitefish, brook trout, lake trout, and landlocked salmon. Later the brown trout and rainbow arrived in Argentina, and these have become the dominant species in most watersheds. Although both the brown and rainbow exist as sea-run populations in certain areas, the landlocked has remained just that, migrating only between lake and river.

There is an excellent chance that somebody will catch a new world-record landlocked salmon in Argentina. Imported from Maine and stocked in the remote places by air drop, the salmon has become well established in many rivers. Our present North American record of 22½ pounds from Sebago Lake was boated back in 1907, which should seem to establish the growth maximum of American landlockeds. Few records have stood a fifty-six-year test. Department of Fish Culture personnel more recently netted a 36-pound landlocked salmon during their spawn-taking operations at Nahuel Huapí in Argentina. There have been several reports of fish being caught in excess of 25 pounds, but they were killed for food and not for record. For many years the Traful River, from the Confluencia, where it joins the Limay, upstream to its source at Lago Traful, provided exceptional salmon fishing. The stream average was about 8 pounds, and fifteen such fish in a day was quite ordinary. The quality of the water now is modest. In the spring month of November you can still hook large landlockeds as well as trout in the lake and at the mouths of tributary streams, but the summer fishery has declined all along the river below. Salmon of 10 to 15 pounds are abundant in cold weather, and there's a fine little inn nearby, the Villa Traful, where you can live like a king for less than $5 a day. But spring or summer, the Traful River is beautiful, and you should fish it for no other reason than to visit the Enchanted Valley and hope for one big fish on the fly. It's a pleasant stop on the way to Junín de los Andes.

The village of Junín de los Andes is 125 miles north of Bariloche. It's an ideal base for the serious fly fisherman who wants animal comforts as well as exceptional sport. From here you can fish the Chimuhuin, the Collón Curá, the Quilquihue, Malleu, Aluminé, and the Caleufú, to name a half-dozen. There are several inns, such as the Hosteria Chimuhuin, where one can stay for $3 to $5 per day, including meals and wine. The rivers are lovely, and the Chimuhuin was made for fly fishing. There are always big trout on hand, and the day seldom passes without hooking one. Last season a 24-pound brownie was taken at the *boca*, or river mouth, where it flows into Lake Huechulafquén.

There are streams in Argentina which, in their glassy water and cress beds, remind one of Norman chalk streams. The illusion is completed by

long rows of poplar trees which the European-born farmer has imported. But where the rivers of France run through meadows to meet, like eager young lovers, under a village bridge, the rivers of Patagonia are always drawn together in some narrow defile where they pound at each other in tumbling rapids. The Chimuhuin is yet another type, more like a mature Beaverkill with tremendously deep pools and undercut banks. During a May fly hatch you will see the trout poised on their fins, lying in formations as though strung on wires as they await the filmy insects. But you never know what to expect.

To reach the primitive trout country, you must go south of Bariloche. The gravel road stretches for 250 miles (a very long day's journey by car) down to Lago Futalaufquén, which is the beginning of some marvelous fishing. There is a pleasant modern hotel on the lake which makes a good base for trips into the surrounding mountains. One of the best landlocked salmon waters in Argentina isn't far away. This is the river which connects the four Situación Lakes. On calm evenings when the caddis and May flies hatch, the darkening water will boil from bank to bank as salmon and trout of every size take the insects in eruptive rises. Eight- to 10-pound salmon and 3- to 5-pound rainbows are common; the everyday possibility is an 18- or 20-pound landlocked. A river of this kind offers the angler a wonderful opportunity to test his skill with a 1½- to 2½-ounce fly rod. The water is so improbably crystalline and rich with bug life that the biggest of these fish will take a small artificial. Quiet waters are difficult to succeed on. The leisured, easy pace of the current makes all salmonoids epicures, and the fly pattern that works today may fail tomorrow.

Nobody can say how many lakes and streams exist in the provinces of Chubut and Santa Cruz. It's possible to drive to the Strait of Magellan, taking all the time you want and fishing a new river each day, and then not sampling the smallest fraction of it. Or you can fly direct to Tierra del Fuego. The schedule of the two airlines which service Punta Arenas is not too regular, but if you have to worry about time there is no sense in going. It's a short hop across the Straits of Ushuaia to Rio Grande. Ushuaia is the most southerly inhabited town in the world and also the most southerly range of the trout. Sea-run browns and rainbows, which were raised and planted by rancher John Goodall back in 1935, have waxed fat at the very tip of the continent. At this point a true fisherman can honestly say that he has pursued his sport to the end of the earth.

Index

Adamson, W. A., 90–92
Alabama, 238
  TVA Dam system, 238
Alaska, 203, 238–240
  Battle Lake, 238
  Kahkanok River, 238–240
  Situk River, 239–240
albacore, 203, 317, 319, 321, 322
Alberta, 278–280
  Banff, 280
  Jasper, 278–279, 280
  Rocky Mountain House, 279–280
Allison tuna, *see* tuna
amberjack, 179, 196, 203, 239, 317, 320, 321, 328
American Fishing Tackle Manufacturers Association, 35–36
American Museum of Natural History, 208, 212
angelfish, 203
Argentina, 294, 325, 327, 329–331
Arizona, 56, 240
  Big Lake, 240
Arkansas, 240–241
  Indian Bay, 240–241
artificial lures, *see* lures
Atlantic sailfish, *see* sailfish
Atlantic salmon, *see* salmon
Australia, 208

backlash, 15, 22, 27, 202
Bahamas, 212, 213, 220, 224, 225, 320–321
bait, 15, 25, 32, 41, 47, 53, 63, 71 102, 110 118–120, 126–127, 129, 141, 144, 146, 147, 148, 149–150, 155, 159, 177, 178, 180, 184, 187, 191, 203, 224, 225, 229–230
bait casting, 14–20, 21, 23, 27, 28, 29, 36, 49–54, 55, 71–77, 144, 145, 149, 152, 153, 154, 159, 160, 161, 165, 175, 193–196, 202, 231, 233, 235
  lines, 18, 20
  lures, 17–18, 20, 49–54, 55
  reels, 15, 18, 20, 21, 29, 36, 154, 161
  rods, 16–18, 20, 28
  tackle, 14, 15–20, 159, 160
  techniques, 71–77
baitfish, *see* bait

Bandini, Ralph, 216
barometer theory, 102, 135, 139–140, 143, 172–173
barracuda, 195–196, 198, 203, 224, 230, 241, 312, 321
bass, 15, 20, 27, 28, 30, 37, 38, 39, 49, 51, 64, 70, 83, 135, 140, 141, 143, 144, 145, 148, 149, 151, 153, 156, 159, 164, 166–170, 171, 176, 180, 183, 184, 187, 190, 192, 193, 195, 196, 197, 198, 203, 204, 238, 240, 241, 243, 247, 250, 251, 255, 256, 257, 260, 261, 262, 264, 265, 266, 268, 270, 272, 273, 274–275, 276, 278, 288, 313, 316, 317, 318
  black sea, 184, 203, 250, 252, 268
  California kelp, 203
  channel, 171, 190, 192, 193, 196, 198, 203, 251
  giant sea, 203, 241, 318
  largemouth, 27, 38, 140, 141, 145, 153, 164, 238, 243, 247, 251, 255, 257, 260, 262, 270, 272, 273, 274, 313, 316
  rock, 38, 140, 143, 316
  smallmouth, 27, 38, 140, 141, 144, 145, 153, 164, 238, 240, 247, 255, 256, 257, 260, 265, 266, 270, 272, 274, 276, 316
  spotted, 27, 38, 316
  striped, 30, 176, 180, 183, 184, 187, 192, 193, 195, 197, 198, 204, 251, 261, 264, 268, 273
  white, 27, 38, 238, 257, 266
  white sea, 241, 317
Bermuda, 235, 319–320
Berners, Julia, 61, 66, 95
big-game fishing, 212–235
black drum, *see* drum
blackfish, *see* tautog
black marlin, *see* marlin
bluefin tuna, *see* tuna
bluefish, 176, 180, 184, 187, 193, 196, 197, 198, 204, 250, 251, 252, 261
bluegill, 4, 5, 27, 30, 38, 140, 141, 143, 159, 170, 240, 270, 273, 313
blue marlin, *see* marlin
blue runner, 183
boat fishing, 125, 146, 147, 150, 153, 163, 165, 174, 178, 182–183
bocaccio, 204
Bolivia, 325
bonefish, 27, 30, 37, 38, 192, 195, 198, 202, 204, 224, 243, 319, 320, 321, 323
bonito, 184, 204, 230, 312, 317, 319, 321, 322
Bosworth, Tom, 66
Botsford, Harry, 166
bottom fishing, 174–179
Brazil, 324, 329
bream, *see* bluegill
British Columbia, 126, 130, 280–281
  Andy Lake, 281
  Kootenay Lake, 281
  Tlell River, 280
British Guiana, 324
British Isles, *see* Great Britian
brook trout, *see* trout
Brown, Frank A., Jr., 45–46
brown trout, *see* trout
bucktails, 32, 54, 55, 61–63, 65, 66–67, 107, 109, 112–113, 126, 155, 183, 184, 197
bullhead, 140, 147, 170, 272

California, 56, 126, 208, 225, 226, 233, 235, 241–242
  Avalon, 225
  Balboa, 225
  Catalina Island, 233
  Eel River, 242
  Los Angeles, 235
  Marble Mountain, 241–242
  Point Conception, 226, 235
  San Diego, 235, 241
Canada, 56, 58, 128, 278–292
Canal Zone, 231
Caroline Islands, 227
carp, 159, 273, 300–301
casting technique, 20, 25–26, 33–34, 37, 53, 55, 71–92, 124–125, 127, 152, 188–192, 194, 203, 204–206
  backhand, 76
  bait, 71–77
  bow-and-arrow, 81
  bubble, 25, 55, 124–125
  flip, 76–77
  fly, 33–34, 37, 71–72, 85–90, 194
  lariat, 82
  overhead, 72–75, 78–81, 83–84, 85–89, 188–192
  roll, 89–90
  salt-water, 20, 27, 30, 188–192, 194
  side, 75–76, 81, 89
  spin, 83–84
  spinning, 25–26, 77–83
  surf, 188–192
  two-hand, 26, 191–192
  ultra-light lures, 82–83, 90–92
catfish, 147, 204, 238, 266, 273, 316, 329
  gaff-topsail, 204
channel bass, *see* bass
charter boats, 181, 213, 224, 235–236
charts, 174
Chile, 210, 213, 225, 227, 324–325, 326–328
chinook salmon, *see* salmon
cobia, 251
cod, 173, 204, 252, 268, 307, 308

coho salmon, *see* salmon
Colombia, 324
Colorado, 56, 242–243
  Gunnison River, 242–243
  Upper Rio Grande River, 243
conservation, 10–11
corbina, 241
Cotton, Charles, 95
crappie, 27, 30, 38, 141, 143, 170, 240, 255, 257, 265, 270, 273
Creek Chub Bait Company, 42, 44
croaker, 173, 204, 318
Cuba, 224
cultus, 204
cutthroat trout, *see* trout

Denmark, 307–308
Dolly Varden, *see* trout
dolphin, 204, 230, 250, 261, 312, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 328, 329
dorado, 329
drift fishing, 150, 182–185, 204–206, 235
drum, 192, 193, 251
dry flies, *see* flies
dry fly techniques, 113–118, 120, 131

Ecuador, 324
Edson, William, 67
eel, 204
eelskin lure, 187, 204
England, *see* Great Britian
etiquette, fishing, 9–11

feathered lures, 201, 204–206
Field & Stream Magazine, 211
fighting chair, 215
finding fish, how to, 97–98, 143–145, 147, 155–156, 157–158, 172–174, 177–178, 180, 182, 216
Firth, Clive, 208
fish finder rig, 176–177, 192
flies, 7, 31, 32, 33, 34, 37, 38, 39, 47, 54, 55–67, 90, 92, 101, 102, 105–113, 120, 124–126, 129–132, 155, 157, 166, 169, 170, 194, 197, 199, 202
  dry, 7, 31, 32, 33, 34, 37, 55, 57–60, 63, 64, 65, 90, 105–109, 113–118, 120, 124–125, 130–131
  salmon, 130–132
  wet, 31, 32, 33, 37, 55, 60–61, 63, 102, 105–113, 124, 125, 126, 130–131, 166, 169, 197
float fishing, 150
Florida, 142, 183, 194, 195, 209, 210, 224, 225, 229, 235, 243–245, 329
  Boca Grande, 235
  Central-Southern, 243–244
Florida (*cont.*)
  Key West, 224, 225, 245
  Melbourne, 195
  Miami, 209, 210, 224, 229
  Palm Beach, 209, 229
  Shark River, 245
  Stuart, 229, 244
  Vero Beach, 225
Flounder, 176, 184, 204, 252, 261, 268, 307
  starry, 204
  summer (fluke), 184, 204, 261
  winter, 176, 204, 252, 261, 268, 307
fly box, romance in, 64–67
fly casting, 31, 33–34, 37, 54, 64, 71–72, 85–91, 125, 149, 153, 198
fly fishing, 14, 25, 30–38, 95–132, 155, 165–170, 198–203
  leaders, 37–38
  line, 31, 34–36, 38
  reel, 31, 36–37, 38, 122, 126
  rod, 31–34, 38, 155, 156, 166, 192–193, 202, 203
  tackle, 14, 25, 30–38, 154, 165, 166, 198
Ford, Corey, 97
France, 302–306
Francis, Henry R., 66
French Guiana, 324

gaffing, 163, 164, 234
Georgia, 142, 245
  Clark Hill Reservoir, 245
Germany, 305–306
Gilbert Islands, 227
Gingrich, Arnold, 90
Gordon, Theodore, 64, 66
grayling, *see* trout
Great Britain, 57, 64, 90–92, 116, 208, 297–302, 306
greenling, 204
grouper, 184, 196, 198, 204, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321
grunt, 184, 204, 323
guide boats, 235
guides, 10, 41, 292–293

haddock, 205
Haily, John, 66
hake, California, 205
halibut, 205, 241, 275
  California, 205
  Pacific, 205, 241, 275
Hall, John I., 302
harness, 214–215
Hawaii, 227, 311–313
Heddon's Sons Company, 42, 44
Heilner, Van Campen, 209
Hemingway, Ernest, 209, 214

Hendrickson, A. E., 64–65
Hewitt, Ashley, 65
Hewitt, Edward Ringwood, 65, 67
hooking fish, how to, 120–121, 147–148, 150, 157, 158–159, 161, 178–179, 181, 182, 202, 218, 223, 225, 233
hooks, 39, 59, 60, 63, 67, 71, 101, 107, 121, 126, 148, 149, 176, 203, 204–206
Hough, Donald, 7
Hough, Emerson, 66

Iceland, 90, 130, 294–297
Idaho, 245–246
  Lake Pend Oreille, 246
  Salmon River, 245–246
Illingsworth, Holden, 21
Illinois Natural History Survey, 45
Institute for Fisheries Research, 140
International Game Fish Association, 207–212, 213, 214, 234, 320, 321

jack crevalle, 183, 195, 205, 312, 317, 323
Japan, 225
Jennings, Preston J., 45, 55, 128
jewfish, 205, 317, 318
jig, 49, 53, 151–152, 180, 183, 184, 197–198, 204–206, 229, 231, 233, 235
jigging, 184
Johnson, Cal, 40, 148
Joseph, Richard, 314, 322

Kentucky, 18, 247
  Dale Hollow, 247
  Kentucky Lake, 247
kingfish, 173, 192, 250, 264, 270, 313, 320
Knight, John Alden, 64, 135
Krause, A. C., 45–46

LaBranche, George, 57, 58
ladyfish, 198, 205, 256, 322, 323
lake fishing, 37, 102, 135–170
lake trout, *see* trout
landing fish, how to, 122–124, 163–164, 190–191, 234
landing net, 122–123, 163–164
landlock salmon, *see* salmon
largemouth bass, *see* bass
leaders, 19–20, 37–38, 107, 126, 127, 146–147, 176, 188, 192
  bait casting, 19–20
  fly, 37–38
  gut, 37
  monofilament, 19–20
  nylon, 19, 20, 37–38, 147, 192
  wire, 20, 188
leatherjack, 205
Leonard, J. Edson, 61
Lerner, Michael, 208–209, 211–212
light, effect on fishing, 45–47, 55–57, 103
lines, 18, 19–20, 22, 23, 26–27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 34–36, 38, 54, 78, 126, 146, 155, 161, 176, 185–186, 193, 209, 214
  bait casting, 18, 19–20
  braided, 19, 22, 26, 155, 185
  color, 19
  fly, 31, 34–36, 38
  monofilament, 19, 23, 26, 29, 54, 78, 126, 146, 155, 161, 176, 185, 193
  nylon, 19, 22, 176, 193
  pound test, 19, 20, 22, 23, 26–27, 28, 29, 30, 78, 146, 176, 185–186, 193, 209, 214
  trolling, 155
  wire, 155
ling, 205, 268, 307
live bait, *see* bait
locating fish, *see* finding fish
Louisiana, 247–248
  Cenla Region, 247–248
lures, 15, 17–18, 20, 25–26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 32–35, 37, 39, 40–67, 74, 79, 82–83, 101, 130, 151–153, 154–155, 169, 179, 182, 183, 187, 193–194, 195, 196, 197–199, 203, 204–206, 235
  action, 49, 50, 51, 52–53
  color, effect of, 37, 44–47, 52, 101, 130, 151
  deep-runners, 52, 53, 154, 194
  light, effect of, 45–47, 55–57
  looney, 49, 54
  middle-depth runners, 51–52
  shallow-runners, 51–52
  sonic, 47–48
  sound, effect of, 47–48
  subsurface, 49, 51–52, 198, 199
  surface, 49–51, 151, 159, 195, 196, 198
  underwater, 49, 52–53, 151, 159, 196

mackerel, 180, 183, 184, 192, 193, 196, 198, 205, 224, 230, 241, 261, 265, 307, 317, 318, 321, 322
Maine, 128, 130, 203, 248–250, 330
  Fish River, 248–249
  Moosehead Lake, 249
  Narraguagus River, 248
  Rangeley Lakes, 249–250
Manitoba, 282–283
  God's Lake, 283
  Pas-Fin Flon-Corrorant Forest Reserve, 282
  Whiteshell Forest, 282–283
Mariana Islands, 227
marlin, 179, 181, 207, 213, 216, 222–228, 235, 241, 250, 251, 252, 261, 264,

marlin (*cont.*)
265, 271, 311, 312, 313, 316, 317, 319, 320, 321, 322, 328
black, 226–227, 313, 328
blue, 222–224, 250, 252, 264, 265, 319, 322
silver, 227–228
striped, 225–226, 241, 311, 312, 313, 328
white, 224–225, 250, 251, 261, 265, 271, 319, 321
Marshall Islands, 227
Maryland, 198, 225, 235, 250–251
Chesapeake Bay region, 198, 250–251
Ocean City, 225, 251
Massachusetts, 225, 251–252, 324
Cape Cod, 225, 251–252
Mathews, Edward J., 216
McCarthy, Don, 320
McClane, Al, 128, 308, 322
McFarland, William, 129
Messigner, Joe, 165
Mexico, 203, 226, 227, 231, 233, 315–319
Michigan, 56, 252–253
Au Sable River, 252–253
Lake St. Clair, 253
Manistee River, 253
Minnesota, 254–255, 288
Gunflint Trail, 254
Lake of the Woods, 254–255
Superior Forest, 255
Mississippi, 255–257
Biloxi, 256–257
Eagle Lake, 255–256
Missouri, 257–258
Big Spring area, 257–258
Lake of the Ozarks, 257
Montana, 258–259
Flathead Lake, 258
Madison River, 258–259
moon, effect on fishing, 142–143
moonfish, 317
muskellunge, 15, 20, 23, 27, 30, 39, 49, 135, 141, 143, 149, 151, 153, 156, 160, 161, 162, 164, 253, 254, 272, 277, 287, 288

Nevada, 259–260
Lake Mead, 260
Ruby Mountain area, 259
New Brunswick, 283–285
Miramichi River, 284–285
Restigouche River, 283–284
Newell, David N., 133
Newfoundland, 285
River Ponds, 285
New Hampshire, 260–261
Lake Sunapee, 260
Upper Connecticut River, 261
New Jersey, 190, 209, 233, 261–262
Cape May, 209, 261–262
New Mexico, 262
Eagle Nest Lake, 262
New York, 65, 96, 213, 216, 217, 224, 233, 262–265, 272
Adirondacks, 262–263
Beaverkill River, 96, 263–264
Lake Champlain, 263
Montauk, 213, 216, 217, 224, 264–265
Neversink River, 65
Sacandaga, 263
New Zealand, 47, 227, 313–315
night fishing, 44, 47, 48, 50
North America, 171, 237–292, 324
North Carolina, 229, 265–266, 273
Fontana, 265–266
Morehead City, 265
northern pike, *see* pike
Northwest Territories, 285–286
Great Slave Lake, 285–286
Norway, 130, 294, 295, 306, 308–311
Nova Scotia, 130, 212, 213, 233, 234, 286–287
Margaree River, 287
Medway River, 286
Wedgeport, 213, 234, 286–287
nymphs, 34, 55–57, 60–61, 63, 65, 102, 106, 109, 112, 119, 125, 126, 165, 197

Ohio, 266–267
Bass Islands, 266–267
Ontario, 287–289
Kawartha Lakes, 287–288
Lake of the Woods, 288
Sudbury area, 288–289
Oregon, 56, 126, 233, 267–269
Coos River, 268–269
Rogue River, 267–268
outboard motor, trolling with, 155

Pacific rockfish, *see* rockfish
Pacific sailfish, *see* sailfish
Panama, 227, 230
panfish, 20, 28, 32, 37, 39, 63, 143, 145, 146, 149, 159, 166, 170, 200
Paraguay, 324
party boats, 174, 177
Pennsylvania, 269
Brodhead River, 269
perch, 27, 30, 38, 102, 103, 117, 154, 165, 170, 205, 241, 268, 272, 273, 300, 307
barred, 205
sea, 241, 268
white, 205, 273
yellow, 272, 273
permit, 192, 199, 245, 323

Perry, Bliss, 6
Peru, 227, 231, 325–326, 328–329
Pfleuger, 44
pickerel, 20, 30, 49, 63, 83, 135, 145, 149, 151, 153, 251, 272, 282, 287, 288, 291
pike, 15, 20, 23, 27, 30, 39, 49, 51, 63, 83, 135, 140, 141, 144, 145, 151, 152, 153, 161, 162, 164, 254, 255, 262, 263, 272, 282, 283, 287, 288, 290, 291, 292, 300, 307, 308
playing fish, how to, 121–122, 148, 160–163, 181–182, 190, 193, 194, 223–224, 228, 231, 233
plugs, 39, 42, 49–53, 54–55, 72, 74, 144, 151, 154–155, 183, 184, 193, 195, 196, 197–198, 203, 204–206, 235
  speed, 155–156, 180
  subsurface, 49, 51–52, 198
  surface, 49–51, 55, 151, 195, 196
  tournament, 72
  underwater, 49, 52–53, 55, 151, 183, 194
pollack, 179, 180, 192, 205, 252, 307
pompano, 192, 198, 199, 205, 245, 317, 318, 323
poppers, 31, 34, 37, 48, 50–51, 195
porgies, 176, 184, 205, 250, 252
pork rind, 54, 148, 180
Prince Edward Island, 289
  Morell River, 289
Puerto Rico, 321–323
push-button casting, *see* spin-casting

Quebec, 289–291
  Lake St. John, 289–290
  Laurentide Park, 290
  La Verendrye Park, 290–291

rainbow trout, *see* trout
red drum, *see* drum
reel, 15, 18, 20, 21–25, 27, 28, 29–30, 31, 36–37, 38, 72, 122, 126, 154, 161, 185, 186
  bait casting, 15, 18, 20, 21–25, 27, 29–30, 36, 72, 154, 161
  fly, 31, 36–37, 38, 122, 126
  salt-water, 175–176, 185
  spin-cast, 27, 28, 29–30, 161
  spinning, 21–25, 27, 29, 161, 186
  surf, 185
reel seats, 26
releasing fish, how to, 123, 124
Rhode Island, 216, 269
  Block Island, 216
  Watch Hill, 269
river fishing, 33, 125–127, 132, 148, 158, 169
rock bass, *see* bass
rockfish, 205, 268
rod, 16–18, 20, 25–26, 27, 28, 30, 31–34, 36, 90–91, 154, 155, 156, 161, 166, 175, 186, 192–193, 202, 203
  action, 16–18, 20, 25, 27, 28, 31–32, 154
  bait casting, 16–18, 20, 28, 36
  fly, 31–34, 36–37, 38, 155, 156, 166, 192–193, 202, 203
  salt-water, 25, 26, 27, 175, 186
  spin-cast, 28, 30
  spinning, 20, 25–26, 27, 36, 154
  surf, 186
  ultra-light, 90–91, 161
roosterfish, 317, 318, 328

sailfish, 181, 207, 213, 228–231, 235, 244, 271, 316, 318, 319, 321, 322, 328, 329
  Atlantic, 228–230
  Pacific, 230–231
sailor's choice, 205
Sale, Richard, 232
salmon, 20, 23, 27, 30, 33, 37, 38, 91, 128–132, 141, 153, 154, 156, 164, 165, 166, 180, 198, 202–203, 239, 245–246, 248, 249, 258, 260, 261, 267, 275, 280, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 289, 292, 294–297, 298–299, 301, 305–306, 308, 309–311, 314–315, 330, 331
  Atlantic, 27, 30, 38, 128–132, 248, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 294–297, 298–299, 301, 305–306, 308, 309–311
  Chinook, (*see* king)
  coho, (*see* silver)
  king, 132, 164, 198, 202–203, 245–246, 267, 275, 308
  landlock, 141, 153, 154, 156, 165, 166, 180, 248, 249, 260, 261, 289, 292, 330, 331
  silver, 132, 198, 202–203, 239, 275, 280
  sockeye, 258, 275
salmon eggs, 119, 126, 127
sand spike, 187–188
Saskatchewan, 291–292
  Cree Lake, 291–292
  Lac La Ronge, 291
Schaldach, William J., 12, 93, 96
Scripture, William, Jr., 66
sculpin, 206
sea trout, *see* weakfish
shad, 30, 206, 268, 273
Shakespeare, Henry, 26, 72, 203
Shakespeare Company, 44
sharks, 23, 192, 224, 250, 264, 313, 318, 328
silver marlin, *see* marlin
silver salmon, *see* salmon
sinkers, 127, 146, 149, 156, 166, 176, 192

skittering, 150–151
Slaymaker, S. R., 62
smallmouth bass, *see* bass
snapper, 184, 193, 196, 197, 198, 317, 319, 321, 323, 329
snaps and swivels, 19–20, 54, 126, 149, 154, 156, 176, 192, 214
snook, 27, 38, 83, 171, 183, 192, 193, 194, 198, 199, 321, 322, 323, 329
Snyder, George, 18
sockeye, *see* salmon
sole, 206
South Africa, 210
South America, 171, 323–331
South Bend Company, 44
South Carolina, 245, 270
  Clark Hill Reservoir, 270
Spain, 306
spin-cast, 14, 15, 27–30, 55, 71, 83–84, 149
  lures, 30, 55
  tackle, 14, 15, 27–30
  techniques, 83–84
spinners, 19, 32, 34, 49, 53, 55, 56, 64, 117, 126, 148, 151, 154, 155, 169, 170, 180, 198, 205, 206
spinning, 14, 15, 20–27, 28, 29, 54–55, 71, 77–88, 124–125, 149, 175, 186, 191–192, 197–198
  lures, 25, 27, 54–55, 197
  tackle, 20–27, 125, 197
  techniques, 77–88, 124–125, 191–192, 197–198
spoons, 39, 49, 53, 54, 55, 126, 154, 155, 156, 169, 183, 184, 193, 203, 204–206
spot, 206
spotted bass, *see* bass
Sprungman, Ormal I., 140
squids, 183, 184, 187, 188, 204–206, 235
steelhead trout, *see* trout
Steenrod, Roy, 64–65
still fishing, 54, 71, 141, 145–148, 174–179, 203, 204–206
  salt-water, 174–179
  tackle, 146–147, 175–177
  techniques, 147–148
Stilwell, Hart, 42, 183, 192
streamers, 32, 33, 54, 55, 61–63, 66–67, 107, 109, 112–113, 126, 155, 166, 202, 204
stream fishing, 37, 93–132, 168–169
  spinning, 124–125
  strategy, 97–98, 100–104
  technique, 110–125, 130–132
  with bait, 118–120
striped bass, *see* bass
striped marlin, *see* marlin
suckers, 159, 330
Sunapee trout, *see* trout
sunfish, 27, 30, 38, 141, 143, 159, 170
surf fishing, 27, 185–192, 203
  casting techniques, 188–192
  clothing, 187
  tackle, 27, 185–188
Surinam, 324
swordfish, 181, 207, 213, 216–221, 228, 241, 252, 264, 313, 318, 329

tackle, 11, 12–39, 48, 125, 153–155, 159, 160, 165, 166, 175–176, 185, 197, 198
  bait casting, 14, 15–20, 159, 160
  box, 48
  fly, 14, 25, 30–38, 154, 165, 166, 198
  salt-water, 25, 26, 27, 175–176, 185
  spin-casting, 14, 15, 27–30
  spinning, 20–27, 125, 197
  surf-casting, 185–188
  trolling, 20, 30, 153–155
Tahiti, 210, 227
tarpon, 20, 23, 27, 30, 38, 63, 83, 171, 179, 183, 193, 195, 196, 198, 199, 206, 228, 235, 244, 271, 316, 318, 319, 321, 322, 323, 329
tautog, 176, 206, 261
temperature, effects on fishing, 101–103, 117, 141–142, 143, 172, 173, 195
Tennessee, 247, 270–271
  Dale Hollow Lake, 270–271
Texas, 224, 229, 271
  Freeport, 229
  Port Aransas, 229, 271
  Port Isabel, 224
  Sabine Pass, 229
tides, effects on fishing, 173
tomcod, 206
tripletail, 206
trolling, 20, 30, 53, 54, 71, 141, 144, 153–158, 159, 165, 179–182, 203, 204–206, 226, 234, 235
  fresh-water, 20, 30, 153–158
  salt-water, 179–182, 203, 204–206, 226, 234, 235
trout, 7, 20, 23, 27, 30, 32, 33, 37, 38, 39, 57, 62, 64, 83, 97–103, 107–127, 154, 155, 156, 161–166, 180, 197, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 248, 249, 252, 253, 254, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 265, 267, 269, 271, 272, 274–275, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 283, 285, 289, 290, 291, 292, 298, 299–300, 302, 303–305, 308–311, 313–314, 316, 325–326, 327–328, 330–331
  brook, 27, 38, 102, 103, 117, 154, 165, 241, 242, 248, 249, 252, 253, 259, 260, 261, 262, 267, 271, 277, 278, 280, 283, 289, 290, 316, 330
  brown, 27, 32, 38, 102, 103, 165, 241, 242, 248, 249, 252, 253, 258, 259, 262, 263, 267, 272, 277, 279, 280, 309–311, 314, 327, 330

trout (*cont.*)
cutthroat, 27, 38, 103, 125, 165, 240, 259, 269, 277
Dolly Varden, 126, 165, 258, 279, 280
grayling, 27, 38, 239, 240, 271, 291, 292
lake, 23, 27, 39, 141, 149, 155, 156, 161, 165–166, 180, 239, 249, 254, 261, 262, 282, 283, 285, 291, 292, 330
rainbow, 27, 32, 37, 38, 57, 97, 102, 103, 125, 126, 154, 165, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 246, 252, 253, 258, 259, 261, 262, 267, 269, 271, 272, 277, 278, 279, 281, 292, 313, 316, 327, 330–331
steelhead, 27, 32, 38, 126–127, 130, 132, 239, 242, 267, 274
Sunapee, 260
tuna, 179, 180, 207, 213, 216, 231–235, 241, 251, 252, 261, 264, 269, 286, 302, 308, 311, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 328, 329

ultra-light tackle techniques, 82–83, 90–92
United States Bureau of Fisheries, 44–45
United States Coast and Geodetic Survey, 174, 177
Uruguay, 329
Utah, 271–272
Uinta Mountain area, 271–272

Vaill, C. B. H., 105
Venezuela, 324, 329
Vermont, 263, 272–273
Battenkill River, 272–273
Lake Champlain, 272
Virginia, 273–274
Back Bay region, 273
Chickahoming River, 273

wading, 125
wahoo, 192, 206, 230, 312, 317, 319, 320
walleye, 20, 27, 30, 38, 39, 135, 140, 141, 144, 145, 149, 153, 156, 161, 238, 253, 254, 255, 257, 266, 270, 272
Walsh, John S., 298
Walton, Izaak, 2, 20, 62, 70, 95, 104, 135, 300
Ware, Edmund, 3
Washington, 126, 235, 274–276
Puget Sound, 235
Silver Lake, 274–275
Skagit River, 274
Strait of Juan de Fuca area, 275–276
weakfish, 171, 173, 176, 180, 183, 184, 187, 192, 193, 194–195, 197, 198, 250, 251, 252, 256, 261, 265, 307, 308, 318
weather, effect on fishing, 102–103, 135, 139–140, 143, 172, 173
West Virginia, 276
Cacapon River, 276
wet fly techniques, 109–113, 131
White, Gertrude Marean, 45
white bass, *see* bass
whitefish, 206
white marlin, *see* marlin
whiting, 206, 252, 307
Wisconsin, 276–277
Lake Chippewa, 277
Manitowish River, 276–277
Wise, John, Sr., 62–63
Wiswell, George, 212
wobblers, *see* spoons
Wood, Arthur, 129
Wueff, Lee, 65, 91
Wylie, Philip, 207
Wyoming, 277–278
North Platte River, 278
Snake River, 277–278

yellowtails, 206, 241, 318, 319, 329
Yugoslavia, 306
Yukon, 292
Whitehorse area, 292

12319